

## Great Expectations : Chapter (1)

### Revision Vocabulary

blacksmith	حداد	handcuffs	قيود اليدين (كلاشبات)
convict	مُدان / مذنب / مسجون	leg-irons	قيود القدمين (كلاشبات)
file	مبرد	marsh	مستنقع
set off	يبدأ رحلة / ينطلق	grap	يجذب / يشد / يجز
guilty	مذنب / متورط في جريمة	commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة
get my breath back	يستعيد أنفاسه	jumped out of .. skin	يقفز من جلده (مرعوب)

### Choose the correct answer :-

- To ..... means to begin a journey.  
a. gr ab      b. commit a crime      c. set off      d. get away
- A ..... is low ground which is usually wet.  
a. march      b. convict      c. guilt      d. file
- A ..... is a person who makes things from iron, especially horseshoes.  
a. file      b. blacksmith      c. leg-irons      d. handcuffs
- ..... are two metal rings linked with a chain, attached to a prisoner's ankles.  
a. File      b. Blacksmith      c. Leg-irons      d. Handcuffs
- ..... are two metal rings linked with a chain, locked around a prisoner's wrists.  
a. File      b. Blacksmith      c. Leg-irons      d. Handcuffs
- LM When I saw a huge animal in the dark, I **jumped out of my skin**.  
This means I was .....  
a. amazed      b. bold      c. terrified      d. brave
- LM The police are looking for the criminal who has ..... that horrible crime.  
a. made      b. committed      c. competed      d. corrected
- LM Once I got my breath back, I hurried home as fast as I could. I **got my breath back**, which means I .....  
a. found difficulty breathing easily.      b. shouted madly for help.  
c. faced the situation bravely.      d. started breathing normally again.

### Note the following

#### الروابط الدالة على التناقض

✓ روابط التناقض هي التي تربط جملتين متناقضتين (عكس بعض) زي :-

⇒ Although / Though / Even though / despite the fact that + جملة

⇒ However + فعل + فاعل + (ظرف / صفة)

⇒ Whatever + فعل + فاعل + (اسم)

EX: Although he is young, he is strong.

EX: However young he is, he is strong.

EX: Whatever mistakes he makes, I respect him.

✓ وكمان الروابط دي ومعناها (علي الرغم من) بس بيحي وراها (اسم + صفة / اسم + V-ing) زي :-

⇒ In spite of / Despite + V- ing / اسم + صفة / اسم

EX: Despite being ill, he passed the exam.

Or : (his illness / bad case)

✓ وكمان الروابط دي بس بتيجي في (نص الجملة) ومعناها (ولكن / غير ان / بينما) زي :-

⇒ but / however / yet / where as / while / \* whilst + جملة

EX: She was ill **whilst** she went to work.



the reason (for) + V-ing / اسم

the reason (why) + جملة

EX: The teacher wanted to know the reason for coming late.

EX: The teacher wanted to know the reason why I came late.

السبب ل / المبرر ل

السبب لماذا

## Collocations and Expressions

do job	يقوم بالوظيفة	make effort	يبدل مجهود
do work	يقوم بالعمل	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
do activity	يقوم بنشاط	make money	يكسب فلوس
do interview	يجري حوار / يحاور	make a good writer	يصنع (يجعله) روائي جيد
do survey	يجري دراسة	give lecture	يلقي محاضرة / يحاضر
have the right to	لديه الحق ان	give warning	يحذر
due to be published	علي وشك ان يتم نشره	spare no effort	لا يذخر جهدا
put a spin on a story	يبدل / يزيق حقيقة القصة	at a lower price	بسعر منخفض
violate copyright law	ينتهك قانون حقوق النشر	keep trying	يستمر في المحاولة
was referred to the court	خولت الي المحكمة	brainstorm ideas	يبتكر أفكار
ruin the surprise	يفسد (يحرق) المفاجأة	first of all	اولا وقبل كل شيء
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	at the same time	في نفس الوقت

## Prepositions

leave - left (out)	يترك / يستبعد / يهمل	(by) placement	بتغيير المكان
find - found (out about)	يكشف عن	(by) spin	بالتزييف / بالتلفيق
give (up)	يستسلم	(by) omission	بالحذف / بالاغفال
sum (up)	يلخص	careful (about)	حريص علي
(at) midday	في منتصف النهار	complain (about)	يشكو من (شيء)
hang (off)	يؤجل / يعلق جانبا	complain (to)	يشكو ل (شخص)

## راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

break down	يتعطل / يدمر	break off	يفصل / ينفصل
break into	يقتحم مكان / يقاطع في الكلام *	break up	ينتهي

bring about	يسبب / يحدث	bring forward	يقدم الموعد
bring up = raise	يربي	bring back	يذكر / يسترد

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Our car **broke** ....., so we had to take a taxi home.

a) off                      b) out                      c) down                      d) into

2. Some thieves **broke** ..... the shop and stole all the money inside.

a) into                      b) away                      c) off                      d) out

3. After his parents' death, he was **brought** ..... in his uncle's house.

a) out                      b) up                      c) forward                      d) back



## راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة

⇒ P.P + الصفة

middle-aged	في منتصف العمر	strong-willed	قوي الإرادة
open-minded	متفتح / واسع الأفق	double-edged	ذو حدين
deep-seated	راسخ / متأصل	old-fashioned	قديم
high-spirited	ذو معنويات مرتفعة	quick-witted	سريع البديهة
tight-fisted	بخيل	red-handed	مذنب

EX: Ahmed is a **strong-willed** friend. (-)

EX: Ahmed is **strong willed**. X (-)

## الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد

### Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

casualty	mortality / death / victim	حالة وفاة (ضحية)
cheat	cheater / deceiver	غشاش (مخادع)
compensate	make up for	يعوض
investigate	look into	يحقق (يتقصى الحقيقة)
nosy	curious / spying / interfering/inquisitive	متطفل / فضولي / حشري
occur	happen / take place	يحدث
ruin	destroy / wreck	يدمر (يحطم)
violate	break / disobey	يخالف (يعصي)
balanced	fair / unbiased / objective	متوازن (عادل / غير متحيز / موضوعي)
bias	prejudice / partiality	تحيز / تحامل
inaccurate	inexact / incorrect / wrong	غير دقيق (خطأ)
misleading	deceptive / confusing / false / ambiguous	مضلل (مخادع / غامض)
omission	deleting / exclusion / leaving out	حذف (استثناء / ترك)

### Antonyms (anti) : opposite :

pirated	مقرصن / مسروق	genuine / legal	أصلي / شرعي
balanced	متوازن	imbalanced / biased / partial	متحيز
bias	تحيز	objectivity / fairness	موضوعية / حيادية
omission	حذف	addition / inclusion	إضافة / تضمين

### Choose the correct answer :-

1. I never download **pirated** material. The antonym of "**pirated**" is "....."

- a. genuine **b. illegal** c. efficient d. destroyed

2. The traffic laws aim to reduce road **casualties**. The synonym of "**casualty**" is "....."

- a. survivor **b. alive** c. death d. cheater

3. "....." is to "**wreck**" as "**nosy**" is to "**curious**".

- a. Restore **b. Save** c. Ruin d. Violate

4. "**Omission**" and "**inclusion**" are .....

- a. synonyms **b. antonyms** c. adjectives d. acronyms



## كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي

respected

محترم (شخص يحظى بالاحترام لأعماله وإنجازاته)

⇒ respected (leader / scientist / surgeon / teacher / doctor)

respectable

محترم (يتصرف بطريقة محترمة ومقبولة اجتماعيا و أخلاقيا)

⇒ respectable (family / lady / profession / position / salary / life)

respectful (towards/to)

يظهر الاحترام ل

EX: You should be respectful towards your neighbours.

وجيرانك

## كل يوم راجع مهارة : مراجعة (الاسم : Noun)

⇒ Noun : a person, place, thing or idea.

✓ هي كلمة تشير الى اسم شخص او مكان او شيء او فكرة. وأنواعه هي :-

common	اسم عام (غير محدد : شخص / بلد)	singular	اسم مفرد (قبله a/an)
proper	اسم علم (محدد : ساره / مصر)	plural	اسم جمع
abstract	اسم مجرد (معنوي : السلام / الحرية)	countable	اسم معدود (له مفرد وله جمع)
concrete	اسم مادي (لملموس : الموبايل)	uncountable (mass)	اسم لامعدود (كمية)
collective	اسم جماعي (مكون من افراد : العائلة)	gerund	اسم من فعل (V-ing)
compound	اسم مركب (اسم - اسم)	subject	الفاعل (يبدأ الجملة الخبرية)
attributive	المضاف والمضاف اليه (اسم + اسم)	object	المفعول (بعد الفعل / بعد حرف جر : ما نفعله)

✓ لو الجملة فيها مفعولين ف (العاقل : مباشر : direct object) و (الغير عاقل : غير مباشر : indirect object).

## Choose the correct answer :-

1. "The party was amazing". Which word of the following is a noun :-

- a) the      b) party      c) was      d) amazing

2. "Student" is a/an ..... noun.

- a) countable      b) plural      c) collective      d) uncountable

3. "Money" is a/an ..... noun.

- a) countable      b) uncountable      c) collective      d) plural

4. "Team" is a/an ..... noun.

- a) proper      b) uncountable      c) plural      d) collective

5. "Africa" is a/an ..... noun.

- a) proper      b) common      c) plural      d) abstract

6. "Co-operation" is a/an ..... noun.

- a) countable      b) compound      c) collective      d) plural

7. "Amr is doing a research currently." Which word of the following is the subject :-

- a) Amr      b) doing      c) research      d) currently

8. "I lent Maha my dictionary." "Maha" here is a/an ..... object.

- a) direct      b) indirect      c) plural      d) abstrat



## Grammar

## ✓ زمن الماضي البسيط

يكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

الأفعال المنتظمة بنضيف لها (ed - d) أما الأفعال الشاذة فتُحفظ جيدا

EX: I visited my uncle yesterday.

يُعبّر الماضي البسيط عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي مع الكلمات الدالة الآتية:-

⇒ yesterday = \*the other day / last .... / ago / this morning

⇒ in 2010 (تاريخ قديم) / in the past / at the age of seven / once = one day / First... Then...

EX: Sara graduated from Cairo university in 2004.

يُعبّر الماضي البسيط عن عادات وأفعال متكررة في الماضي كالتالي :-

⇒ When I was .... , ... فعل ماضي بسيط ..

⇒ When I was .... , I used to + مصدر ..

⇒ When I was .... , I would + مصدر ..

⇒ When I was .... , ... always / usually / sometimes / often + فعل ماضي بسيط ..

EX: When I was young, I walked / used to walk / would walk to my school.

EX: When he was young, he always visited the zoo,

يُعبّر الماضي البسيط في السؤال / في النفي :-

⇒ did + المصدر + الفاعل .....?

⇒ didn't + المصدر + الفاعل .....

EX: Where did you go yesterday?

EX: Eman didn't come to the party yesterday.

⇒ How long ago (did) ....? (في السؤال)

EX: How long ago did Samy leave that flat?

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

يُخلى بالك الكلمات التي تحت دي لو جه وراها (فاعل) تختار (ماضي بسيط).

لرفع الزمن درجة : جزء من درس (التمني / الماضي الوهمي).

: It's (high/almost/about) time

⇒ It's time + ماضي بسيط + فاعل

⇒ I'd rather + ماضي بسيط + فاعل

⇒ I'd sooner + ماضي بسيط + فاعل

⇒ I wish + ماضي بسيط + فاعل

⇒ If only + ماضي بسيط + فاعل

⇒ Suppose / Supposing / Imagine + ماضي بسيط + فاعل

⇒ If + مصدر , would + ماضي بسيط : الحالة الثانية ل If

EX: It's time my father came home. I don't know why he is late.

EX: I'd rather he visited me tonight.

يُخلى بالك أكثر لو نفس الكلمات لو جه وراها (فاعل) تختار (ماضي تام) لو جاب معاها كلمة دالة علي (الماضي).

+ Plus I'd rather he ..... me yesterday. (visited - had visited)



## الماضي المستمر

يُتكوّن الماضي المستمر من : (Was / Were + V-ing)

**EX:** While I was cooking the dinner, somebody phoned me.

يُستخدم الماضي المستمر (ماضي بسيط : التصريف الثاني للفعل : d/ed + أو شاذ).  
 ركز: (الماضي المستمر) فعل كان مستمر و (الماضي البسيط) قطعة / وقته. ودا يكون مع (while/when).

⇒ While/as/just as (ماضي مستمر) , (ماضي بسيط)

⇒ When (ماضي مستمر) , (ماضي بسيط)

**EX:** While I was watching TV, the lights went off.

**EX:** When I met Sara, She was shopping.

يُستخدم الماضي المستمر (ماضي مستمر) لو الجملتين كانوا مستمرين في نفس الوقت. دا يكون مع (while).  
 ⇒ While/as/just as (ماضي مستمر) , (ماضي مستمر)

**EX:** While father was watching TV, mother was cooking in the kitchen.

يُستخدم وشوف الحالات دي كمان ل (while / during / on) :-

⇒ While + V-ing (في حالة عدم وجود فاعل ولا بد ان يكون فاعل الجملتين واحد) :

⇒ While + حرف جر

**EX:** While studying my lessons, I fell asleep.

**EX:** While on holiday, I visited Cairo.

⇒ During + اسم (بدل ل while) وتيجي في اي زمن حسب الترجمة بمعنى : أثناء / خلال :

**EX:** During my lunchtime, the phone rang.

⇒ On + V-ing , (ماضي بسيط) (بدل ل when مع تتابع الاحداث) :

**EX:** On seeing the police, the thief ran away.

يُركز اكثر علي (because) لان ليها حالات كثير منها في درسنا :-

بشرط الجملتين حصلوا في نفس الوقت في الماضي : لان في نفس الوقت : (ماضي مستمر) because (ماضي بسيط)

**EX:** Magdy couldn't hear the phone because he was having a shower.

يُعرف ان (yesterday / last ..) ببجوا مع (الماضي البسيط : التصريف الثاني للفعل : d-ed + / شاذ). صح.  
 إنما لو جاب (yesterday/last ..) وجاب قبلها او بعدها (مدة زمنية) يبقى تختار (ماضي مستمر : was/were-ing)  
 ليه؟؟ - لان الحدث كان مستمر في الوقت المذكور دا في الماضي. زي كدا :-

⇒ at two o'clock yesterday / all day yesterday / yesterday evening/this time last ..

**EX:** I was having breakfast at eight o'clock yesterday.

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

⇒ be, have, look, know, think, see ...

يُستخدم (أفعال الحالة) مش بتيجي في الاستمرار. وبكدا مش هينفع تيجي مع (الماضي المستمر) هتيجي في (الماضي البسيط) بداله.  
 (يس بشرط : يكونوا جايين بمعناهم الاصلي) . إنما لو أتغير معناهم ينفع بجوا في الاستمرار ويجوا في (الماضي المستمر).

**EX:** While I ..... on holiday, I visited Luxor. (was - was being)

**EX:** When I met Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar, he ..... happy. (looked - was looking)

**EX:** While Mazen ..... lunch, the bell rang. (had - was having)



## المضارع التام

يُتكوّن المضارع التام البسيط من : (has / have + P.P)

يُعبّر المضارع التام عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وانتهى في الماضي القريب : من فترة بسيطة لدرجة أن (أثره موجود و ظاهر).

EX: Oh! I have lost my mobile. What can / should I do?

يُعبّر المضارع التام عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمر : (ولسه).

EX: I have lived in Cairo for many years. = I still live there.

يُستخدم المضارع التام مع هذه الكلمات :-

✓ just / already

EX: I have just written the letter. : (has / have & P.P) بين

✓ ever

→ في منتصف السؤال للسؤال عن تجارب سابقة

EX: Have you ever been to the zoo?

→ في جمل صيغة المقارنة العليا : the ..... est

EX: This is the best film I have ever seen.

→ جمل تبدأ ب (No (body -one -thing)

EX: No one has ever beaten me at chess.

→ جمل تبدأ ب This is the first time

EX: This is the first time I've ever seen a lion.

✓ never

→ في الجملة المنفية بدل من (n't)

EX: No, I have never met Samy. : **never = n't**

→ جمل such

EX: I have never watched such an interesting film.

→ مقارنات التفضيل ..... er than

EX: I have never seen a taller man than Shady.

→ الجمل المنتهية ب before

EX: Marawn has never travelled abroad before.

→ Never (تقديم المساعد على الفاعل)

EX: Never (has he) eaten lunch.

✓ yet

→ في نهاية السؤال / الجملة المنفية

EX: Has he arrived yet?

EX: They haven't eaten yet.

EX: Have you finished the task? - **Not yet.**

(مصطلح مهم : ليس بعد : لسه)

✓ since : (يأتي بعدها مدة محددة / جملة اسمية (إسم) / جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط)

✓ for : (يأتي بعدها مدة زمنية كاملة)

→ since (1980 / Sunday / April / summer / then / the age of ten / childhood / birthday / death / marriage / this morning / last... / he moved to Alex (ماضي بسيط)

→ For (a day / two weeks / two hours / many years / a long time / a short time / decade / ages / the last ... / a moment / a while / long / as long as I can remember)

EX: I haven't seen him since last week.

EX: I haven't seen him since he left for Cairo.

✓ has (been) to : (**is no longer there**) :

ذهب لمكان و عاد (راح ورجع)

✓ has (gone) to : (**is still there**) :

ذهب لمكان ولم يعد (راح ولسه هناك لسه مرجعش)

✓ has (been) at / in :

يعيش في / يقيم في

EX: She has been to France. She came back two days ago.

EX: How many times have you been to cinema this week?

EX: He has been in Cairo for 3 years. He lives there.

✓ lately / recently / so far = up till (to) now / \*over the ages / in the last... = **recently**

EX: I have visited my uncle in the last days.



هم وركز اكثر علي (because) لان ليها حالات كتير منها في درسنا :-

بشرط الجملتين حصلوا في نفس الوقت في الماضي : لان في نفس الوقت :

⇒ (ماضي مستمر) because (ماضي بسيط)

EX: Magdy **couldn't** hear the phone **because** he **was having** a shower.

لتبين السبب في المضارع : المضارع التام حصل الاول وجه وراه المضارع البسيط : (مضارع تام) because (مضارع بسيط) ⇒ +

EX: He **is** so upset **because** he **has lost** his book.

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

✓ Since when = For how long .....? ⇒ (سؤال في المضارع التام)

EX: Since when has he travelled to Cairo? .....

EX: For how long has he travelled to Cairo? .....

### Since من حالات

EX: I haven't seen Mona **since last week**. ⇒

مدة زمنية + **since last**

EX: I haven't seen Mona **for the last week**. ⇒

مدة زمنية + **for the last**

EX: I haven't seen Mona **since the last meeting**. ⇒

دي مش مدة زمنية دي مناسبة (اسم)

EX: I haven't seen Mona **since the last time she visited me at home**. ⇒

ماضي بسيط

EX: I haven't seen Mona **since three days ago**. ⇒

**ago** + مدة زمنية + **since**

EX: It's three days **since** I last saw Ali. ⇒

ماضي بسيط + **since** + مدة زمنية + It's

EX: She is upset **since** she has lost her bag. ⇒

لان : **since = because**

EX: She left Egypt in 2010 and hasn't come again **since = since then = ever since**. آخر

EX: I haven't seen Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar **since** he travelled abroad.

EX: Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar travelled abroad **since then** I haven't seen him. ] فهمت ايه ؟

→ already

من الممكن ان تنهي السؤال للتأكد هل الحدث تم قبل الوقت المحدد له (للدهشة : شيء تم قبل موعده)

→ yet

من الممكن ان تنهي السؤال للتعبير عن الضيق وان الحدث لم يتم قبل الوقت المحدد له (للضيق : شيء لم يتم)

→ still

من الممكن ان تستخدم في جملة خبرية قبل (hasn't / haven't) (للدهشة والضيق)

EX: Have you finished your work **already**? You are so quick and efficient!

EX: Have you built the wall **yet**? You are so late!

EX: You **still** haven't finished. You are so late!

كـ بنستخدم (for) وبعدها مدة زمنية في زمن (المضارع التام) . صح طبعا.

وممكن كمان (for) وبعدها مدة زمنية تيجي في (الماضي بسيط) لو بتعبر عن حدث انتهى في الماضي.

EX: He **worked** as a teacher **for** 5 years. Now he is a reporter.



## المضارع التام المستمر

يكون المضارع التام المستمر من : (has / have + been + V-ing)

EX: She has been living here for three years now.

المضارع التام المستمر يدل على فعل وقع في الماضي وما زال مستمرا حتى الان.

علشان نختار (المضارع التام المستمر) بنلاقي (كلمة استمرار) من دول :-

✓ all / the whole day / week / month

✓ for ... مدة ... now.

✓ hasn't / haven't finished yet.

✓ am / is / are + still + V-ing .

✓ How long ⇒ سؤال في زمن المضارع التام المستمر

EX: It has been raining for three hours now.

EX: I have been doing my homework and I haven't finished yet .

EX: How long have you been smoking?

يتركز أكثر على (because) لان ليها حالات كثير منها : افكر لحد دلوقتي درسنا :-

⇒ because (ماضي مستمر) because (ماضي بسيط) بشرط الجملتين حصلوا في نفس الوقت في الماضي : لان في نفس الوقت :

EX: Magdy couldn't hear the phone because he was having a shower.

⇒ because (مضارع تام) because (مضارع بسيط) المضارع التام حصل الاول وجه وراه المضارع البسيط :

EX: He is so upset because he has lost his book.

⇒ because (مضارع تام مستمر) because (مضارع بسيط) بشرط بجيب كلمة استمرار من اللي فوق :

EX: She feels so tired because he has been cleaning the house all the day.

يذكر عدد مرات حدوث الفعل يستخدم (المضارع التام : has/have + P.P) مش (مضارع تام مستمر).

⇒ How many (مع العدد ومرات حدوث الفعل) جمع + (two/ three / several / a lot of)

EX: He has written tree letters.

⇒ X has been writing

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

يلاحظ أن أفعال الحالة التي لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة حتى مع وجود كلمات تدل على الاستمرار في الجملة.

هذه الأفعال نضعهم في زمن (المضارع التام) بدلا من (المضارع التام المستمر) وهم :-

⇒ see/hear/\*look/like/want/need/be/\*have/own /seem / \*think / believe

EX: I have known him for ten years now.

⇒ X have been knowing

بس خلي بالك ان فيه افعال من اللي فوق دي لو اتغير معناها الاصلي او بقت افعال مؤقتة تنفع في الاستمرار.

EX: Ayman has been looking for work for over a year now.

(يبحث عن)

EX: I have been thinking of a problem for an hour now.

(يفكر)

EX: He has been having lunch and he hasn't finished yet.

(يتناول / يأكل)

يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع (How long) للسؤال عن المدة الزمنية للحدث.

يستخدم المضارع التام مع (How many) مع السؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع (How long ago = When).

EX: How long have you been smoking?

EX: How many stories have you bought this week?

EX: How long ago did you begin to read this book?



# Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

## Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. The ..... between Russia and Ukraine led to war between them.  
a) accident ~~b) incident~~ c) event d) victim
2. Price increasing of some goods depends on supply and ..... demand.  
a) piracy b) block c) demand d) claim
3. Did it ..... to you that father might object to this idea?  
a) happen ~~b) occur~~ c) take place d) take part
4. She lived on the third floor of a ..... of flats.  
a) ruin b) spin c) omission d) block
5. He'll be a talent just like his father; he's a chip off the old .....  
a) casualty ~~b) bias~~ c) block d) spin
6. What's left of the castle is just a ..... with no roof.  
a) cheat b) ruin c) spin d) occur
7. The ambulance took the injured man to the ..... department.  
~~a) casualty~~ b) bias c) compensation d) investigation
8. The waterwheel ..... when there is strong wind.  
~~a) spin~~ b) orbit c) ruin d) occur
9. Weavers ..... fibres into thread, and then make cloth.  
~~a) spin~~ b) orbit c) ruin d) occur
10. She set the washing machine to ..... the wet clothes.  
~~a) spin~~ b) orbit c) ruin d) occur
11. My head is in a ..... whenever think about the work I have to do.  
~~a) spin~~ b) orbit c) ruin d) occur
12. No money can ..... the loss of a child.  
The verb "compensate" is a synonym of the verb .....  
a) make up ~~b) make up for~~ c) give up d) look up

## Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

13. London has been a historic city ..... the ages.  
~~a) for~~ b) since c) ago d) over
14. Wow! Have you finished the article .....?  
~~a) already~~ b) yet c) ever d) never
15. They have yet ..... a decision.  
a) make b) to make c) making ~~d) made~~
16. He is poor, ..... he leads a happy life.  
a) just ~~b) already~~ c) over d) yet = but
17. I haven't seen him since ..... to London.  
a) go b) going c) has gone ~~d) went~~
18. I haven't met her ..... 3 weeks ago.  
a) for ~~b) since~~ c) ago d) over
19. I have written stories ..... as long as I can remember.  
a) since ~~b) for~~ c) ago d) recently
20. It is high time Egypt ..... healthcare system.  
a) develops b) to develop ~~c) developed~~ d) is developing



21. I'd rather you ..... smoke here.

- a) never      b) don't      ~~c) didn't~~      d) mustn't

22. He ..... homework just now.

- a) finished      ~~b) has finished~~      c) is finishing      d) had finished

23. While I ..... in Cairo, I met my old friends.

- a) was      b) was being      ~~c) was been~~      d) am

24. While ..... TV, my mother rang the bell.

- a) watched      b) being watched      ~~c) watching~~      d) I was watching

25. I ..... many foreign countries in the last few years.

- a) visit      ~~b) has visited~~      c) visited      d) were visiting

26. Hasn't he arrived ..... ?

- a) ever      b) never      ~~c) yet~~      d) since

27. While ....., the baby fell asleep.

- a) was feeding      ~~b) feeding~~      c) being fed      d) fed

28. A terrible accident ..... place on Cairo- Alexandria desert road.

- a) was taken      b) has taken      c) had taken      d) has been taken

29. I haven't ..... visited Paris.

- ~~a) ever~~      b) never      c) yet      d) since

30. She moved to Cairo ..... I haven't met her.

- a) for      ~~b) since then~~      c) yet      d) since

31. My father ..... for this company for 20 years before he retired in 2015.

- a) works      ~~b) worked~~      c) has worked      d) was working

32. .... in Cairo, I visited the castle.

- a) When      ~~b) While~~      c) On      d) During

33. They ..... well for their exam the other day.

- ~~a) revised~~      b) had revised      c) was revising      d) has revised

34. Who ..... burning food 2 minutes ago ?

- a) smelt      ~~b) did smell~~      c) smiling      d) smell

35. I haven't met a famous actor ..... It is the first time to meet him.

- a) never      ~~b) yet~~      c) before      d) just

36. A : Have you ..... Cairo since you were born?

B : Yes, I have always lived here.

- a) been to      b) gone to      ~~c) been in~~      d) gone in

37. I ..... Mazen for ten years now.

- a) had known      b) had been knowing

- ~~c) have known~~      d) have been knowing



## Unit One

## Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:-

1. He ..... that he is an a famous actor. He is a liar كذاب .  
a) highlights      ~~b) claims~~      c) rejects      d) demands
2. A bad accident ..... near our school yesterday.  
a) demanded      b) breathed      ~~c) occurred~~      d) claimed
3. .... the wheel of the bicycle to see it is OK.  
a) Ruin      b) Orbit      ~~c) Spin~~      d) Chat
4. People are happy as the government has ..... an ambitious program to modernize the railway network شبكة السكك الحديدية .  
a) occurred      ~~b) announced~~      c) denied      d) biased
5. The Prime Minister رئيس الوزراء made an important ..... about increase in the salaries.  
a) advertisement      b) commercial      ~~c) announcement~~      d) argument
6. The policemen do their best to ..... everyday crimes and solve them.  
~~a) investigate~~      b) violate      c) cheat      d) ruin
7. It is great that the company ..... the injured worker.  
~~a) compensate~~      b) compete      c) compare      d) compact
8. .... is the crime of illegally copying and selling books, computer programmes etc.  
a) Compensation      b) Ruin      ~~c) Piracy~~      d) Casualty
9. This version of the game is ....., not genuine أصلي .  
a) criminal      b) secret      ~~c) pirated~~ مسروق      d) secret
10. He used to be kind and honest but now he doesn't : he is a .....  
a) shocked      ~~b) cheat~~      c) balanced      d) fair
11. The old man lost his ..... and fell while he was walking in the garden.  
a) bias      b) omission      c) placement      ~~d) balance~~ توازن
12. This journalist has thousands of followers متابعين on Facebook as he writes in a/an ..... point of view.  
a) biased      ~~b) balanced~~ متوازن      c) unfair      d) unreasonable
13. This film contains a lot of violent ..... it can't be watched by who are under 15.  
~~a) incidents~~ حوادث      b) sights      c) investigations      d) authorities
14. The goalkeeper's mistake has ..... the chance of winning the match.  
a) increased      b) supported      ~~c) ruined~~      d) raised
15. .... newspapers have small pages and large photos. They use simple language and large headlines.  
a) Broadsheet      ~~b) Tabloid~~      c) Broadcast      d) Tablet
16. .... newspapers are generally serious and formal than other ones.  
~~a) Broadsheet~~      b) Tabloid      c) Broadcast      d) Tablet
17. All the family were ..... by the news of their grandmother's death.  
a) enjoyed      ~~b) shocked~~      c) amused      d) satisfied
18. One of the ..... of Coronavirus is deterioration تدهور of the world economy.  
a) advantages      b) merits      c) virtues      ~~d) casualties~~ ضحايا
19. The ..... of the article in the first pages shows it is very important.  
a) fairness      b) bias      ~~c) placement~~      d) support
20. All I ..... is to know what mistake I have made.  
a) occur      b) mention      c) block      ~~d) demand~~



21. If someone ..... a point or problem, they make you think of it. 14/10  
~~a) demands~~      b) claims      c) cheats      d) highlights
22. All the Zamalek fans were sad when the coach of the Egypt's team ..... Tarek Hamed from the list of team for the next match.  
a) added      b) included      c) omitted      d) contained
23. Leaving facts or certain information which doesn't agree with the writer's point of view is known as bias by .....  
a) confession      b) edition      c) omission      d) appreciation
24. .... he is fat, he runs very fast.  
a) As well as      b) In addition      c) Although      d) Because
25. I am quite lazy, ..... my brother is hard-working.  
a) neither      b) as well as      c) whilst      d) in addition
26. I was asked to give the ..... why I came late.  
~~a) reason~~      b) cause      c) result      d) addition
27. Don't be ..... by appearance المظهر. This smart man is a thief.  
~~a) misled~~      b) complained      c) mentioned      d) accused
28. Taking the wrong decision is the result of ..... information.  
a) accurate      ~~b) misleading~~      c) balanced      d) available
29. Social media has made ..... possible.  
a) responsibility      b) omission      c) placement      ~~d) citizen journalism~~
30. I was very happy at my ..... father's arrival from travelling.  
a) illegal      b) balanced      ~~c) long-awaited~~      d) former
31. The police took the ..... to prison, the suitable place for them.  
~~a) convicts~~      b) punishments      c) innocent      d) authority
32. It is ..... to take something that doesn't belong to you.  
a) nosy      b) long-awaited      ~~c) illegal~~      d) balanced
33. I got angry of those ..... people who don't respect others' privacy خصوصية.  
a) long-awaited      ~~b) nosy~~      c) balanced      d) former
34. It is a crime to ..... copyright law.  
a) behave      b) investigate      ~~c) violate~~      d) prove
35. I can't take this decision without my father's .....  
a) permission      b) incident      c) cheat      ~~d) authority~~
36. The Egyptian Knowledge Bank contains an important ..... for the students.  
a) copyright      ~~b) content~~      c) court      d) cheat
37. All the students attend the ..... of Professor Salah. They love him much.  
a) journalism      ~~b) lecture~~      c) compensation      d) bias
38. In Winter, heavy clouds always ..... out sunlight.  
a) occur      b) mention      ~~c) block~~      d) demand
39. A ..... is a place where justice العدالة is achieved and crime is punished.  
~~a) court~~      b) content      c) copyright      d) source
40. He is a ..... lawyer who defends only the innocent.  
a) shocked      b) pirated      ~~c) criminal~~      d) secret
41. My uncle is a retired متقاعد now. He was a/an ..... manager of a company.  
~~a) former~~      b) form      c) frame      d) farm
42. The Egyptian ..... succeeded in putting an end to terrorism in Sinai.  
a) permissions      b) incidents      c) cheats      ~~d) authorities~~
43. Divorce الطلاق is a serious ..... phenomenon ظاهرة, affects all members of the family especially the children.  
a) sociable      b) certain      ~~c) social~~ اجتماعي      d) up-to-date



44. At the beginning of the interview, ..... your full name.

- a) spoil                      ~~b) state~~                      c) spin                      d) claim *bias*  
 45. We were happy when we knew that our teachers evaluated us without .....  
 a) shock                      b) block                      c) bias                      ~~d) appreciation~~

46. Don't interfere *يتدخل* with the other people's .....

- a) surveys                      b) slides                      c) updates                      ~~d) affairs~~

47. One of the ..... of this charity is to help the homeless.

- a) impacts                      b) efforts                      ~~c) objectives~~                      d) slides

### Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions

48. .... this survey aims at collecting accurate information.

- a) Making                      b) Giving                      ~~c) Doing~~                      d) Getting

49. Do you know the qualities that ..... a good writer?

- a) do                      b) give                      ~~c) make~~                      d) take

50. I will ..... every effort to be there on time.

- a) do                      b) give                      ~~c) make~~                      d) take

51. You have the *right* ..... to express your point of view freely.

- a) piracy                      b) cheat                      ~~c) right~~                      d) casualty

52. The manager referred the report ..... the secretary to summarise it.

- a) from                      b) into                      ~~c) to~~                      d) with

53. While I was thinking about the problem, I found ..... that I had forgotten my keys at work.

- a) up                      b) out                      c) of                      d) from

54. The sun is always strong ..... midday.

- a) on                      b) in                      ~~c) at~~                      d) with

55. Our teacher left ..... the naughty student from the school trip.

- a) down                      b) up                      c) in                      ~~d) out~~



## Unit One : Grammar

## تمارين علي الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Heba ..... for a large tour company as an accountant two years ago.  
a) work                      b) works                      c) working                      d) worked
2. When she was on holiday , she ..... basketball.  
a) play                      b) played                      c) use to play                      d) are used to playing
3. When she was on holiday , she ..... play basketball.  
a) were used to                      b) get used to                      c) used to                      d) is used to
4. When she was on holiday , she ..... basketball.  
a) am usually playing                      b) usually played  
c) usually play                      d) were usually playing
5. You ..... well in the party last night.  
a) singing                      b) sang                      c) sing                      d) sings
6. She fell asleep while ..... her lessons.  
a) was studying                      b) had studied                      c) studying                      d) studied
7. I'd rather she ..... her work in time.  
a) had finished                      b) was finishing                      c) finished                      d) have finished
8. In 2004 , Mr. Mahmoud El naggar ..... from university.  
a) had graduated                      b) will graduated  
c) has been graduating                      d) graduated
9. They ..... attend the conference last month.  
a) won't                      b) didn't                      c) wasn't                      d) don't
10. .... scoring the goal, we all cheered in excitement.  
a) Having                      b) On                      c) Because                      d) Over
11. When ..... you go to bed yesterday?  
a) did                      b) will                      c) do                      d) was
12. What ..... in Cairo yesterday?  
a) are you doing                      b) were you doing                      c) you were doing                      d) did you do
13. What ..... at four yesterday?  
a) are you doing                      b) were you doing                      c) you were doing                      d) did you do
14. While Sara ..... the cooking, her little sister was tidying the rooms.  
a) did                      b) was doing                      c) have done                      d) had done
15. They came to my birthday party and ..... nice presents.  
a) gives                      b) were giving                      c) have given                      d) gave
16. I first ..... my best friend when I was 3 years old.  
a) meet                      b) have met                      c) met                      d) meeting
17. I said "Hello" to Ali, but he couldn't hear me because he ..... talking on the phone.  
a) has listened                      b) was listening                      c) is listening                      d) would listen
18. While I was studying, my little brother ..... to loud music so, I wasn't able to concentrate.  
a) had listened                      b) was listening                      c) is listening                      d) listens
19. On arriving home, Mazen .....out what happened.  
a) find                      b) finding                      c) had found                      d) found



20. It's time we ..... the shop.

- a) closed      b) close      c) closing      d) closes

21. This morning, he ..... down and said his prayer.

- a) sent      b) sends      c) is sending      d) was sending

22. Yesterday morning, Marawan ..... with his friends on the phone.

- a) chatted      b) was chatting      c) had chatted      d) has chatted

23. Yesterday, Marawan ..... with his friends on the phone.

- a) chatted      b) was chatting      c) had chatted      d) has chatted

24. When I was eight, I ..... a programme about a famous doctor on TV.

- a) was seeing      b) see      c) saw      d) was seen

25. I phoned and ..... her about her health when I had heard she was ill.

- a) ask      b) was asking      c) asked      d) had asked

26. When I visited my uncle in hospital, he ..... very weak and tired.

- a) looks      b) was looking      c) looked      d) had looked

27. How fast ..... when the accident happened?

- a) did you drive      b) were you driving  
c) had you driven      d) have you driven

28. At the age of seven, we ..... to America.

- a) are moving      b) were moving      c) moved      d) move

29. How long ago ..... your father work abroad?

- a) will      b) has      c) did      d) had

30. We didn't use to talk ..... our meals.

- a) while      b) during      c) when      d) as soon as

31. I was reading a book when you ..... me last night.

- a) phoned      b) were phoning      c) were phoned      d) had phoned

32. While I was doing the shopping, I ..... one of my friends.

- a) met      b) was meeting      c) have met      d) had met

33. I returned home while mother ..... lunch.

- a) prepared      b) was preparing      c) was prepared      d) had prepared

34. The last time I visited Manal ..... three months ago.

- a) was      b) has been      c) did      d) had been

35. Where ..... him last week?

- a) you met      b) did you meet      c) you did meet      d) did meet



## Unit One : Grammar

### تمارين علي المضارع التام والمضارع المستمر

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of my cousins ..... a charity recently. *مفاتيح*

- a) had joined      b) will join      c) has joined      d) was joining

2. It's a month since Mazen last ..... his uncle.

- a) had visited      b) visited      c) has visited      d) was visiting

3. She .....her lessons for two hours now.

- a) studied      b) had studied      c) has been studying      d) has studied

4. Oh! I ..... my money. What should I do?

- a) was losing      b) have lost      c) lost      d) had lost

5. We ..... for ten years now. We are going to move to America next year.

- a) has been living      b) has lived      c) is living      d) lived

6. No one ..... me in chess.

- a) has beaten      b) has never beaten  
c) has ever beaten      d) happened

7. Mr. El naggar ..... a teacher for more than 15 years now. *مدرس*

- a) has been      b) was      c) ~~had been~~      d) has been being

8. Have you cooked lunch, Sara? - Not .....

- a) ever      b) yet      c) just      d) ~~already~~

9. Marawan hasn't ironed his clothes .....

- a) yet      b) already      c) ago      d) since

10. They ..... what to do for the holidays yet.

- a) hadn't decided      b) haven't decided  
c) don't decide      d) won't decide

11. Mum ..... lunch since ten O'clock and she hasn't finished yet.

- a) has cooked      b) has been cooking  
c) cooked      d) is cooking

12. She has ..... to America. This means that she is no longer there.

- a) been      b) gone      c) moved      d) stayed

13. She has ..... to America. This means that she is still there.

- a) been      b) gone      c) moved      d) stayed

14. I have never ..... to the zoo before.

- a) gone      b) been      c) seen      d) visited

15. Sara .....the rooms all the morning and she is very exhausted.

- a) cleans      b) has been cleaning      c) had cleaned      d) has cleaned

16. I am happy because I ..... the poetry competition.

- a) am winning      b) was winning      c) had won      d) have won

17. My cousin hasn't contacted us ..... his travel.

- a) since      b) for      c) while      d) when

18. She ..... after her little sister for three hours now as her mother is out.

- a) has been looking      b) has looked      c) is looking      d) had looked

19. The government ..... a lot of fly-over bridges recently.

- a) has built      b) had built      c) was building      d) build



20. This is the most exciting show I have ..... seen .

- ~~a) never~~      b) ever      c) yet      d) just

21. I'm tired because I ..... all day.

- a) have worked      b) work      ~~c) have been working~~      d) am working

22. The bank manager ..... clients all day.

- a) met      b) has met      ~~c) has been meeting~~      d) had met

23. How many pages of the book .....?

- ~~a) you have read~~      b) you have been reading  
~~c) have you read~~      d) have you been reading

24. We haven't met him ..... over a year.

- a) since      b) for      c) from      d) in

25. .... experienced hiking in the forests ?

- a) Had you ever      b) Have you ever  
c) Have you never      d) You have never

26. .... have you been studying English?

- a) How long      b) How long ago      c) How much      d) When

27. How long have you ..... vegetables here?

- a) grown      b) been grown      c) been growing      d) to grow

28. Have you finished your work .....? You are so quick and efficient!

- a) already      b) yet      c) ever      d) since

29. Have you finished your work .....? You are so slow!

- a) already      b) yet      c) ever      d) since

30. Have you eaten all these bananas ..... ?

- a) ever      b) never      c) already      d) since

31. The secretary ..... the reports for an hour and is still typing.

- a) was typing      b) has been typing      c) is typing      d) has typed

32. Sama ..... her graduation research for three months, and it still needs a lot of time.

- a) did      b) am doing      c) has been doing      d) has done

33. We ..... our old neighbours for a year.

- a) hadn't visited      b) didn't visit      c) haven't visited      d) wasn't visiting

34. He ..... the piano since he was eight.

- a) plays      b) is playing      c) has played      d) had played

35. He will take a nap as soon as he ..... home.

- a) arrived      b) will arrive      c) arriving      d) has arrived

36. I ..... my aunt six times this year.

- a) visit      b) have been visiting      c) have visited      d) was visiting

37. I ..... in a gym recently.

- a) have been training      b) had been training  
c) had trained      d) trained

38. My father ..... this car for 15 years now.

- a) had      b) has been having      c) has been had      d) has had

39. He will take a nap as soon as he ..... home.

- a) has arrived      b) will arrive      c) arrives      d) a and c

40. I ..... many good and hard situation over the years.

- a) encountered      b) had encountered  
~~c) have encountered~~      d) was encountering

41. Maher ..... engineering abroad. She is still studying it.

- a) has studied    b) has been studying    c) studied    d) was studying

42. I ..... The experiment for 3 hours. I haven't reached a result yet.

- a) am doing    b) was doing    c) have done    d) have been doing

43. My secretary ..... five emails this morning.

- a) has written    b) wrote    c) had written    d) was written

44. How long ..... a car ?

- a) have you owned    b) have you been owning  
c) do you own    d) will you own

45. Dalia has practised this hobby ..... a long time.

- a) since    b) for    c) yet    d) recently

46. I haven't met a famous actor .....

- a) never    b) yet    c) ever    d) just

47. We ..... here for 6 years now and we don't intend to move.

- a) lived    b) have lived    c) have been living    d) were living

48. He ..... three sandwiches up till now.

- a) eats    b) has eaten    c) had eaten    d) is eating

49. Sama ..... lost her pen. That's why she isn't writing.

- a) had lost    b) has lost    c) was lost    d) lost

50. I have never eaten shrimps .....

- a) ever    b) by    c) before    d) after



## Unit (2) : Her story

### Revision Vocabulary

award	✓ جائزة رسمية / يمنح جائزة	cross with	غاضب من / متضايق من (شخص)
contribute to + V-ing	✓ يساهم في	cheerful	مبتهج / سعيد
contribution	✓ مساهمة / إنجاز / مشاركة	patient	صبور
contributor to	✓ يساهم في	impatient	غير صبور
lecture	✓ يحاضر / محاضرة	kind	عطوف / طيب
lecturer	✓ محاضر / استاذ جامعي	cruel	وقح / قاسي
physics	✓ الفيزياء	grumpy = bad-tempered	عبوس / نكدي
physicist	✓ فيزيائي (عالم في الفيزياء)	naughty	شقي / مشاكس / مشاغب //
prejudice = bias	✓ تحيز / تعصب / ظلم / حكم مسبق	miserable	بائس / تعيس
prejudice	✓ يحرض علي / يؤثر سلبيا علي	carry on	يستمر
qualify as	✓ يتأهل كـ	reflect	ينعكس
qualified	✓ مؤهل / كفاء	bar graph = bar chart	رسم بياني
qualification	✓ مؤهل (دراسي) / تأهل / تأهيل //	tournament	بطولة ➔
role model	✓ نموذج يقتدي به / قدوة	karate	رياضة الكاراتيه
stereotype	✓ صورة نمطية (فكرة قديمة ثابتة)	pharmacy	صيدلية
stereotype - d	✓ يصنف بشكل غير عادل	pharmacist	صيدلي
defy = break down	✓ يتحدي / يعصى / يواجه *	rank as	يصنف (يعطي شخص رتبة)
determine (to) = insist (on)	✓ يصر / يصمم	rank	تصنيف (رياضي مثلا)
determined to	✓ مصر / عاقد العزم *	overcome = fight through	يتغلب علي
determination	✓ عزيمة / إصرار	round	جولة (في بطولة)
court	✓ ملعب / محكمة *	inspire	يلهم / يشجع
podcast	✓ برنامج إذاعي علي النت / ملف وسائط	inspired	ملهم / متشجع
conclude	✓ يختتم / يستنتج	inspiring	ملهم / مشجع
conclusion	✓ خاتمة / نهاية / استنتاج / خلاصة	inspiration	إلهام / تشجيع
majority X minority	✓ أغلبية X أقلية	eye contact	تواصل بصري
proud	✓ فخور / * متكبر	percent	في المائة (%)
proudly	✓ بفخر	percentage	نسبة مئوية
equality	✓ المساواة	Alzheimer's	مرض الزهايمر
challenge	✓ يتحدي / تحدي *	innovate = create	يبدع / يبتكر
good-natured	✓ حسن المعاملة / لطيف	innovator = creative	مبدع / مبتكر
well-behaved	✓ حسن السلوك	innovation = creativity	الابتداع / الابتكار
significant	✓ مهم / لافت / ملحوظ	unique	فريد من نوعه / مميز
significance	✓ أهمية	formula	معادلة / تركيبة / صيغة / نمط
look up to	✓ يحترم / يقتدي بـ	figures	أرقام
demonstrate	✓ يوضح / يثبت / يتظاهر	spark	ينشء / شرارة بداية
conditions	✓ ظروف *	little by little	رويد رويدا / شيئا فشيئا
profile	✓ صورة / وضع / لمحة	attend	يحضر
obtain = get	✓ يحصل علي	assume	يفترض / يظن
region	✓ منطقة / إقليم	pattern	نمط / نموذج / أسلوب
require	✓ يتطلب	graduate	يتخرج / خريج
purify //	✓ ينقي / يفلتر	Rise - rose - risen	يرتفع / تشرق / يستيقظ
including	✓ مشتملا / متضمنا (من ضمنهم كذا وكذا)	adventure	مغامرة
colonial rule	✓ حكم استعماري //	obstacle	عقبة / عائق / مانع



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (2)

## Revision Vocabulary

ashamed	خجول / مكسوف	pretty	جميل
bride	العروسة	protagonist	بطل (قصة) / الشخصية الرئيسية
candle	شمعة	shake - shook - shaken	يرج / يهتز
embarrassed	محرج	stir - stirred	يُقلب (في سائل) / يحرك
fortune	ثروة / الحظ	veil	حجاب / نقاب
grateful	شاكر للجميل / ممتن	wander	يتجول (في الشوارع) / يهيم
material	مادة خام / قماش	wax	الشمع
mist	شبورة	broken heart	قلب منقطر (حزين / منكسر)

## Choose the correct answer :-

1. ~~Shamed~~... means feeling embarrassed or bad about something.

- a. Miserable    b. Ashamed    c. Grateful    d. Grumpy

2. A ~~Candle~~ is something made of wax you burn to produce light.

- a. fortune    b. veil    c. candle    d. bride

3. LM Sir, a lady in a black gown with a ~~Veil~~ is waiting for you outside.

- a. vale    b. vein    c. veil    d. veal

4. LM You must ~~Shake~~ the bottle before taking this medicine.

- a. chock    b. shock    c. leak    d. shake

5. LM I'll never forget the day my daughter put on her wedding dress and became a ~~bride~~.

- a. groom    b. bridegroom    c. pride    d. bride

## Note the following

~~graduate~~ (from)

~~graduate~~ (in)

~~graduate~~ (with) a degree in

~~a graduate~~ (of)

Think We accept graduates ..... Oxford university.

a) from

b) in

c) with

~~d) of~~

يتخرج من (جامعة كذا)  
يتخرج في (تخصص كذا / دارس كذا : طب / هندسة / قانون)  
يتخرج ومعه شهادة في (تخصص كذا)  
خريج ل (جامعة كذا / كلية كذا)

## Collocations and Expressions

make contributions	يقدم اسهامات	defy stereotypes	يتمرد على الصور النمطية
make decision	يقرر	defy prejudice/ obstacles	يتحدى التحيز/ العقبات
make speech = give	يلقي خطبة	hold back	يتراجع / يمنع
make the best of	يحسن استغلال (الشيء)	come true	يتحقق
do ... best	يبدل ما بوسعه (الشخص)	on clay courts	في الملاعب الترابية
achieve "firsts"	يحقق المراكز الاولى	in her honour	ك تكريم لها
write a piece of music	يكتب مقطوعة موسيقية	in recognition for	اعترافا بـ
carry on	يستمر	point out	يوضح
in other words	بصيغة أخرى	rank ... as	يصنف ... كـ
win (cup/race/competition/award/prize/scholarship/tournament)			يفوز بـ (شيء مادي بنفوز به)
gain (experience / knowledge / weight / height / speed)			يكتسب (شيء معنوي) / + يزداد
earn (money / his living / salary / respect / degree)			يكسب / يزداد / ينال
(be) successful = (be) a success			ناجح



**Prepositions**

expert (in / on / at)	خبير في	novel (by)	قصة ل (الكاتب فلان)
believe (in)	يؤمن ب	sparked (by)	نشأ بواسطة
argue (with)	في الختام	bring (up)	يربي (طفل)
named (after)	يجادل / يتناقش مع (شخص)	confident (about)	واثق من
prejudice (against)	تحيز ضد	tend (to)	يميل ل

**راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)**

call off = cancel	يلغي	call on = visit	يزور
-------------------	------	-----------------	------

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The meeting was called ..... as the manager was ill.

a) on

b) at

c) off

d) out

**راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة**⇒ **الصفة + V-ing**

slow-moving	بطيء الحركة	good-looking	حسن المظهر
long-lasting	يدوم لفترة طويلة	easy-going	مرن

⇒ **اسم + الصفة**

second-hand	مستعمل	first-term	الترم الاول
high-quality	جودة عالية	full-time	كامل الوقت

EX: This factory produces **high-quality** products. (-)

EX: This perfume is **long lasting**, it is very expensive. X (-)

**(الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد)****Synonyms (syn) : meaning :**

confidence	trust / belief / reliance	ثقة (اعتماد)
defy	challenge / resist / disobey	يعصي (يتحدى / يخالف)
prejudice	bias / partiality / discrimination	تحيز (تحامل / تمييز)
win	triumph / victory	فوز (انتصار)
bar graph	bar chart / diagram	رسم بياني
cross	angry / annoyed	غاضب (متضايق)
cruel	savage / inhuman / barbaric	قاسي (غير ادبي / بربري)
grumpy	bad-tempered / irritable	حاد الطبع (متأفف / نكدي)
naughty	badly behaved / disobedient	شقي / مشاغب (غير مطيع)
patient	forbearing	صبور

## Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

beat	يَهْزِم	lose	يَخْصِرُ مِنْ
confidence	ثَقَّة	distrust / doubt	انعدام الثقة / الشك
defy	يَعْصِي / يَتَحَدَّى	surrender/give up/obey/follow	يَسْتَسْلِمُ / يَطِيعُ
equality	المساواة	inequality / prejudice	عدم المساواة / تحيز
male	ذكر	female	أنثى
mental	عقلي / ذهني	physical	بدني / جسماني
win	فوز	loss	خسارة
cross	غاضب	cheerful/pleased/humoured	بشوش / سعيد / مرح
cruel	قاسي	kind/merciful/compassionate	طيب / حنون / رحيم
grumpy	حاد الطبع (متأفف / نكدي)	good-natured	حسن الطبع / لين
inspire	يلهم / يحفز	depress	يحبط / يكتئب
naughty	شقي / مشاغب	well-behaved / obedient	حسن السلوك / مطيع
patient	صبور	impatient	غير صبور
significant	هام	insignificant	غير هام

### Choose the correct answer :-

- You can't **defy** two armed men alone. The synonym of "defy" is ".....".  
☒ a. resist      ☐ b. obey      ☐ c. give up      ☐ d. surrender
- Sara is **cross** with me. "Cross" is a synonym of .....  
☒ a. angry      ☐ b. miserable      ☐ c. impatient      ☐ d. pleased
- "Bar graph" is also known as a/an .....  
☐ a. paragraph      ☐ b. bar chart      ☐ c. diagram      ☒ d. b & c
- "Patient" is to "impatient" as "....." is to "merciful".  
☐ a. forbearing      ☐ b. even-tempered      ☒ c. cruel      ☐ d. kind

### كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي

- historic** (ذو أهمية تاريخية) تأتي مع المفرد تاريخي (بناء / حدث مكان / لحظة / تاريخ يوم / مناسبة / موقع)  
 ⇒ **historic** (building/place/event/moment/day/date/site/occasion)
- historical** (غالباً مع ما يدون في اوراق او ما ي تاريخي (مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ) عرض ومع الجمع)  
 ⇒ **historical** (papers/studies/research/novels/plays/films/events/sites/buildings)
- ✓ **historic / historical (monuments)**

⇒ **The light is at the end of the tunnel**

(ضوء / نور في نهاية النفق (متفائل))

= You should be **hopeful** and **optimistic**

**LM** COVID-19 is still spreading, but **the light is at the end of the tunnel**.

This means that .....

- we will reach the end of the tunnel.
- something bad will happen.
- we should have a lot of hope even though everything is dark.
- we shouldn't be optimistic even though everything is clear.



## كل يوم راجع مهارة : مراجعة (الفعل: Verb)

⇒ **Verb** : describes what a person or thing does or what happens.

⇒ **Verb** : a word that expresses an action or a state of being.

✓ هي كلمة تشير الي حدث (ما نفعله وما يحدث) أو وصف حالة. وأنواعه هي :

action	فعل حركة (يقبل ان نزود له : ing)	phrasal	فعل إصطلاحي (فعل + حرف جر)
stative	فعل حالة (مش يقبل ان نزود له : ing)	infinitive	فعل مصدر (الفعل بدون اضافات)
auxiliary (helping)	فعل مساعد (be, do, have)	gerund	فعل + ing
modal	فعل ناقص (will, can, should, must)	transitive	فعل متعدي (وراء مفعول ويتحول للمجهول)
linking	فعل ربط (بعدهم صفة : look, feel)	intransitive	فعل لازم (مش وراء مفعول ولا يتحول للمجهول)
finite	I write ..... / He is watching ..... (فعل أساسي (أساسي : فعل الجملة الوحيد أو الاول)		
non-finite	He has done ..... (فعل غير أساسي (فعل الجملة الثاني : بعد المساعد والناقص / بعد V-ing / to)		

### Choose the correct answer :-

- The verb "**know**" is a/ an ..... verb.  
a) modal      b) auxiliary      c) stative      d) action
- The old bridge collapsed yesterday. The verb "**collapsed**" is a/ an ..... verb.  
a) transitive      b) intransitive      c) modal      d) auxiliary
- "She looks angry." The verb "**looks**" here is a/ an ..... verb.  
a) modal      b) auxiliary      c) transitive      d) linking
- I borrowed a story from the library. The verb "**borrowed**" is a/ an ..... verb.  
a) transitive      b) intransitive      c) modal      d) auxiliary
- You can use my car. I don't need it today. The verb "**can**" is a/ an ..... verb.  
a) transitive      b) intransitive      c) modal      d) auxiliary
- "Amr is doing a research currently." Which word is the finite verb :-  
a) Amr      b) is      c) doing      d) research
- "Amr is doing a research currently." Which word is the non-finite verb :-  
a) Amr      b) is      c) doing      d) research
- "Our teacher gave out the test paper on time." The verb "**give out**" here is a/ an ..... verb.  
a) modal      b) auxiliary      c) phrasal      d) linking

## الماضي التام

يكون الماضي التام من : (had + P.P)

EX: After I had done my homework, I watched TV.

الماضي التام) مش بيجي لوحده. بيجي معاه جملة ثانية : (ماضي بسيط : التصريف الثاني للفعل d/ed + أو شاذ).  
 ركز : بكدا عند فعلين (الأتنين في الماضي) بس فيه فعل سابق / حصل قبل الثاني.  
 الفعل اللي حصل الاول (ماضي تام) والفعل اللي حصل بعده (ماضي بسيط). ودا بيكون مع الكلمات الدالة دي :-

ماضي تام أو اسم : (ماضي بسيط) , (ماضي تام) After / as soon as / once / the moment  
 ماضي بسيط أو اسم : (ماضي تام) , (ماضي بسيط) Before / by the time / by

EX: After Adel had done my homework, he watched TV.

EX: Before he watched TV, he had read the novel.

EX: After lunch, he watched TV.

⇒ After / before + V-ing : (في حالة عدم وجود فاعل ولا بد ان يكون فاعل الجملتين واحد)

EX: After writing the e-mails, I sent them.

⇒ After / as soon as / before : (ماضي بسيط) , (ماضي بسيط) تتابع أحداث ورا بعض بدون فرق زمني

EX: After I wrote the email, I sent it.

⇒ after that = before + (ماضي بسيط)

⇒ before that = after + (ماضي تام)

EX: I sent the emails (before that قبل كذا / قبل ذلك = after ما بعد) I had written them.

⇒ Having + P.P. , (ماضي بسيط)

EX: Having done the shopping, Sara visited my aunt.

⇒ By : (ماضي تام) , (فترة زمنية في الماضي أو سنة عدت) لان الماضي التام حصل الاول :

EX: By 2010, I had graduated from university.

⇒ till / until : (ماضي تام) (م + didn't : ماضي بسيط منفي)

EX: He didn't park his car until he had found a place.

⇒ It wasn't until : (ماضي بسيط) that (ماضي تام)

⇒ It was only when : (ماضي بسيط) that (ماضي تام)

EX: It was only when he had found a place that he parked his car.

كر وشوف الحالات دي كمان ل (no sooner ... than / hardly ... when / scarcely ... when) :  
 الكلمات دي لو بدأت الجملة : يحصل تقديم المساعد (had) قبل (الفاعل) لانها كلمات منفية (النفي لو بدأ يحصل تقديم).  
 إنما لو جت في النص : تتحط بين (had) و (P.P) لانها كلمات منفية = (n't) : و (n't) تتحط بعد المساعد (had).

EX: No sooner we they finished work than we went homes. (بدأت عكس بدل)

EX: He had no sooner gone shopping than it started to rain. (في النص في النص)

كر وركز اكثر علي (because) لان ليها حالات كثير منها : افكر دي من الوحدة الاولى درسنا :-

⇒ because : (مضارع تام) (مضارع بسيط) المضارع التام حصل الاول واتسبب في المضارع البسيط :

EX: He is so upset because he has lost his book.

⇒ because : (ماضي تام) (ماضي بسيط) الماضي التام حصل الاول واتسبب في الماضي البسيط :

EX: He was so upset because he had lost his book.



## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

- ✓ in + سنة عدت ⇒ (ماضي بسيط)  
 ✓ by + سنة عدت ⇒ (ماضي تام)  
 ✓ since + سنة عدت ⇒ (مضارع تام)

EX: I visited Luxor in 2000.

EX: We have lived in Cairo since 2000.

EX: By 2000, I had graduated from Cairo university.

### من حالات When مع الماضي البسيط

- EX: When I reached the station, the train left. (I caught it) تتابع احداث : حدثين ورا بعض  
 EX: When I reached the station, the train had left. (I missed it) حدث سابق حدث والماضي التام الاول  
 EX: When I met Sara, she was doing homework. I offered to help. كان يحدث في نفس الوقت

### من حالات Until

- EX: She didn't sleep until she had done her homework. ⇒ (ماضي بسيط منفي معلوم)  
 EX: He refused to sleep until he had finished the reports. ⇒ (refused = didn't + م)  
 EX: The match wasn't played until the rain had stopped. ⇒ (ماضي بسيط منفي مجهول)  
 EX: He lived in Aswan until he died. ⇒ (لو قبلها ماضي بسيط مثبت ف بعدها ماضي بسيط مثبت)  
 EX: I won't sleep until I do / have done homework. ⇒ (روابط)

❖ Not until + ماضي تام + علي الجملة التلقية (تقديم) : ماضي بسيط في صيغة سؤال (did + فاعل + ماضي بسيط في صيغة سؤال)

EX: Not until he had finished his homework, did he go outside.

❖ خلي بالك (hardly/scarcely/barely) طبعاً بياخدو (when) وكمان ينفع (before).

EX: He had hardly done homework when / before he went to bed.

- ⇒ Having + P.P. : (ماضي بسيط) معلوم (مفيش ضممه ع بداية الفعل)  
 ⇒ Having + been + P.P. : (ماضي بسيط) : مجهول (ضم الحرف الاول للفعل)  
 EX: Having written the reports, Sara sent them. (بعد ان كتبت)  
 EX: Having been arrested by the police, the thief was sent to prison. (بعد ان قبض عليه)

❖ فاكّر : الكلمات اللي تحت دي لو جه وراها (فاعل) تختار (ماضي بسيط).  
 لرفع الزمن درجة : جزء من درس (التمني / الماضي الوهمي).

- ⇒ It's time + ماضي بسيط + فاعل ⇒ I'd rather + ماضي بسيط + فاعل  
 ⇒ I'd sooner + ماضي بسيط + فاعل ⇒ I wish + ماضي بسيط + فاعل  
 ⇒ If only + ماضي بسيط + فاعل

EX: It's time my father came home. I don't know why he is late.

❖ خلي بالك اكثر لو نفس الكلمات لو جه وراها (فاعل) تختار (ماضي تام) لو جاب معاها كلمة دالة علي (الماضي).

- ⇒ It's time + ماضي تام + فاعل ⇒ I'd rather + ماضي تام + فاعل  
 ⇒ I'd sooner + ماضي تام + فاعل ⇒ I wish + ماضي تام + فاعل  
 ⇒ If only + ماضي تام + فاعل

EX: I wish I had worked hard last year.

❖ معروف ان (since/for/already/ever/never) تدل علي (المضارع التام : had + P.P)

وتنفع كمان تيجي مع (الماضي التام : had + P.P) لو حدث سابق حدث ومعاها (ماضي بسيط).

EX: I met Mona yesterday. I hadn't seen her since 2010.



## زمن الماضي التام المستمر

يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر : (had been + V-ing).

EX: They **had been waiting for** an hour **when** the train arrived.

يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر لوصف حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر.  
 ركز : يعني عندك فعلين والأتين ماضي بس اللي حصل الاول واستمر لفترة : (ماضي تام مستمر)  
 واللي حصل وراه : (ماضي بسيط : التصريف الثاني للفعل : d/ed + أو شاذ).  
 ركز أكثر : شرط رئيسي لاختيار (الماضي التام المستمر) وجود جملة تاتيه (ماضي بسيط) وكمان (كلمة استمرار).  
 ودا بيكون مع الكلمات دي :-

✓ ماضي تام مستمر بدال ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط + before / by the time / when

و لازم وجود كلمه داله ع الاستمرار زي :-

✓ مدة زمنية + all / the whole / since / for

EX: She **had been sleeping since** ten o'clock **before** I wake her up.

EX: He **had been smoking for** 30 years **when** he finally gave it up.

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

يلاحظ أن أفعال الحالة التي لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة حتى مع وجود كلمات تدل على الاستمرار في الجملة.  
 هذه الأفعال نضعهم في زمن (الماضي التام) بدلا من (الماضي التام المستمر) وهم :-

⇒ see/hear/\*look/like/want/need/be/\*have/own/seem / \*think / believe

EX: I **had known** Samy **for** three years **before** he travelled abroad.

بس خلي بالك ان الافعال دي لو جت بمعنى تاني غير معناها الاصلي تنفع في الاستمرار شوف الجمل دي :-

EX: Mazen **had been looking for** work **for** over a year **before** he got a job. (يبحث عن)

يستخدم من أشهر كلمات (الماضي التام المستمر) : (for + مدة + when / before).

يستخدم من أشهر كلمات (المضارع التام المستمر) : (for + مدة + now).

EX: It **has been raining for** three hours **now**.

يستخدم من أشهر كلمات (How long) تدل على الأزمنة التامة المستمرة (مضارع تام مستمر و ماضي تام مستمر).

EX: How long **have you been smoking**?

EX: How long **had you been smoking before** you **stopped**?

يستخدم من أشهر كلمات (because) لان ليها حالات كثير منها : افكر لحد دلوقتي درسنا :-

بشرط الجملتين حصلوا في نفس الوقت في الماضي : لان في نفس الوقت : (ماضي مستمر) because (ماضي بسيط)

EX: Magdy **couldn't** hear the phone **because** he **was having** a shower.

بشرط الجملتين حصلوا في نفس الوقت في الماضي : لان في نفس الوقت : (مضارع تام) because (مضارع بسيط)

EX: He **is** so upset **because** he **has lost** his book.

بشرط يجيب كلمة استمرار من اللي فوق : (مضارع تام مستمر) because (مضارع بسيط)

EX: She **feels** so tired **because**he **has been cleaning** the house **all the day**.

بشرط الجملتين حصلوا في نفس الوقت في الماضي : لان في نفس الوقت : (ماضي تام) because (ماضي بسيط)

EX: He **was** so upset **because**he **had lost** his book.

بشرط يجيب كلمة استمرار من اللي فوق : (ماضي تام مستمر) because (ماضي بسيط)

EX: There **were** floods **because**it **had been raining for** three days.

يستخدم من أشهر كلمات (عدد + جمع) نستخدم الماضي التام وليس الماضي التام المستمر:

EX: **Before** I met Ahmed, he **had finished** typing **3 reports**.



## مقارنة الصفات

## مقارنه التساوى : مقارنه درجة اولى : (مقارنه ١ - ١)

كـه نستخدم ( as ) الصفة كما هي ( as ) بمعنى (مثل) عندما يتساوى الطرفان فى الصفة فى (الاثبات)

كـه نستخدم ( as ) الصفة كما هي ( not as / so ) عندما لا يتساوى الطرفان فى الصفة فى (النفي).

⇒ as + الصفة + as EX: Mazen is as old as Marawan. (فى الاثبات)

⇒ as/so + الصفة + as EX: The car isn't as / so fast as the bike. (فى النفي)

⇒ as + الصفة + as = the same + الاسم من الصفة **خلي بالك :**

الصفة	الاسم منها	الصفة	الاسم منها
old	age	tall - high	height
wide	width	heavy	weight
deep	depth	long	length

EX: Rania is as old as Rasha. They have the same age.

## مقارنه التفضيل : مقارنة درجة ثانية (مقارنة ١ أكبر / أصغر من ١)

كـه نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er) و نضع بعدها (than).

كـه نستخدم (than) الصفة الطويلة (more) بمعنى (أكثر ... من) أو (than) الصفة الطويلة (less) بمعنى (أقل ... من).

⇒ er + than EX: The plane is faster than the ship.

⇒ more/less + than EX: Gold is more expensive than copper.

**خلي بالك من الملاحظة الجميلة دي :-**

يمكن أن نضع هذه الكلمات امام الصفة الدرجة الثانية فقط لنقوية أو لإضعاف الصفة باستخدام :-

⇒ much - a lot - far - even كثيرا / a little - a bit قليلاً / slightly بدرجة طفيفة / rather

EX: The camera is a bit cheaper than the computer.

EX: Travelling by a plane is much more expensive than travelling by a train.

## مقارنه التفضيل العليا : مقارنة درجة ثالثة (مقارنة ١ : مجموعة)

كـه نضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) و نضع قبلها (the).

كـه نستخدم (the most + الصفة الطويلة) بمعنى (الأكثر ...) أو (the least + الصفة الطويلة) بمعنى (الأقل ...).

⇒ est EX: Mount Everest is the highest in the world.

⇒ the most/ the least EX: Elephant is the most enormous animal.

كـه هناك بعض الصفات الشاذة مثل :-

الصفة	مقارنة تفضيل / درجة ثانية	مقارنة تفضيل عليا / درجة ثالثة	المعنى
good	better than	the best	جيد / أفضل من / الأفضل
bad	worse than	the worst	سيء / أسوأ من / الأسوأ

EX: in the competition, Fatma was better than Samira.

EX: Travelling to France is the worst experience I passed in my life.

## مقتطفات هامة :-

⇒ the (more .../less .../صفة+er) ⇒ (of the two/of the twins) لو بالجملة

EX: Tamer is the taller of the two brothers.



عندما نريد أن نقول أن هناك شيئاً يعتمد على شيء آخر نستخدم ( كلما ... كلما ... كلما ... ) .

⇒ The (more .../less .../صفة +er) ..... , the (more/less/صفة +er) .....

EX: The older you get, the more cautious you become.

EX: Samy is older than Ramy. (older / oldest) ونضع معهم (than / the)

EX: Waleed is my elder brother. (elder / eldest) داخل نطاق العائلة ولا يأتي معها XX (than / the)

EX: Cairo is farther than Benha. أبعد (المسافات)

EX: I have nothing further to say. أكثر من ذلك / المزيد

EX: Now, I am studying my lessons, and I will visit you later. (في وقت لاحق / لاحقاً / بعدين)

EX: I have two mobile phones. One is Samsung and the latter is Oppo.. (الثاني : في الترتيب)

EX: Yesterday was cold but today is even colder. even : (الثانية) ل (الاولى) نرفع الصفة درجة من

الضمائر الغير معروفة يأتي بعدها الصفة مع ان (الصفة بتكون قبل الاسم) ولكن مع الضمانر الغير معروفة العكس وهم :-

⇒ someone - everyone somebody - something - somewhere

EX: I want to tell you something important. ⇒ XX : important something

⇒ the + صفة = جمع ⇒ are / were / have / s فعل بدون

EX: The disabled need a lot of care.

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

### Most من حالات

EX: I like Arabic most/best.

أكثر شيء : (the) بدون most/best

EX: The match was most / very interesting.

جداً : اي صفة + very = most

EX: I love all sports, but I love football most of all.

(أكثر من أي شيء آخر / أكثر شيء)

EX: He is the tallest of his friends in the class.

(اشخاص / جمع / سنوات) في الدرجة الثالثة : of

EX: Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(مكان / مفرد) في الدرجة الثالثة : in

⇒ my, his, her / the first / ('s / s') + XX the لوجه وراهم صفة (درجة تالته) احذف

EX: It was his biggest achievement in chemistry.

XX : the biggest

• في المقارنة (الدرجة الاولى) بعد (as) وفي المقارنة (الدرجة الثانية) بعد (than) يعني الطرف الثاني في المقارنة نستخدم

(ضمير مفعول : me / him / her) أو (ضمير فاعل + فعل : I am / he is)

EX: Samy is as taller as me / I am.

EX: Adel has as many friends as me / I do. : has هنا فعل اساسي

معروف في مقارنة التفضيل (١:١) نزود للصفة (القصيرة) (er) ثم نضع (than). صح طبعا.

ويمكن كمان استخدم (less) قبل (الصفة القصيرة بس) بدون (er) بمعنى (أقل). مث (more) xx.

EX: Plane is faster than car.

= Car is less fast than plane.

XX plane is more fast than car. XX



## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

### Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. Consult your ..... if you have health problems.  
a) physician      b) physicist      c) chemical      d) lawyer
2. Log on to the charity's website if you want to .....  
a) lectured      b) contributed      c) qualified      d) determined
3. Please ..... on your actions before you do them.  
a) prejudice      b) reflect      c) defy      d) inspire
4. The beauty of the scene ..... description.  
a) prejudices      b) reflects      c) defies      d) inspires
5. Queen Elizabeth lived in the ..... in Buckingham.  
a) court      b) apartment      c) contribution      d) association
6. The King consulted with his ....., which included his most trusted advisors.  
a) classmates      b) colleagues      c) court      d) lecture
7. China has been in the front ..... of the world mass production.  
a) rank      b) class      c) role model      d) prejudice
8. I would agree with you, but with one .....  
a) court      b) qualification      c) contribution      d) association
9. Almost all coins are .....  
a) triangle      b) round      c) rectangular      d) square
10. Homeless people are ..... as evil men or addicts.  
a) prejudiced      b) defied      c) stereotyped      d) qualified
11. He was ..... about the bad service at the hotel.  
a) grumpy      b) grump      c) cross      d) sad
12. The manager was cross ..... Ali who came late for the meeting.  
a) with      b) about      c) from      d) to
13. Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar was cross ..... Ali's behaviour at the class.  
a) with      b) about      c) from      d) to

### Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

14. Reports ..... until the manager had asked that.  
a) sent      b) didn't send      c) weren't sent      d) don't send
15. Not until he had prepared everything, ..... to Alexandria.  
a) he travelled      b) that he travelled      c) did he travel      d) he had travelled
16. I didn't buy my needs ..... I had lost my money.  
a) till      b) because      c) having      d) before
17. Mazen ..... after his little brother for an hour when his mother shopped.  
a) has looked      b) has been looking      c) had looked      d) had been looking
18. I ..... this flat for 15 years now.  
a) have been owning      b) have been owned      c) owned      d) have owned
19. He had hardly done homework ..... he went to bed.  
a) while      b) after      c) before      d) on
20. Having the car ....., I reported the police.  
a) stolen      b) being stolen      c) been stolen      d) stealing



21. Soha ..... back until he had done the shopping.  
~~a) wasn't~~      b) didn't      c) weren't      d) doesn't
22. No sooner ..... painting our new house than we moved into it.  
a) finishing      b) we had finished      ~~c) did we finish~~      d) finished
23. .... lunchtime, everybody had returned home.  
a) After      ~~b) During~~      c) By      d) While
24. Sara ..... after her little sister for two hours before her mother returned from shopping.  
~~a) had been looking~~      ~~b) had looked~~  
c) was looking      d) has been looking
25. I was exhausted because I ..... of a solution for the problem for two days.  
a) had been thinking      b) has been thinking  
c) was thinking      d) thought
26. LM I didn't send the report until it ..... well.  
a) was revising      b) had revised  
c) have been revised      d) had been revised
27. LM The match ..... when I reached the stadium; I missed the exciting start.  
a) will begin      b) had begun      c) was beginning      d) have begun
28. LM I saw my friend Fares last week. I ..... him since 2019.  
a) hadn't seen      b) haven't seen      c) didn't see      d) won't see
29. LM Unfortunately, he missed the train. When he ..... the station, the train .....  
a) reached / has left      b) had reached / left  
c) reached / had left      d) was reaching / has left
30. LM Which of the following is **structurally correct**?  
a) Once I have heard the good news, I contacted Adel.  
~~b) Once I heard the good news, I had contacted Adel.~~  
c) Once I had been hearing the good news, I contacted Adel.  
d) Once I had heard the good news, I contacted Adel.
31. Marawan is taller than .....  
a) mine      b) me      c) I am      ~~d) b and c~~
31. She doesn't work as hard as .....  
a) mine      ~~b) I do~~      c) me      d) I am
33. The best event ..... 2020 is getting the best award in writing.  
a) on      b) in      ~~c) of~~      d) at
34. He is the fastest runner ..... the race.  
a) of      ~~b) in~~      c) into      d) with
35. He is the fastest runner ..... the races.  
~~a) of~~      b) in      c) into      d) with
36. I watched a ..... exciting film yesterday.  
a) so      b) such      c) more      ~~d) most~~
37. Cairo is the first ..... city in Egypt.  
a) large      b) larger      ~~c) largest~~      d) the largest



## Unit Two

### Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:-

1. It's a ..... to think that sports people have healthy eating habits.  
a) prejudice      b) stereotype      c) type      d) incident
2. I am very sad. My favourite team has lost in the first ..... of the competition.  
a) court      b) final      c) cup      d) round
3. His answers in the exam paper ..... hard work and careful thought.  
a) lectures      b) competes      c) reflects      d) attends
4. A positive role model is someone .....  
a) who copies other people's good behavior.  
b) whose behavior is good enough for other people to copy.  
c) who avoids imitating <sup>يقاد</sup> other people's bad behavior.  
d) whose behavior is too bad to be copied by others.
5. Mo Salah is considered to be a good example to follow. It means that he is a ..... for them.  
a) football star      b) role model      c) stereotype      d) famous player
6. I concluded my speech by thanking everyone. The word "concluded" means .....  
a) began      b) completed      c) closed      d) paused
7. No one can deny the ..... of the use of internet in our life.  
a) presentation      b) significance      c) qualification      d) celebration
8. To reach your goal, you have to overcome the ..... you will face.  
a) obstacles      b) borders      c) patterns      d) competitions
9. He has ..... in many universities all over the world.  
a) confirmed      b) lectured      c) prejudiced      d) generated
10. The police have made a great ..... to stopping crime in our town.  
a) distribution      b) institution      c) presentation      d) contribution
11. Lack of hygiene <sup>النظافة الشخصية</sup> is a/an ..... to diseases.  
a) instructor      b) governor      c) author      d) contributor
12. I wish I could qualify to the final of this .....  
a) round      b) court      c) tournament      d) attention
13. His last film has won the best film ..... in Cairo international film festival.  
a) award      b) contribution      c) prejudice      d) stereotype
14. Women no longer face ..... in our society. They now enjoy their full rights.  
a) award      b) contribution      c) prejudice      d) stereotype
15. My favourite tennis player was injured and carried out of the .....  
a) lecture      b) court      c) prejudice      d) attention
16. The teacher wrote the.....1 and 4 and asked a pupils to write them in letters.  
a) statements      b) figures      c) atoms      d) symbols
17. My sister is always grumpy in the early morning. The word "grumpy" means .....  
a) well-behaved      b) good-natured      c) bad-tempered      d) hard-hearted
18. Miss Rania is kind and ..... with children. They love her so much.  
a) intolerant      b) anxious      c) patient      d) cross
19. The listening texts are available as ..... on the EKB website.  
a) attitude      b) obstacle      c) podcast      d) prejudice
20. I want to study medicine and ..... as a doctor.  
a) attend      b) qualify      c) innovate      d) defy



21. Are you going to play tricks on **يخدع** me again, you ..... boy?  
 a) cross      b) well-behaved      c) ~~naughty~~      d) obedient
22. Sometimes I get very ..... with the children when they make noise.  
 a) cheerful      b) cross      c) well-behaved      d) tolerant
23. I despise **يحتقر** anyone who is ..... to animals. **سيوطا**  
 a) cheerful      b) pleased      c) kind      d) ~~cruel~~ **عاس**
24. My love for football was ..... by my elder brother, a good footballer.  
 a) ~~qualified~~      b) retired      c) sparked      d) trusted
25. Many African countries suffered a lot during years and years of .....  
 a) grand Slam      b) heavy rain      c) colonial rule      d) role model
26. Don't worry. Your English will improve .....  
 a) side by side      b) few by few      c) ~~little by little~~      d) once upon a time
27. Why are you cross ..... me, Samy? Have I done anything wrong?  
 a) about      b) on      c) at      d) with
28. If you carry on ..... neglecting **يهمل** your lessons, you will fail.  
 a) out      b) on      c) towards      d) with
29. You can ..... the information you need from the Egyptian Knowledge Bank.  
 a) assume      b) influence      c) beat      d) obtain
30. Zewail's getting the Noble Prize changed the ..... of Egypt before the world.  
 a) attitude      b) obstacle      c) podcast      d) profile
31. The ..... shows that the prices of flats have risen over the last five years by 50%.  
 a) region      b) trouble      c) pattern      d) graph
32. .... obstacles and difficulties. Never give up.  
 a) Compete      b) Innovate      c) Attend      d) Defy
33. I ..... this isn't Samy. Samy is abroad now.  
 a) assume      b) influence      c) beat      d) obtain
34. The delta is the most densely populated **ذات كثافة سكانية عالية** ..... in Egypt.  
 a) region      b) figure      c) pattern      d) graph
35. Animals can adapt to the hard ..... in their environment.  
 a) reactions      b) contributions      c) conditions      d) associations
36. The research ..... the link between poverty and crime.  
 a) honours      b) generates      c) ~~sparks~~      d) demonstrate
37. In the last years, the ..... of life has changed dramatically.  
 a) region      b) figure      c) pattern      d) graph
38. He spent his childhood in orphanage **دار ايتام** with a/an ..... life.  
 a) naughty      b) miserable      c) impressive      d) significant
39. Dreams and imagination can be an ideal source of ..... for artists.  
 a) collection      b) deterioration      c) inspiration      d) presentation
40. All the students in the class look at Mr. Ahmed with respect and admiration. This means they ..... him.  
 a) look up to      b) look forward to      c) are cross with      d) name themselves after

## Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions

41. Ahmed Zewail ..... big contributions to science and humanity.  
 a) did      b) made      c) had      d) got
42. Solar power can be used to ..... electricity.  
 a) honour      b) generate      c) spark      d) demonstrate



43. I ..... a scholarship from Cambridge University in the UK to study the English literature.  
a) made    ☒ b) won    c) earned    d) gained
44. The activities you ..... at club help you improve your skills.  
a) make    ☒ b) do    c) give    d) take
45. We must ..... the best of time to reach our goals.  
a) make    b) do    c) give    d) take
46. The question you have ..... is very important.  
a) awarded    b) rose    ☒ c) raised    d) been
47. In ....., I can't imagine life without friends.  
a) operation    ☒ b) conclusion    c) distribution    d) contribution
48. He was honoured ..... an award in the poetry competition.  
a) of    ☒ b) with    c) from    d) at
49. I was named ..... my uncle. We both have the same name Mahmoud.  
a) in    b) to    ☒ c) after    d) before
50. My parents named my brother after my grandfather. This means .....  
☒ a) First, they named my grandfather, then they named my brother.  
☒ b) They gave my brother the name of my grandfather.  
c) After they named my brother, they named my grandfather.  
d) They gave my grandfather the name of my brother.



## Unit Two : Grammar

## تمارين علي الماضي التام والماضي المستمر

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As soon as the bell ..... , the students ran to the playground.

- a) rings      b) have rung      c) had rung      d) will ring

2. I had graduated in 2004 after that my father ..... in 2006.

- a) died      b) had died      c) have died      d) was dying

3. I worked in the ministry of education before that I ..... in 2004.

- a) graduated      b) had graduated      c) have graduated      d) was graduating

4. Before ..... for Paris, he had arranged everything.

- a) leaving      b) left      c) had left      d) leave

5. Before I went out, I ..... my lessons for three years.

- a) studied      b) had studied      c) is studying      d) had been studying

6. By 2005 , I ..... my three famous poems.

- a) had written      b) will have      c) has written      d) wrote

7. In 2012 , I ..... my first novel. It was a great achievement for me.

- a) had written      b) will have      c) has been writing      d) wrote

8. When he travelled abroad, he ..... here for five years.

- a) was living      b) had been living      c) has lived      d) have been living

9. No sooner ..... an accident than he was taken to hospital.

- a) had he had      b) he had had      c) was he having      d) he had

10. As soon as we reached school, the first lesson ..... .

- a) had begun      b) began      c) have begun      d) begun

11. Mazen felt homesick because he ..... travelling for five months.

- a) has been      b) was      c) is      d) had been

12. Mr. El naggar ..... a teacher for 10 years before he resigned from work.

- a) had been      b) had been being      c) have been      d) was being

13. When Amr arrived, we ..... dinner. He found nothing to eat.

- a) have had      b) had had      c) had      d) were having

14. The streets were very wet because it ..... for five hours.

- a) rain      b) was raining      c) had rained      d) had been raining

15. I returned the novel to the library when I ..... it.

- a) will read      b) had read      c) was reading      d) have read

16. After they ..... the match, the players jumped with joy.

- a) would win      b) win      c) winning      d) had won

17. I said "Hello" to Ali, but he couldn't hear me because he ..... talking on the phone.

- a) has listened      b) was listening      c) is listening      d) would listen

18. They couldn't go swimming because they ..... their swimsuits.

- a) forget      b) have forgotten      c) had forgotten      d) will forget

19. I ..... hard all days of the term, so I felt that I deserved a holiday.

- a) had worked      b) am working      c) have been working      d) had been working



38  
40

20. Having ..... the shopping, I returned home.

- a) finish      b) she finished      c) she finishes      ☒ d) finished

21. How many stories ..... before he died?

- a) had he written      ☒ b) he had witten  
c) had he been writing      d) he had been writing

22. My car were looked clean because I ..... it all morning.

- ☒ a) had washed      ☒ b) had been washing  
c) am washing      d) had been washed

23. He ..... the emails until he had revised them.

- ☒ a) didn't send      b) sent      c) weren't sent      d) hadn't sent

24. The emails ..... until he had revised them.

- a) didn't send      b) sent      ☒ c) weren't sent      d) hadn't sent

25. There were leaves on the ground because strong wind ..... for two days.

- a) was blowing      ☒ b) had been blowing  
c) has been blowing      d) had blown

26. He ..... English for ten years before he became a teacher.

- a) had been learned      b) was learning      ☒ c) had been learning      d) learned

27. She ..... the city before the school trip.

- a) already visited      ☒ b) had already visited      c) has already visited      d) visits

28. She ..... the city after the school trip.

- ☒ a) already visited      b) had already visited      c) has already visited      d) visits

29. How long ..... English before you retired?

- ☒ a) you had taught      b) you had been teaching  
c) had you been teaching      d) had you taught

30. When I returned home, he discovered that I ..... money at the office.

- ☒ a) had forgotten      b) has forgotten      c) was forgetting      d) forget

31. The tourists ..... walking until they had reached the top of the mountain.

- ☒ a) didn't stop      b) stopped      c) haven't stopped      d) won't stop

32. Mazen..... computer games since the morning when his father reached home.

- a) played      b) had been played      c) had played      ☒ d) had been playing

33. Marawan ..... the piano for 10 years before she became a good musician.

- ☒ a) had been playing      b) had played      c) played      d) had been played

34. It was only ..... Mum had returned that I left home.

- a) after      b) before      ☒ c) when      d) until

35. He had scarcely left the room ..... his telephone started ringing.

- a) as      b) than      ☒ c) when      d) after

36. He ..... the room when his telephone started ringing.

- a) hardly leaves      b) had left hardly      c) hardly had left      ☒ d) had hardly left

37. No sooner ..... the room than his telephone started ringing.

- ☒ a) had he left      b) he had left      c) he leaves      d) he left

38. I ..... all day, so I was tired.

- a) studied      b) has been studying      ☒ c) had been studying      d) was studying

39. By the time I arrived home, mum ..... lunch.

- a) prepared      ☒ b) had already prepared      c) would prepare      d) was preparing

40. We arrived an hour late. The film ..... half an hour before.

- a) began      b) was beginning      ☒ c) had begun      d) has begun



## Unit Two : Grammar

### تمارين علي مقارنة الصفات

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cat isn't ..... intelligent as fox.  
a) so                      b) very                      c) than                      d) the
2. Cat isn't ..... intelligent as fox.  
a) so                      b) as                      c) than                      d) a and b
3. Burg Khalifa in Dubia is the ..... structure in the world.  
a) high                      b) higher                      c) highest                      d) highly
4. Mazen looks ..... today as he has won the prize.  
a) happier                      b) happy                      c) happiest                      d) the happiest
5. You can work as good as .....  
a) hers                      b) he                      c) him                      d) his
6. You can work as good as .....  
a) hers                      b) he is                      c) him                      d) b and c
7. I met ..... yesterday during my job interview yesterday.  
a) important someone                      b) someone important  
c) important somebody                      d) important anyone
8. Adel is the second ..... student in the class.  
a) taller                      b) the taller                      c) tallest                      d) the tallest
9. Arabic is my brother's ..... favourite subject.  
a) most                      b) the most                      c) the more                      d) the less
10. Planes gain speed and become faster and ..... in air.  
a) fast                      b) fastest                      c) faster                      d) as fast
11. Ola is as tall as Hoda. They are the same .....  
a) intelligence                      b) length                      c) height                      d) age
12. Ola is as ..... as Hoda. They are the same age.  
a) tall                      b) heavy                      c) high                      d) old
13. I think Samy is ..... than his brother.  
a) strong                      b) much stronger                      c) more stronger                      d) the strongest
14. The harder you work, the ..... marks you get.  
a) high                      b) higher                      c) highest                      d) more high
15. The more you train, the ..... you become.  
a) fit                      b) fittest                      c) fitter                      d) more fat
16. Tortoise is ..... of all animals.  
a) slow                      b) slower                      c) the slowest                      d) as slow
17. Your performance in this term is ..... better than the last term.  
a) alittle                      b) more                      c) a lot of                      d) a lot
18. The plane is ..... faster than train.  
a) much                      b) a lot of                      c) lots of                      d) many
19. Yesterday was hot, but today is even .....  
a) hot                      b) less hot                      c) hotter                      d) more hot

20. The computer is ..... than laptop.  
**a) the cheapest**   **b) more cheap**   **c) much cheaper**   **d) cheap**
21. I will write you soon; see you .....  
**a) late**   **b) latter**   **c) last**   **d) later**
22. I have two cars. One is black and the ..... is red.  
**a) later**   **b) latter**   **c) latest**   **d) late**
23. Your answer looks bad, but Ahmed's answer looks .....  
**a) bad**   **b) worse**   **c) more bad**   **d) worst**
24. My ..... brother is thirty years old.  
**a) old**   **b) oldest**   **c) elder**   **d) older**
25. Ali is five years ..... than me.  
**a) old**   **b) oldest**   **c) elder**   **d) older**
26. My grandpa is the ..... in the family.  
**a) eldest**   **b) oldest**   **c) elder**   **d) older**
27. In winter, weather is becoming ..... freezing in some countries in Europe.  
**a) more and more**   **b) much and more**  
**c) more and less**   **d) less and more**
28. Mazen is the ..... of the two interviewees.  
**a) suitable**   **b) more suitable**   **c) most suitable**   **d) least suitable**
29. Mazen is ..... of the twins.  
**a) more young**   **b) youngest**   **c) the younger**   **d) younger**
30. Mazen is the ..... of the three brothers.  
**a) more young**   **b) the youngest**   **c) the younger**   **d) younger**
31. Football is the ..... dangerous sport in the world.  
**a) more**   **b) most**   **c) less**   **d) as**
32. Charles Dickens is ..... writer I've ever read to.  
**a) cleverer**   **b) clever**   **c) less clever**   **d) the cleverest**
33. I have never read a novel ..... this one.  
**a) as interesting as**   **b) interesting**  
**c) more interesting than**   **d) the most interesting**
34. For ..... information, please phone us.  
**a) farthest**   **b) farther**   **c) further**   **d) furthest**
36. Which subject do you like .....?  
**a) less**   **b) the less**   **c) most**   **d) the most**
37. I prefer watching all sports, but I love watching football ..... of all.  
**a) more**   **b) much**   **c) the most**   **d) most**



## Unit (3): Beyond Imagination

### Revision Vocabulary

<b>surround (by)</b>	يُحيط ب / يُطوق ب	<b>drugs</b>	أدوية / مخدرات / عقاقير
<b>surround sound</b>	صوت مجسم مكرر	<b>process</b>	عملية (إجراءات طبيعية)
<b>record</b>	يسجل / سجل	<b>in the process of</b>	منهمك في / منشغل ب
<b>speaker</b>	ميكروفون / سماعة / مكبر الصوت	<b>operation</b>	عملية جراحية
<b>T-ring = T-paper</b>	ميكروفون / سماعة من الورق التقليدي	<b>come into operation</b>	في حيز التنفيذ
<b>immerse (in / into)</b>	يُغمق نفسه / يُدخل / يبهل *	<b>sensor</b>	جهاز استشعار / حساس
<b>immersed (in / into)</b>	منهمك في / منشغل ب	<b>surgeon</b>	جراح (طبيب)
<b>immersive</b>	مبهل / جذاب / غامر / اندماجي	<b>surgery</b>	جراحة (عملية)
<b>implement = carry out</b>	يُنفذ / يُطبق	<b>surgical</b>	جراحي
<b>experiment (on)</b>	يجري تجربة / تجربة / يمر بتجربة	<b>surgical tools</b>	أدوات جراحية
<b>experimental</b>	تجريبي / إختباري / تحت التجربة	<b>treat</b>	يعالج / * يعامل
<b>mass-produced</b>	منتج بكميات كبيرة	<b>treatment</b>	علاج / * معاملة
<b>mass production</b>	إنتاج شامل (غزير)	<b>cure</b>	يعالج / علاج
<b>astronaut</b>	رائد فضاء	<b>spectacular</b>	مذهل
<b>astronomer</b>	عالم فلك	<b>spectacularly</b>	بشكل مذهل
<b>space</b>	الفضاء	<b>convenient</b>	مناسب / ملائم
<b>spacecraft</b>	سفينة فضاء	<b>inconvenient</b>	غير مناسب / مزعج
<b>universe</b>	الكون	<b>planet</b>	كوكب
<b>universal</b>	عالمي	<b>innovate</b>	يبتكر / يبدع
<b>robot</b>	إنسان آلي	<b>innovation</b>	إبداع / ابتكار
<b>argue</b>	يجادل / يناقش بحدة	<b>innovative</b>	إبداعي / ابتكاري
<b>argument</b>	جدال / نقاش	<b>average</b>	متوسط / معدل / عادي
<b>depend on</b>	يعتمد على / يتوقف على	<b>on average</b>	في المتوسط / بمعدل
<b>apprentice</b>	صبي / تحت التمرين	<b>approach</b>	طريقة / أسلوب / * يقترب من
<b>autonomously run</b>	تدار بشكل مستقل	<b>accurate</b>	دقيق
<b>balance</b>	توازن	<b>accurately</b>	بدقة
<b>on balance</b>	إجمالاً : أخذ كل شيء في الاعتبار	<b>artificial</b>	إصطناعي
<b>on sale</b>	تخفيضات	<b>artificial intelligence</b>	الذكاء الاصطناعي
<b>on a bigger scale</b>	على نطاق أوسع	<b>trainers</b>	مدربين / حذاء
<b>curious</b>	فضولي	<b>smart trainers</b>	حذاء رياضي ذكي
<b>exist</b>	يوجد	<b>burning questions</b>	أسئلة ملحة
<b>survive</b>	ينجو من حادث / يبقى حيا	<b>evidence</b>	دليل
<b>survival</b>	النجاة / البقاء على قيد الحياة	<b>paper-thin</b>	في رف الورقة
<b>3D = three dimensional</b>	ثلاثي الأبعاد	<b>essential</b>	ضروري
<b>application (app)</b>	تطبيق	<b>flat</b>	مستوي / مسطح
<b>illustrate</b>	يزود بالصور والرسوم / * يوضح / يفسر	<b>addict to +V-ing</b>	يُدمن
<b>illustrated</b>	مُصور (به صور ورسومات)	<b>addicted to</b>	مُدمن
<b>conquer</b>	يعزو / يقهر / يتغلب على	<b>addiction</b>	إدمان
<b>measure</b>	يقيس	<b>green technology</b>	تكنولوجيا صديقة للبيئة
<b>security</b>	الامن	<b>recycle</b>	يعيد تصنيع / تدوير
<b>diabetes</b>	مرض السكر	<b>advertise</b>	يعلن / يروج ل سلعة
<b>diabetic</b>	مريض سكر	<b>identify</b>	يتعرف على
<b>diabetic coma</b>	غيبوبة سكر	<b>create = provide</b>	يوفر / يخلق
<b>solar system</b>	النظام الشمسي / المجموعة الشمسية	<b>surface</b>	سطح / وجه



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (3)

## Revision Vocabulary

apprentice	صبي (تحت التمرين)	spider's web	عش العنكبوت
apprenticeship	تدريب مهني	wrap - wrapped	يغلف / يلف
has a heart of stone	قلب قاسي	lay - laid - lain	تعد المائدة (تجهز السفرة)
got a black eye	تورمت عينه	couldn't put finger on	لم يستطع التعرف على
that's your lot	هذا هو نصيبك	pale skin	بشرة شاحبة
behave yourself	أدب نفسك / احسن التصرف	send .... away	يطرد
dusty	مترب (عليه تراب)	gloomy	كئيب / مظلم / حزين

## Choose the correct answer :-

- When I returned home, I saw that the table was ..... for lunch.  
a. involved      b. complicated      c. addicted      **d. laid**
- The present was ..... in colourful paper.  
a. laid      b. grapped      **c. wrapped**      d. monitored
- There is a pile of ..... old books on the shelf.  
a. tidied      **b. dusty**      c. clean      d. empty
- He worked for a year as a builder's .....  
a. assistant      b. trainer      **c. apprentice**      d. seller
- LM** The protagonist البطل has a heart of stone. This means he .....  
a. had a sick heart      b. is very naïve      c. is very practical      **d. is very cruel**

## Note the following

⌘ spend + مدة زمنية + V-ing

⌘ take + مدة زمنية + to + مصدر

EX: Sama **spent** two hours **revising** physics.

EX: It **took** her two hours **to revise** physics.

يقضي

يستغرق / يقضي

⌘ as well as / in addition to / besides + V-ing / اسم

**+ PLUS** (فعل يتبع الفاعل الاول) + as well as + فاعل ثاني + فاعل اول

EX: Samy as well as I **is** friends.

بالإضافة الى

## Collocations and Expressions

cause / do harm to	يسبب ضرر ل	make film	يصنع فيلم
cause / do damage to	يسبب ضرر ل	make list	يصنع قائمة
do (well / badly)	يؤدي بشكل (جيد / سيء)	immerse the audience	يستحوذ على الجمهور
do some research	يقوم ببعض الأبحاث	discover a cure for	يكتشف علاج ل
go as far back as the 1930s	تعود الى الثلاثينيات	build (cars/machines)	يصنع (سيارات / آلات)
go down as low as .. degrees	تنخفض الى .. درجة	at a competitive price	بسرعة تنافسي
cut open patient's body	يفتح / يشق جسم المريض	on the whole	بصفة عامة
do = perform = carry out (an operation / tasks)			يؤدي عملية جراحية (طبيب) / يؤدي المهام
have an operation			لديه (تجري له) عملية جراحية (مريض)
Process (photosynthesis البناء الضوئي / aging في السن / making paper)			عملية (طبيعة خطوات متتالية)
processed (food / cheese / meat / fish)			مُعَلَّب / مُعَالَج كيميائيا (أكل)
potentially mass-produced			يُحْتَمَل ان تكون منتجة بكميات كبيرة



## Prepositions

search (for)	يبحث عن	carry (out)	ينفذ
problem (with)	مشكلة في	run (out of)	ينفذ / ينتهي
(on) display	معروض	involve .... (in)	يقحم .... في
throw (away)	يتخلص من / يرمي بعيدا	warn (about / of)	يحذر بخصوص

## راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

come across	يكتشف	come round = call on = visit	يزور
come back	يعود / يرجع	come round to	يسترد وعيه
come out = publish	يظهر / ينشر ويطلع	come up with = innovate = invent	يبتكر

Come into

يأتي / يورث

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We are hopeful that prices will come ..... these days.

a) across      b) down      c) into      d) back

2. He came ..... a lot of money after his father died.

a) across      b) into      c) back      d) down

## راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة

⇒ P.P. + الظرف :

الصفة المركبة اللي اولها (ظرف ب ly) ينفع تحط الشرطة (-) وينفع تشيلها

badly-written	مكتوب بشكل سيء	well-behaved	حسن السلوك
highly-respected	يحظى باحترام كبير	well-educated	متعلم جيدا
widely-spoken	يتم التحدث بها على نطاق واسع	well-informed	مطلع
densely-populated	كثيف السكان	well-known	مشهور

EX: English is a ( widely-spoken /widely spoken ) language.

EX: English language is widely spoken.

## (الكلمة و المرادف &amp; الكلمة و المضاد)

## Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

approach	attitude / method	منهج / نهج (طريقة)
approach	go nearer / come closer	يقترّب / يدنو
immerse	submerge / sink / soak / involve	يغمّر (في سائل) / يغمس في
implement	apply / carry out / execute	يطبق / ينفذ
conquer	defeat / beat / overcome / seize	يَهْزِم / يَغْزُو / يتغلب على
artificial	man-made / synthetic / false / pretended	إصطناعي / مزيف / مختلق
complicated	complex	معقد



**Antonyms (anti) : opposite:**

approach	يقترّب من	leave	يغادر
conquer	يهزم / يعزو / يتغلب على	lose to/liberate / yield	ينهزم من / يحرر / يستسلم
artificial	إصطناعي	natural / genuine	طبيعي / أصلي
complicated	معقد	easy / simple	سهل / بسيط
intelligence	ذكاء	stupidity	غباء
safety	أمان	danger / risk	خطر / مخاطرة

**Choose the correct answer :-**

1. I am currently following a new **approach** to solve my problems.

The synonym of "approach" is "....."

a. suggestion      b. attitude      c. altitude      d. go nearer

2. You have to **conquer** your fear. The antonym of "conquer" is "....."

a. overcome      b. beat      c. defeat      d. yield

3. "Complicated" is to "complex" as "operation" is to .....

a. surgery      b. treatment      c. medicine      d. cure

4. The computer is a form of **artificial** intelligent. "Artificial" is the same meaning as .....

a. natural      b. unnatural      c. normal      d. genuine

5. Something that is ..... is neither simple nor easy.

a. complex      b. complicated      c. clear      d. a&b

**كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي**

produce

\* produce (garden /farm/dairy /organic/meat)

ينتج  
انتاج (زراعي / البان / عضوي / لحوم)

damage

damages

تلف / دمار (اسم لا معدود)  
تعويضات (اسم جمع ليس له مفرد)

back .... up = support

LM We backed her up when she complained about working conditions.

This means we ..... her.

a. ignored      b. supported      c. punished      d. rewarded

يدعم / يساند

**كل يوم راجع مهارة : مراجعة (الصفة: Adjective)**

⇒ **Adjective** : a word that gives more detail about **nouns** or **pronouns**.

⇒ **Adjective** : a word that describes a **person**, a **thing**, etc ...

✓ هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتعطي تفاصيل عنه وتسبقة (نضع الصفة قبل الاسم). وانواعها هي :-

attributive	He is a <b>clever</b> student.	صفة سابقة (يتيجي قبل الاسم) :
postpositive	someone <b>important</b> / something <b>good</b>	صفة لاحقة (يتيجي بعد الضمانر الغير معروفة)
predicate	The film <b>looks</b> interesting.	صفة خبرية (يتيجي بعد أفعال الربط (feel / look)

- وخلي بالك ان فيه صفات اخرها (ly) مش ظرف زي :-

EX: \*friendly - fatherly - silly - ugly - neighbourly.



## Choose the correct answer :-

- "It was an interesting lecture". "interesting" here is a/an ..... adjective  
a) predicate b) postpositive c) attributive d) direct
- "I saw something frightening". "frightening" here is a/an ..... adjective  
a) predicate b) postpositive c) attributive d) direct
- "I feel happy when I visit my grandpa". "happy" here is a/an ..... adjective  
a) predicate b) postpositive c) attributive d) direct
- Our new neighbours are friendly. "friendly" is .....  
a) a verb b) a noun c) an adjective d) an adverb
- "Mona's dress is smart". Which word of the following is an adjective:-  
a) Mona b) dress c) is d) smart
- An adjective can be defined as .....  
a) a word that describes a verb.  
b) a word that describes a person, a thing, etc ...  
c) a word that describes an adverb.  
d) a word that can be used after a verb.

## كل يوم راجع مهارة : مراجعة (الظرف : Adverb)

⇒ **Adverb** : a word that gives more detail about verbs and describes it (the verb).

⇒ **Adverb** : a part of speech that **modifies a verb, adjective, or adverb.**

- ✓ الظرف هو صفة + (ly) وهو يصف الفعل ويقوي الصفة ويسبق الظرف. وأنواعه هي :-  
✓ الظرف اذا بدأ الجملة يأتي بعده (كوما).

Adverb of <b>manner</b>	badly / quickly / sadly	ظرف الطريقة (نسال عنه ب (ly)
Adverb of <b>time</b>	early/late /sometimes/soon	ظرف الزمان (نسال عنه ب (When)
Adverb of <b>place</b>	here / there/outside / above	ظرف المكان (نسال عنه ب (Where)
Adverb of <b>degree</b>	very/extremely/absolutely	ظرف الدرجة (نسال عنه ب (How much) : جدًا
Adverb of <b>frequency</b>	always/often /sometimes	ظرف التكرار (نسال عنه ب (How often)

## Choose the correct answer :-

- Exam was **rather** hard. The word "**rather**" is an adverb of .....  
a) frequency b) manner c) degree d) time
- Adverbs describe .....  
a) pronoun b) preposition c) verb d) noun
- Adverbs describe .....  
a) verb b) adjective c) adverb d) all of them
- I **sometimes** buy the daily newspapers. The word "**sometimes**" is an adverb of .....  
a) frequency b) manner c) place d) time
- old people always walk **slowly**. The word "**slowly**" is an adverb of .....  
a) frequency b) manner c) place d) degree
- When an adverb begins a sentence, we put after it a .....  
a) fullstop b) semicolon c) comma d) question mark



## Grammar

## أشكال المستقبل

## المستقبل البسيط مصدر + Will

✓ لاحظ استخدام المستقبل البسيط مع الكلمات الدالة الآتية :

⇒ soon / in + مدة (a year-two weeks) / someday = one day / soon

⇒ I expect/ I'm sure / I think / in my opinion / I hope / I believe / I suppose/ I promise/I predict/ I am afraid/ or/ otherwise / perhaps / probably)

EX: I expect he will win the first prize.

EX: Mona will probably arrive late.

⇒ Probably ظرف (في النص بين will والمصدر)

## ✓ استخدامات will:

1- حقيقة مستقبلية لا نستطيع التحكم فيها مثل (العمر والعوامل الوراثية والايام) EX: I'll be / turn 16 next week .

2- جملة ورد قرار سريع / فوري في نفس لحظة الكلام EX: That's the phone - I'll answer it .

3- العرض (I will ...)

EX: I'll go shopping with you if you like .

4- الطلب (will you... ,please? )

EX: Will you look at my homework tonight, please?

## المستقبل القريب مصدر + am/is/are + going to

✓ تستخدم (going to) للتعبير عن (خطط ونوايا وقرارات) مع كلمات دالة مثل :-

⇒ plan - plans / intend - intentions / decide = make up .. mind - decisions

EX: I'm going to buy a new car . It's my plan.

✓ تستخدم (going to) للتعبير عن (درجات الحرارة غدا) و (الظموح في المستقبل : نفسي اكون ..) :-

EX: The weather forecast says " it is going to be hot and sunny tomorrow."

EX: When I grow up, I am going to be a doctor / am going to study medicine.

✓ تستخدم (going to) مع جمل (التحذير من خطر قريب) مع الجمل البائدة ب :-

⇒ Be careful ! / Take care ! / Look out ! / Watch out ! / Look at ...! / Help! ..

EX: Look out ! the kid is going to fall off the bike .

✓ تستخدم (going to) ل (التنبؤ بحدث في المستقبل و يوجد له دليل الآن : تنبؤ يدلل).

EX: He is studying hard, he is going to pass the exams..

## المضارع المستمر am/is/are + V+ ing

✓ يعبر المضارع المستمر عن (حدث في المستقبل تم الترتيب له) . مع وجود كلمات مثل :

⇒ arranged = made arrangements/prepared = make preparation /booked tickets / packed (luggage/baggage)

EX: She's flying to India in the summer. She's arranged that

✓ السفر والحفلات والزيارات واعيد الميلاد ومقابله شخص والزواج ودعوات الغداء والعشاء والانشطة المدرسية والمقابلات والانتقال لشقة جديدة اشياء مرتبة .

EX: We are flying to France tonight. (السفر ترتيبات مضارع مستمر)

## المضارع البسيط (الفعل في التصريف الاول + S مع المفرد بس)

✓ يعبر عن جدول مواعيد ثابت مع وسائل المواصلات و السينما و المسرح و المباريات و المدرسة و جداول الامتحانات والعروض.

EX: My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

للمع الالتي



will have + P.P المستقبل التام

**EX:** By 2100 , we **will have built** more towns and cities.

✓ يدل علي أن شيء سيكون قد تم (وقع / حصل فعلا قبل وقت معين في المستقبل).

✓ By + المستقبل + مدة زمن

⇒ By (8 o'clock pm tomorrow/ next year / 2100 / tomorrow morning)

✓ in + مدة + 's/s' → ( in 5 years' time / in 5 years' )

✓ for + مدة + tomorrow / next ....

**EX:** By 2050, electric cars **will have replaced** petrol cars.

**EX:** I **will have finished** my final exams **in three days' time**.

✓ المستقبل التام الى المجهول (ضم الحرف الاول للفعل) من :

⇒ مفعول + **will have been + P.P**

**EX:** By the year 2100, millions of trees and hundreds of forests **will have been saved**.

will be + V. + ing المستقبل المستمر

**EX:** I'll be driving to the airport at 4 o'clock tomorrow.

✓ يتكون المستقبل المستمر عن (حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت محدد في المستقبل).

✓ at + كلمات المستقبل + مدة محددة →

at 10 o'clock tomorrow / tomorrow morning

✓ this time next + مدة →

this time next (week - year)

✓ all + كلمات المستقبل + مدة →

all the day tomorrow

**EX:** Don't phone at 7. We'll be having dinner then.



# Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

✓ الصفات الثابتة لدى الانسان ليست دليل على حدوث الفعل (الصفة متغيرة مثل دليل).

EX: My sister is a **clever** student. She (**will** - is going to) be a doctor.

✓ expects / predicts / promises / hopes / thinks / is sure + فاعل + **will** + مصدر

✓ expected / predicted / promised / hoped / thought / was sure + فاعل + **would** + مصدر

EX: He **expected** that he **would** win the next prize.

✓ by + سنة مضت ⇒ (had + P.P) ⇒ ماضى تام (قبل كذا في الماضي كنت تميت كذا)

✓ by + سنة قادمة ⇒ (will have + P.P) ⇒ مستقبل تام (قبل كذا في المستقبل هكون تميت كذا)

✓ in the coming years / in a few minutes / in three hours ⇒ (will + مصدر)

✓ in three hours' time / in three hours' ⇒ (will have + P.P)

✓ have decided (before) ⇒ (am/is/are + going to + م) ⇒ (مستقبل قريب قرار)

✓ have just decided / I have decided now ⇒ (will + م) ⇒ (مستقبل بسيط قرار سريع)

EX: He **has decided** that he **is going to buy** a new car.

EX: He **has just decided** that he **will buy** a new car.

✓ حدث متكرر لن يحدث في المستقبل و سيكون هناك حدث اخر بديل (الحدث البديل).

يعني : اذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر قريباً فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتباً له (مضارع مستمر / مستقبل مستمر).

و كمان هتلاقي في الجملة الاولى (can't / won't). التي هو مش اقدر اعمل كذا لان في حاجة تانية لازم اعملها.

EX: I **won't** go to school tomorrow. **We're visiting** relatives. الزيارات ترتبنا

EX: I **can't** meet you **at 7**. I **will be visiting** relatives. هكون مستمر في الزيارة الساعة ٧

## الروابط

✓ نروح ل نقطة إمتحان مهمة جداً : الروابط : (as soon as / when / once / the moment / till / until).

- معروف ان (الرابط) لو جه وراه (مضارع) يبقى الجملة الثانية (م + will).

والمضارع يا (مضارع بسيط : الفعل ب s او من غير s) يا (مضارع تام : has/have + P.P).

EX: When she **has arrived**, we **will begin** the meeting. has arrived = arrives

EX: He **won't** send emails **until** he **has revised**. has revised = revises

EX: As soon as the task ....., I will go shopping.

a) **will be performed**      b) **will perform**      c) **performs**      d) **is performed**

- كمان يتفع (الرابط) لو جه وراه (مضارع) يبقى الجملة الثانية (أمر : بداية الجملة بالمصدر).

EX: Send me the emails **moment** you **finish** them. finish = have finished

- وخلي بالك اكثر من الرابط دا : (by the time) لو جه وراه (مضارع) يبقى الجملة الثانية (will have + P.P).

- و كمان (الرابط) لو وراه (مضارع) وجه في الجملة (عدد) او (مدة + for) يبقى الجملة الثانية (will have + P.P).

EX: By the time the bridge **is** complete, over \$20 million **will have been spent** on it.

EX: When he **finishes** in November, he **will have walked** 400 kilometres.

- الافعال الاتية لو نختار وراها (to have + P.P) في هذه الحالة تساوي (مستقبل تام : will have + P.P).

⇒ expect to / predict to / want to / need to / is going to + have + P.P

= will have + P.P

EX: We expect to have completed my study by 2030.



## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

### Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. The company is in the ..... of moving to new offices.  
a. operation    b. process    c. treatment    d. approach in the process  
يقوم بإجراءات
2. Preparations for the 2022 world cup are in process.  
a. operation    b. process    c. treatment    d. approach in process
3. The royal party ..... in streets celebrating the wedding.  
a. processed    b. implemented    c. operated    d. immersed
4. The project is coming into ..... in May.  
a. operation    b. process    c. treatment    d. approach
5. They made a direct ..... to the minister of education.  
a. implementation    b. innovation    c. scale    d. approach
6. Soldiers were guarding the ..... to the city.  
a. universe    b. approach مضلع    c. evidence    d. experiment
7. As I ..... the house, I noticed a light on upstairs.  
a. processed    b. implemented    c. approached الطلب    d. immersed
8. Put the children in different situations and leave them to .....  
a. process    b. conquer    c. immerse    d. experiment تجربة التجربة
9. .... your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.  
a. Immerse يغمس القدم    b. Implement    c. Consult    d. Approach
10. At exam, you have to bring all the writing .....  
a. implements أدوات    b. operations    c. process    d. operation
11. The addict began using ..... when he was a teenager.  
a. medicine    b. drugs    c. surgeries    d. operations
12. The kidnapper ..... his victim, before taking her away.  
a. adopted    b. awoke    c. drugged    d. approached
13. Do you fancy going out for dinner tonight? I'll ..... you!  
a. treat    b. cure    c. implement    d. monitor

### Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

14. I haven't seen my cousin in England for five years. I'm sure she ..... a lot!  
a. is going to grow    b. will grow    c. is growing    d. will have grown
15. Be careful! We ..... crash! There is a fast car is coming.  
a. will    b. are going to    c. should    d. must
16. Be careful or you ..... fall in the hole on your way to the market.  
a. will    b. are going to    c. should    d. must
17. The man is driving very fast. I think he ..... have an accident.  
a. will    b. is going to    c. should    d. must
18. By the time the firemen arrive, the fire will ..... the building.  
a. have destroyed    b. destroy    c. be destroying    d. be destroyed
19. When I reach Paris, I ..... ten capitals all over the world.  
a. will visit    b. is visting    c. will be visiting    d. will have visited
20. Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They ..... the match easily.  
a. are winning    b. will win سيفوزون    c. win    d. are going to win
21. She and her husband both have green eyes. I think their baby ..... green eyes, too.  
a. is going to have    b. is having سيفوزون    c. will have    d. will be having
22. He wants to ..... the report by the time he goes to bed.  
a. have finished    b. finish    c. be finished    d. have been finished



## Unit Three

## Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:-

1. .... is a device through which sound is heard.  
a) Speaker      b) Sensor      c) Average      d) Approach
2. Scientists are always ..... into their study and experiments.  
a) surrounded      b) immersed      c) implemented      d) innovated
3. Clothes, made in China, are ..... as people use them all over the world.  
a) immersive      b) innovative      c) mass-produced      d) inconvenient
4. Venus is a ..... in the solar system.  
a) star      b) space      c) universe      d) planet
5. I promised the manager to ..... all the rules and instruction of the company.  
a) surround      b) innovate      c) implement      d) immerse
6. A team of surgeons did the ..... on my heart.  
a) treatment      b) surgery      c) operation      d) band c
7. Use these ..... under the instruction <sup>تعليمات</sup> of the doctor to feel better.  
a) sensors      b) arguments      c) applications      d) drugs
8. .... all the space including all the stars, planets and galaxies.  
a) Record      b) Intelligence      c) Universe      d) Sensor
9. Do you think scientists are right to ..... on animals?  
a) experience      b) record      c) exist      d) experiment
10. The new system is still ....., but all the people like and praise <sup>يمدح</sup> it.  
a) universal      b) international      c) experimental      d) global
11. Our garden is ..... by a high wall.  
a) surrounded      b) survived      c) attacked      d) processed
12. 3-D is short for three .....  
a) directions      b) DVDs      c) dimensional      d) Dolby
13. I apologize if I am phoning at a/an ..... time.  
a) immersive      b) curious      c) inconvenient      d) mass-produced
14. This man earn an ..... of 4000 pounds a month.  
a) approach      b) advert      c) average      d) evidence
15. On ....., prices of food products have increased by 10 % this year.  
a) degree      b) average      c) Celsius      d) grade
16. "I have a ..... question". I need very much to get an answer to.  
a) freezing      b) distant      c) burning      d) visual
17. .... is a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.  
a) Surface      b) Universe      c) Sensor      d) Spacecraft
18. The ministry of education puts new ..... to teach students effectively.  
a) averages      b) operations      c) approaches      d) drugs
19. The tourists were pleased to see the ..... amazing pyramids.  
a) inconveniently      b) sadly      c) spectacularly      d) dully
20. I saw a piece of wood floating on the ..... of water.  
a) surface      b) universe      c) spacecraft      d) process
21. There is a good saying : "prevention is better than .....".  
a) record      b) cure      c) security      d) surgery



22. It is a complex ..... to generate electricity from water.  
a) process      b) universe      c) surface      d) operation
23. My secretary keeps ..... of everything done in the office.  
a) surgeries      b) cures      c) records      d) sensors
24. .... requires at least three speakers.  
a) Innovation      b) 3-D      c) Solar system      d) Surround sound
25. .... speakers are the latest trend in surround-sound technology.  
a) Advance      b) Application      c) Innovation      d) T-ring
26. Dinosaurs ..... on earth millions of years ago.  
a) existed      b) conquered      c) experimented      d) experienced
27. Children like ..... stories. They are enjoyable and interesting.  
a) illustrated      b) imageless      c) permanent      d) paper-thin
28. You are lucky to ..... this violent accident.  
a) survive      b) require      c) expand      d) surround
29. There is much ..... that this man is the thief who broke into my house.  
a) approach      b) advert      c) average      d) evidence
30. You need to ..... your fear of the exam. It has a negative effect on you.  
a) exist      b) conquer      c) experiment      d) experience
31. He ate a/an ..... slice of meat.  
a) illustrated      b) visual      c) paper-thin      d) permanent
32. Many young people are ..... to online games.  
a) addicted      b) complicated      c) artificial      d) surgical
33. I used my ruler to ..... the width of the triangle.  
a) involve      b) measure      c) last      d) recycle
34. The price of any product ..... on its quality and the demand on it.  
a) handles      b) swaps      c) depends      d) evolves
35. Don't let his ..... smile on his face.  
a) addicted      b) complicated      c) artificial      d) surgical
36. The main role of the police is to enforce ..... all over the country.  
a) record      b) cure      c) security      d) surgery
37. Water is ..... for life. No one can live without it.  
a) curious      b) competitive      c) essential      d) flat
38. WhatsApp is the most common digital communication .....  
a) advance      b) application      c) innovation      d) T-ring
39. It is natural that children are ..... They want to know everything.  
a) curious      b) competitive      c) essential      d) flat
40. .... is the science of how to make computers do things that usually need human intelligence.  
a) Military intelligence      b) Genetic engineering  
c) Chemistry      d) Artificial Intelligence
41. I found the car tyre إيطار ....., so I had to replace it.  
a) curious      b) competitive      c) essential      d) flat
42. It is very expensive to ..... on television channels.  
a) require      b) advertise      c) discover      d) immerse
43. It spent one hour ..... the tasks the manager asked for.  
a) doing      b) to doing      c) to do      d) do
44. Samira as well as Friends ..... on a trip next week.  
a) are going      b) is going      c) have gone      d) were going



## Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions

45. Every day, scientists ..... new cures for diseases.  
a) become      b) explored      c) discovered      d) solved
46. The beginning of television in Egypt goes back as ..... as the 1960s.  
a) long      b) low      c) far      d) soon
47. The earthquake ..... a lot of damage to the building.  
a) made      b) caused      c) performed      d) came
48. A surgeon has to ..... open patients' bodies to save their lives.  
a) have      b) do      c) cut      d) use
49. This kind of mobiles is sold ..... a competitive price on the internet.  
a) out      b) at      c) on      d) from
50. The tourguide warned the tourists ..... the dangers of this tour in the jungle.  
a) by      b) from      c) about      d) for



## Unit Three : Grammar

### تمارين علي أشكال المستقبل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I expect he ..... pass the driving test easily.  
a) would                      b) is going to                      c) will                      d) must
2. Sara ..... to America next week.  
a) is traveling                      b) travels                      c) traveled                      d) has traveled
3. There's an exciting match tonight. I think you ..... it.  
a) are going to enjoy                      b) are enjoying                      c) will enjoy                      d) enjoy
4. I ..... this job by 10 p.m. tomorrow.  
a) will be finished                      b) finished                      c) will finish                      d) will have finished
5. He ..... a teacher when he finishes his study. This is his plan.  
a) will become                      b) is going to become                      c) is becoming                      d) become
6. The final match ..... at 7 p.m.  
a) start                      b) starting                      c) starts                      d) will be starting
7. In my opinion, the cars price ..... in the coming days.  
a) is increasing                      b) increased                      c) is going to increase                      d) will increase
8. The house ..... in three days' time.  
a) will decorate                      b) 'll have been decorated                      c) will be decorated                      d) will be decorating
9. I ..... do a new small project . this is my decision.  
a) will                      b) am going to                      c) may                      d) could
10. She ..... to London tomorrow. She has arranged her luugage.  
a) is flying                      b) will fly                      c) flies                      d) is going to fly
11. Mazen..... his homework at 8 o'clock tomorrow.  
a) is doing                      b) will have done                      c) will be doing                      d) will be
12. My uncle ..... forty next Friday.  
a) be                      b) will be                      c) am being                      d) am going to be
13. I can't travel tomorrow as I ..... a meeting.  
a) have had                      b) going to have                      c) have                      d) am having
14. I can't travel at 9 a.m. tomorrow as I ..... a meeting.  
a) have had                      b) going to have                      c) am having                      d) will be having
- 15- The weather forecast says that it ..... cold tomorrow.  
a) will be                      b) is going to be                      c) is being                      d) would be
- 16- I feel I lose balance. I think I..... fall.  
a) should                      b) am going to                      c) am to                      d) will
- 17- This time next week, I ..... my exams.  
a) am taking                      b) am going to take                      c) will be taking                      d) will take
- 18- Someone is knocking on the door, so I..... who it is  
a) am going to see                      b) will see                      c) am seeing                      d) would see
- 19- A lot of people are waiting for the train to reach. it ..... packed with passengers.  
a) is being                      b) was                      c) is going to be                      d) has been







## Unit (4): Taking care of our selves

### Revision Vocabulary

burnout	إرهاق / تعب / * إنبهار عصبي	positive	إيجابي
burn out	يرهق / يُتعب	negative	سلبي
exhaust	يرهق / يُتعب	teenager	مراهق
exhausted	مرهق / منهك / مُتعب جدا	scared	خائف / مذعور
exhaustion	إرهاق	sign	علامة / إشارة / لافتة (ياقطة)
mental health	الصحة العقلية / الصحة النفسية	routine	روتين يومي
improve	يحسن / يتحسن	get together	يتقابل
promote	ينشر / يذيع / يروج لسلعة / يعلن	meet up	يتفق علي لقاء
promote	يطور / يرقى / يدعم	cope with	يواكب / يساير / يتصدي / يتماشي مع
promotion	ترقية / ترويج / إعلان	interact with	يتفاعل مع
self-care	الاعتناء بالنفس	upload	يرفع (ملف علي النت)
well-being	الرفاهية / العافية / السعادة	proof	دليل
manage	يدير / يتحكم / ينجح	impact = effect = influence	تأثير / صدي
management	إدارة	diary = memo	مفكرة يومية / نوتة
time-management	إدارة الوقت / تنظيم الوقت	reduce	يقلل
stress	توتر / ضغط	priority	أولوية / أفضلية / أسبقية
stressed	متوتر / مُجهَد (شخص)	in order of priority	حسب الاولوية
stressful	موتر / مرهق للإعصاب (شئ)	react	يصدر رد فعل
pout	يستاء / ييوز / يبرطم بالكلام	reaction	رد فعل
frown	يكشر / يعبس / يتهمج / تكشفرة	basis	اساس
scold	يؤبج / يعنف / ينتقد / يؤنب	experience	يمر بموقف / يعاني
counselor	مستشار / ناصح	behave	يسلك / يتصرف
suppose	يفترض	behaviour = behavior	سلوك / تصرف
perfect	تام	perceive	يدرك
downside	جانب سلبي / عيب	perception	إدراك
unhealthily	بشكل غير صحي	on the downside	علي الجانب السلبي
control	يتحكم / يسيطر / تحكم / سيطرة	contagious	معدى / ناقل للعدوي
clear off	يزول (الالم / شبرة)	frustrated	محبط / مستاء
normal self	حالة طبيعية	alter	يغير / يعدل
the whole creation	كل الخلاق	alteration	تغيير / تعديل
responsible	مسئول	alert	ينبه / يحذر / يقظ / منتبه
responsibility	مسئولية	news alerts	تنبيهات إخبارية (إشعارات)
tips	نصائح	solution to	حل
awareness	الوعي	urgent = instant	عاجل / فوري
consider	يفكر في / يعتبر	category	تصنيف / فئة
snack	وجبة خفيفة / يأكل وجبة خفيفة	expand	يتمدد
endorphins	مادة الاندورفين (مادة تنتجها الجسم لتقليل الشعور بالألم وتشعر الشخص بالارتياح)		
caffeine	مادة الكافيين (توجد في الشاي والقهوة ومشروبات أخرى تجعل الشخص يقظ ونشط)		



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (4)

## Main Vocabulary

benefactor	فاعل خير / متبرع / متصدق	proof	دليل / برهان
expectations	توقعات / تطلعات / أحلام	Property = possessions	ممتلكات / عقارات
hammer	مطرقة / شاكوش	suspect	يشتبّه في / يشك
immediately	حالا / فورا	upset	منزعج / مستاء
my heart was set on	كان قلبي متحمس لـ	from now on	من الآن فصاعدا
privately	سرا	strangely	بشكل غريب

## Choose the correct answer :-

- To ..... is to think that someone is probably guilty of a crime.  
a. adapt                      b. suspect                      c. upset                      d. remain
- A/An ..... is a person who gives someone money to help them improve their life.  
a. counselor                      b. astronomer                      c. astrologer                      d. benefactor
- We need to use this ..... to hit the nails into the wood.  
a. axe                      b. hammer                      c. saw                      d. sword
- My mum was ..... that I'd forgotten her birthday.  
a. happy                      b. relaxed                      c. upset                      d. exhausted
- LM Our hearts were all ..... on spending the weekend in the country, until my brother broke her leg and we had to postpone the trip.  
a. left                      b. prepared                      c. set                      d. sat
- LM My dad says, "From this moment and into the future, you must do my homework as soon as you have lunch". The underlined part means. ....  
a. from tomorrow on                      b. starting from tomorrow  
c. from now on                      d. starting from yesterday
- LM A growing number of households have at least one computer.  
Households here means .....  
a. the big buildings in a certain city.  
b. the people who live together in one house.  
c. the offices in a company                      d. the desks inside one room.

## Note the following

✎ consider + V-ing

✎ consider + مفعول + to + مصدر

يفكر في  
يعتبر

EX: I consider enrolling my name on the next English course.

EX: personally, I consider scientific research to be the key to progress.



## Collocations and Expressions

make plan	يعمل خطة دراسية	take rest = break	يأخذ راحة
make suggestion	يقترح	take action	يتخذ إجراء
make decision	يتخذ قرار	take responsibility	يتحمل المسؤولية
make time for	يخصص وقت لـ	promote mental health	يعزز الصحة العقلية
make difference	يحدث الفارق (يحسن)	promote the importance	يعزز من أهمية
experience stress / burnout	يعاني من التوتر / الاجهاد	out of focus/control	خارج (التركيز / عن السيطرة)
do activity / test	يمارس نشاط / يمتحن	pay attention to	ينتبه لـ
on my own	وحددي / بمفردي	set (up) phone	يضبط الهاتف
try (do) the best	يبدل أقصى جهد	(on) a regular basis	على أساس منتظم
send news alerts	يرسل تنبيهات (اشعارات) اخبارية	perceive change	يدرك التغيير
mentally disabled	متأخر عقليا	avoid having caffeine	يتجنب تناول الكافيين
reach	يصل الي		
arrive (in / at) = get to			
pass = manage (to) = succeed (in)			ينجح / يتمكن من

## Prepositions

go (on)	يستمر في	aware (of)	واعي لـ / مدرك لـ
impact (on)	تأثير على	take care (of) = care (for)	يعتني بـ
benefit (from)	يستفيد من	grateful (to)	شاكر / ممتن لـ (شخص)
suffer (from)	يعاني من	grateful (for)	شاكر / ممتن لـ (شيء)
set (up)	يضبط / يؤسس	divide (into)	يقسم الي

## راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

get on	يتقدم	get down	يحبط
get on	يركب (مواصلات)	get over = recover	يتغلب على / يُشفى من
get off	ينزل (مواصلات)	get through = pass	ينهي / يجتاز امتحان

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He worked hard and managed to get ..... the finals.

a) through      b) on      c) over      d) on

2. He got ..... a bad heart attack but still weak.

a) on      b) over      c) off      d) back

## راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة

⇒ V-ing + الظرف

ever-lasting	مستمر / دائم	forward-thinking	سابق في التفكير
well-speaking	متحدث جيد	never-ending	دائم

EX: He has an ever-lasting smile. (-)

EX: The solar energy is ever lasting. X (-)



## (الكلمة و المرادف &amp; الكلمة و المضاد)

Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

exhausted	worn out	مرهق / منهك
improve	get better / enhance / develop	يتحسن / يتطور
mental	intellectual	ذهني / عقلي
scold	tell off / criticize / rebuke	يؤيخ / ينتقد
frown	pout / scowl	يكشر / يعبس
manage	run / direct	يدير
experience	go through / test / try out	يمر ب / يجرب
cope	adapt to / deal with / handle	يتكيف مع / يتعامل مع
urgent	instant / pressing	عاجل / ملح
well-being	luxury / prosperity / comfort	سعادة / رفاهية
stress	pressure / tension	ضغط

Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

improve	يتحسن	worsen / deteriorate	يسوء / يتدهور
promote	يترقى (يرتفع درجة)	demote	ينزل درجة
scold	يؤيخ / ينتقد	praise / compliment	يمدح
frown	يكشر	smile	يبتسم
stress	ضغط / توتر	relaxation	راحة / استرخاء

Choose the correct answer :-

- His health has **improved** recently. The synonym of "improved" is ".....".  
a. got better      b. worsen      c. get worse      d. deteriorated
- Students are under **stress** before exams. The antynom of "stress" is ".....".  
a. pressure      b. exhaustion      c. tension      d. relaxation
- "Mental" is to "physical" as "....." is to "praise".  
a. compliment      b. scold      c. thank      d. greet
- A wise says : " never forget to smile; always forget to .....".  
Which one gives the opposite of "smile" ?  
a. satisfy      b. burnout      c. frown      d. upload
- The patient is in **urgent** need of blood transfusion. It is a ..... matter.  
a. unimportant      b. trivial      c. pressing      d. unnecessary

كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي

interested (in) + V-ing / اسم

interested (to) + مصدر

مهتم ب

مهتم أن

EX: He is **interested in** poetry / **reading** adventure stories.

EX: He is **interested to** join a gym to be fit.

like

as

مثل / ك (تستخدم للتشبيه الغير حقيقي)

ك (للتشبيه الحقيقي / الوظائف)

EX: Leaves are **like** factories that produce everything they need.

EX: The oxygen is released back into the air, and the sugar is used by the plant **as** food.



✎ A picture is worth 1000 words

صورة تغني عن ألف كلمة (الصورة بتتكلم)

LM A picture is worth 1000 words. This means that. ....

- a) you shouldn't be talkative.  
c) it's better to show than tell.

- b) you should be silent.  
d) it's better to tell than show.

✎ beat yourself = blame

يلوم

LM He's really beating himself up over failing the exam. This means. ....

- a) he has decided to try again  
c) he blames himself for failing the exam  
b) he ignores that event

- b) he wants to forget all about that event

## كل يوم راجع مهارة : مراجعة (الضمير : Pronoun)

⇒ Pronoun : a part of speech that can replace a noun like I , he, she, it, etc.

✓ الضمير هو كلمة تحل محل اسم لعدم تكراره. وأنوتعه هي :-

subject	I / he / she / it / we / you / they	ضمير (فاعل) : تبدأ الجملة
object	me / him / her / it / us / you / them	ضمير (مفعول) : بعد فعل / بعد حرف جر
possessive adj	my / his / her / its / our / your / their	صفة ملكية : قبل (الاسم المملوك)
possessive pro	mine / his / hers / ours / yours / theirs	ضمير ملكية : بعد (الاسم المملوك وبينهي)
reflexive	myself / himself / herself / themselves	ضمير منعكس : (معناه : نفس) وقبله (by)
relative	who / whom / which / that / whose	ضمير وصل : الذي / التي
demonstrative	this / that / these / those	ضمير إشارة : هذا / هذه / هؤلاء
interrogative	when / where / what / whose / why	ضمير استفهام (أداة استفهام)
reciprocal	each other / one another	ضمير تبادلي : (بعضهم البعض)
indefinite	someone / somebody / something	الضمير غير معروف : (شخص ما/شيء ما)

### Choose the correct answer :-

1. Pronouns are used in place of a .....that is known or has already been mentioned.

- a) noun                      b) adverb                      c) adjective                      d) verb

2. "I travelled in my car." "I" is a/an ..... pronoun.

- a) subject                      b) object                      c) reflexive                      d) possessive

3. "I met him three days ago." "Him" is a/an ..... pronoun.

- a) subject                      b) object                      c) reflexive                      d) possessive

4. "Someone is at the door." "Someone" is a/an ..... pronoun.

- a) definite                      b) indefinite                      c) reflexive                      d) possessive

5. The kids spent the afternoon kicking the ball to one another. "One another" is a/an ..... pronoun.

- a) reciprocal                      b) indefinite                      c) reflexive                      d) possessive

6. "That is our new house." "That" is a/an ..... pronoun.

- a) reflexive                      b) indefinite                      c) reciprocal                      d) demonstrative

7. "Which is taller : Ali or Shady?" "Which" is a/an ..... pronoun.

- a) demonstrative                      b) interrogative                      c) reflexive                      d) reciprocal

8. "That is the book which I bought yesterday." "Which" is a/an ..... pronoun.

- a) relative                      b) interrogative                      c) reflexive                      d) demonstrative

9. "I travelled in my car." "My" is a .....

- a) conjunction                      b) noun  
c) possessive adjective                      d) possessive pronoun

10. "This is her pen, not mine ." Which word is a possessive pronoun?

- a) this                      b) her                      c) not                      d) mine



## Grammar

## الأفعال الناقصة في النصيحة في المضارع والمستقبل

✓ لما تحب تنصح شخص انه يعمل كذا في (المضارع والمستقبل) مع شيء كويس مستحب نستخدم :-  
 يجب أن (مفروض تعمل ..)  
 ⇒ **should / ought to / had ('d) better + م**  
**EX:** You **should work** hard to get good marks.

✓ لما تحب تنصح شخص انه ميعملش كذا في (المضارع والمستقبل) مع شيء مش كويس بلاش منه نستخدم :-  
 لا يجب أن (بلاش تعمل ..)  
 ⇒ **shouldn't / oughtn't to / had ('d) better not + م**  
**EX:** You **shouldn't eat** much to be fit.

## الأفعال الناقصة في النصيحة في الماضي : اللوم والندم

✓ اللوم (blame) : لما تحب تلوم شخص علي شيء مش عمله في الماضي.  
 ✓ الندم (regret) : لما شخص يندم علي شيء عمله في الماضي.  
 كان يجب (كان مفروض تعمل ..)  
 ⇒ **(should / ought to) have + P.P**  
**EX:** He **got** bad marks. He **should have revised** well before the exam.

كان لا يجب (كان بلاش تعمل ..)  
 ⇒ **(shouldn't / oughtn't to) have + P.P**  
**EX:** You **shouldn't have phoned** me late yesterday. I **was** fast asleep.

## الأفعال الناقصة في القدرة والإستطاعة

✓ معروف ان (can : يستطيع ويقدر : في جمل المضارع) & (could : إستطاع وكان يقدر : في جمل الماضي).  
**EX:** I **can see** well with glasses.  
**EX:** I **could swim** when I **was** ten.

✓ في الطلب المهذب : هل ممن الممكن ان ..... من فضلك؟  
 ⇒ **Can / Could / May / Might / Will ..... , please?**  
**EX:** Can / could you open that door, please?

✓ لو في الماضي (قدرت تعمل شيء بعد صعوبة) مش تختار (could) اختار اخواتها :-  
 ⇒ **succeeded in + V-ing / was able to + م / managed to + م**  
**EX:** The exam was so difficult, but I **managed to answer** it.

✓ مش تنسي (I wonder if I could ...).  
**EX:** I **wonder if** you **could** help me with this bag.

✓ من الملاحظات الهامة : (could have + P.P) : كان بإستطاعتي فعل الشيء ولكن لم أفعله) مع كلمة (but).  
**EX:** We **could have gone** to the cinema **but** we decided to watch TV.



## الإقتراح

كلمة الاقتراح : هو عرض فكرة علي شخص زي ما بنقول : ( هيا بنا : يلا بينا نعمل كذا ) .

- ✓ What about / How about + **V-ing** .....?
- ✓ Why don't we / you + مصدر .....?
- ✓ Have you considered + **V-ing** .....?
- ✓ Have you thought about + **V-ing** .....?
- ✓ I suggest / recommend + **V-ing** ..... .
- ✓ I suggest / recommend (that) + فاعل + مصدر ... .
- ✓ I suggest / recommend (that) + فاعل + **should** + مصدر ... .
- ✓ Let's + مصدر ..... .
- ✓ Shall we + مصدر .....?
- ✓ Why not + مصدر .....?
- ✓ Try + V-ing ..... .
- ✓ If I were you, I'd + مصدر ..... .
- ✓ You **\*can / could / \*should** + مصدر ..... .

**EX:** What about **going** for a swim?

**EX:** Why don't we / you **ask** father for help?

**EX:** Have you considered **going** to bed a bit earlier?

**EX:** I suggest / recommend **doing** sports four times a week?

**EX:** I suggest/recommend that we **buy / should buy** suits for our friend's wedding?

**EX:** Let's **have** lunch out.

**EX:** Shall we **go** walking?

**EX:** Why not **watch** the match at stadium?

**EX:** Try **doing** sport to be fit and healthy.

**EX:** You can / could / should **do** your homework with your friends.



## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

- ✓ **الضرورة :** لما تحب تقول (شيء ضروري / يجب ان / ينبغي ان) في المضارع.  
 ✓ **الضرورة :** لما تحب تقول (شيء كان ضروري / كان يجب ان / كان ينبغي ان) في الماضي.

مضارع (تصريف أول) ⇒ **must / has to / have to / needs to / need to** + م

ماضي (تصريف ثاني) ⇒ **had to / needed to** + م

**EX:** I **must** go now. I **am** late for an urgent meeting.

**EX:** Hany **had to** go to hospital **yesterday** after he **hurt** his hand

- ✓ **نفي (عدم) الضرورة :** لما تحب تقول (شيء مش ضروري / مفيش داعي) في المضارع.  
 ✓ **نفي (عدم) الضرورة :** لما تحب تقول (شيء لم يكن ضروري / لم يجب ان / كان ينبغي ان لا) في الماضي.

مضارع (تصريف أول) ⇒ **don't (have to/need to) / doesn't (have to/need to) / needn't** + م

ماضي (تصريف ثاني) ⇒ **didn't (have to/need to)** + م

**EX:** Ali **isn't** late for school; he **don't have to** hurry. = **needn't** XX **needn't to**

**EX:** I **didn't have to** tidy my room **yesterday**; my sister **had already tidied** it.

- ✓ في السؤال بعد (do / does / did / will) او نفهم نستخدم مصدر الضرورة (have to / need to).

**EX:** Does he **have to** finish the report today? = **need to** XX **has to** XX **must**

- ✓ **التحريم والمنع :** لما تحب تقول (شيء ممنوع / محرم فطه / ضد القانون / خطير) استخدم (mustn't = can't)  
 ⇒ **mustn't**

= not allowed = not permitted = forbidden = prohibited = banned = illegal =  
 against the law = dangerous = bad = No (smoking / parking ...)

**EX:** You **mustn't** take photos here; it's a military area. That's against the law.

### الفرق بين (Must & Have to)

- ✓ نستخدم (have to) للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا (ضرورة خارجية : فلان او مكان افرض عليك كذا).

**EX:** At an airport, I **have to** show my passport.

⇒ (has to / have to) = (am to / is to / are to) + م

⇒ (has to / have to) = has got to / have got to + م

**EX:** I **have to** (have got to / am to) wear the school uniform.

- ✓ نستخدم (must) لاتباع القواعد والقوانين (تمشي ع الكل) او نصيحة قوية (strong advice)  
 او توجيه دعوة (عزيمة) او مشاعر داخلية : لما اتكلم عن نفسي (I) او نذكر انفسنا بعمل شيء (لما اتكلم ب (we)  
 او التحفيز والتشجيع (انت الافضل) او التوصية والترشيح (لما نقول دا شيء كويس ويجب ان تفعله)  
 او قرار سريع لحظة الكلام او الوعد (promise) او التحذير (or / otherwise).

**EX:** I really **must** buy my mother a present on her birthday; One should be grateful!

**EX:** You **must** come and stay with us in Arizona sometime.

- ✓ نستخدم (must) وليس (have to) مع تعليمات وقوانين العمل المكتوبة في اماكن العمل.

**EX:** Everyone **must** turn off mobile phones during work time.

- ✓ (Must you ....?) للانتقاد واللوم علي سلوك معين (هل يجب انك تعمل كذا / هل ينفع تعمل كذا / هو يصح تعمل كذا).

**EX:** **Must you** make that noise? It is really annoying.



✓ خلي بالك من مصطلح (انها ضرورة) : (It's a must to ..... ) = It is a necessity = It is necessary  
**EX:** Is it a / an must to take this medicine?

✓ **needn't have + P.P** ⇒ (لم يكن ضروري ولكنني فعلت الشيء : مكنش ضروري بس غلط وعمل الحاجة)  
 ✓ **didn't have to + م** ⇒ (لم يكن ضروري فلم أفعل الشيء : مكنش ضروري ومعملش الحاجة)  
**EX:** The meal was for free. You **needn't have paid** for it. You **should have saved** your

## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

**Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)**

- Mona suggested that we could spend the weekend on the beach, but most of us ..... on the idea.  
 a) accepted      b) frowned      c) pouted      d) scolded
- The hotel was completely ..... . Only the walls remained.  
 a) affected      b) stressed      c) burnt out      d) managed
- We are in danger of ..... the world's oil supply.  
 a) managing      b) exhausting      c) impacted      d) stressed
- List your tasks in order of .....  
 a) supply      b) dairy      c) priority      d) promotion
- She is ..... the worst time of her life in that prison.  
 a) experimenting      b) experiencing      c) coping      d) scolding
- Mr. Mahmoud E Inaggar discovered that some students lack ..... writing essays.  
 a) experience      b) experiences      c) an experience      d) experiment
- The minister ..... the importance of electronic education.  
 a) affected      b) stressed      c) burnt out      d) managed
- I'm busy now - ..... !  
 a) clear off      b) scold      c) pout      d) frown
- Hooligans مثيري الشغب ..... when they saw the police coming.  
 a) stressed      b) burnt out      c) cleared off      d) frowned
- The candle has completely .....  
 a) affected      b) stressed      c) burnt out      d) scolded
- ..... fumes contain chemicals that are harmful to human health.  
 a) Exhausting      b) Exhaust      c) Exhausted      d) Exhaustion
- Mahy is a ..... ; she's always speaking about people badly.  
 a) efficient      b) scold      c) pout      d) frown
- Father asked mother to make a list of the house needs in order ..... priority.  
 a) with      b) to      c) for      d) from

**Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)**

- In England, most people.....work until they are 67; it's a work law there.  
 a) must      b) have to      c) needn't      d) shouldn't
- I ..... work at weekends to do finish late jobs.  
 a) needs to      b) has to      c) have got to      d) needn't to
- LM** You could do this task with your friend if you wish. This shows. ....  
 a) suggestion      b) ability      c) blame      d) refusal
- LM** I shouldn't have repeated that mistake. This means that I ..... it.  
 a) didn't commit      b) repeated      c) ought to have repeated      d) had to repeat



18. **LM** He oughtn't to have sent the email without enclosing the needful attachments.

This means that he .....

- a) sent the email and enclosed the needful attachments
- b) had to enclose the needful attachments with the email
- c) didn't send the email or enclose the needful attachments
- d) sent the email without enclosing the needful attachments

19. **LM** Which of the following shows possibility?

- a) I must have taken an earlier train.
- b) I should have taken an earlier train.
- c) I could have taken an earlier train.
- d) I needn't have taken an earlier train.

20. **LM** Which of the following doesn't express regret?

- a) I should have revised well for the exam
- b) I'm sorry for not revising well for the exam.
- c) I should revise well for the next exam.
- d) I regret not revising well for the exam

Mahmoud El Naggar



## Unit Four

### Exercises on (Vocabulary and Notes)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:-

1. I want to stay in bed all day. Think I am suffering from .....  
 a) self-care      b) well-being      c) energy      d) burnout
2. I think schools should ..... awareness of the importance of looking after yourself.  
 a) neglect      b) scold      c) promote      d) avoid
3. Doing exercise regularly helps you improve your ..... a lot.  
 a) burnout      b) self-care      c) time machine      d) time management
4. .... is to deal successfully with difficult situations.  
 a) Pout      b) Cope with      c) Scold      d) Get together
5. You should train how to ..... with difficult situations well.  
 a) contact      b) pout      c) scold      d) cope
6. We can define burnout as .....  
 a) relaxation      b) refreshment      c) exhaustion      d) vitality
7. His ..... was violent. No one knows what annoyed him.  
 a) reaction      b) time management      c) priority      d) mental health
8. Although my wife is a successful businesswoman, but our family is her first .....  
 a) alerts      b) time management      c) priority      d) mental health
9. You need to find a ..... to help you with this difficult problem.  
 a) counselor      b) responsibility      c) scared      d) well-being
10. .... plays a vital role in the success of any organization.  
 a) Management      b) Burnout      c) Category      d) Exhaustion
11. We hope that the relationship between the Arab countries will .....  
 a) frown      b) improve      c) pout      d) ruin
12. .... is to criticize someone angrily about something they have done.  
 a) Promote      b) Suppose      c) Scold      d) Get together
13. Don't ..... the child. It is not his fault .....  
 a) scold      b) suppose      c) succeed      d) satisfy
14. Students before exams are under .....  
 a) stress      b) stressed      c) stressful      d) stressfully
15. I had to drive ten hours without a break. I was .....  
 a) exhaust      b) exhausted      c) exhausting      d) exhaustion
16. I had to drive ten hours without a break. It was .....  
 a) exhaust      b) exhausted      c) exhausting      d) exhaustion
17. I had to drive ten hours without a break, so I suffered from .....  
 a) exhaust      b) exhausted      c) exhausting      d) exhaustion
18. Doctors and nurses are responsible for the care and ..... of all their patients.  
 a) human being      b) well-being      c) sightseeing      d) agreeing
19. I subscribed in a page has given some ..... on healthy eating habits.  
 a) taps      b) tips      c) tubs      d) tubes
20. I know it is a difficult mission ..... But I am sure you will .....  
 a) avoid      b) experience      c) manage      d) stretch
21. I shouted at my sister, who ..... her lips and burst into tears .....  
 a) exhausted      b) concentrated      c) promoted      d) pouted



- ✓ 22. I couldn't ..... the file onto the website because my laptop was offline.  
a) behave      b) unload      c) upload      d) overload
- ✓ 23. Small projects are a good ..... to the problem of unemployment.  
a) impact      b) affect      c) solution      d) influence
- ✓ 24. .... is to make an angry, unhappy, confused expression, moving your eyebrows together.  
a) frown      b) promote      c) suppose      d) get together
- ✓ 25. Stress has a negative impact on your physical and mental .....  
a) management      b) wealth      c) health      d) arrangement
- ✓ 26. I have ..... all my final exams with full marks.  
a) followed      b) managed      c) passed      d) succeeded
- ✓ 27. When the sun shines, it clears ..... fog الشبورة and dark clouds.  
a) of      b) off      c) at      d) in
- ✓ 28. Seriously, my father ..... resigning يستقيل from this job and searching for anew better one.  
a) thinks      b) dreams      c) considers      d) wants
- ✓ 29. Hackers are people who illegally enter systems to ..... or delete information.  
a) fix      b) install      c) alter      d) alert
- ✓ 30. All the players who are candidate مرشح for the award, belong to the first .....  
a) condition      b) glory      c) category      d) catalogue
31. Sometimes, African people ..... bullying التمر in some European countries.  
a) examine      b) experiment      c) experience      d) expand
- ✓ 32. I do like ..... food like crisps and nuts.  
a) snack      b) snake      c) sauce      d) soup
- ✓ 33. If a material ..... it can become bigger or longer when you pull it.  
a) examine      b) experiment      c) experience      d) expand
- ✓ 34. Doing sport is good for health and helps you to ..... stress.  
a) increase      b) grow      c) reduce      d) get
- ✓ 35. I phoned my friends and planned to ..... next Friday in front of the cinema.  
a) Frown      b) Promote      c) Suppose      d) Get together
- ✓ 36. My uncle needed a/an ..... surgery on his broken leg.  
a) mental      b) stressful      c) scared      d) urgent
- ✓ 37. Smoking has a negative ..... on both mental and physical health.  
a) teenager      b) affect      c) impact      d) identity

## Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions

- ✓ 38. I ..... responsibility for the office when the manager is abroad.  
a) make      b) take      c) do      d) get
- ✓ 39. Never give up. You should ..... your best.  
a) do      b) follow      c) cause      d) avoid
- ✓ 40. Going to the gym has really ..... a difference to how I feel.  
a) gone      b) done      c) made      d) taken
- ✓ 41. You should ..... time for some sport to avoid burnout.  
a) make      b) do      c) experience      d) feel
- ✓ 42. Every night, I ..... up my phone to get up at 7 am.  
a) make      b) sit      c) set      d) do
- ✓ 43. The decision the committee لجنة ..... caused a lot of argument.  
a) did      b) made      c) gave      d) talked
- ✓ 44. Keep ..... attention to your parents. Don't neglect them.  
a) buying      b) paying      c) costing      d) going



✓ 45. I am still thinking of the suggestion. I haven't ..... action yet.

- a) identified    b) taken    c) got    d) perceived

✓ 46. You have to do exercise ..... a regular basis.

- a) of    b) on    c) in    d) for

✓ 47. You have to develop your skills to cope ..... the labour market.

- a) up    b) with    c) off    d) of

✓ 48. You have to take care ..... your mental health.

- a) off    b) of    c) for    d) about

✓ 49. The factory is divided ..... many departments.

- a) with    b) from    c) at    d) into

✓ 50. Do your jobs in order ..... priority.

- a) that    b) to    c) of    d) from

Mahmoud Elnaggar

## Unit Four : Grammar

### تمارين علي الإقتراح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why don't you ..... us to Samy's party?  
a) joined                      b) to join                      c) joining                      d) join
2. .... go for a walk and breathe some fresh air.  
a) How about                      b) Have you considered  
c) Let's                      d) I suggest
3. What about ..... a nice time on beach?  
a) spend                      b) to spend                      c) spending                      d) spent
4. Have you considered ..... To a gym to lose weight?  
a) going                      b) gone                      c) go                      d) to go
5. You could have ..... a sport to keep healthy.  
a) do                      b) to do                      c) done                      d) doing
6. Why not ..... a study plan?  
a) make                      b) to make                      c) making                      d) to making
7. I suggest that we ..... and visit our sick friend.  
a) collecting                      b) to collect                      c) collected                      d) collect
8. I suggest that we ..... and visit our sick friend.  
a) collecting                      b) to collect                      c) should collect                      d) collected
9. He suggested ..... on a trip next Monday.  
a) going                      b) to go                      c) go                      d) to going
10. Have you thought about ..... for a new job?  
a) looked                      b) looking                      c) to look                      d) look

### تمارين علي النصيحة واللوم والندم والإستطاعة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... you open that door, please?  
a) Ought                      b) Shall                      c) Have                      d) Can
2. .... you open that door, please?  
a) Ought                      b) Shall                      c) Have                      d) Could
3. We don't have any bread. You ..... have bought some before the shops closed.  
a) may                      b) will                      c) should                      d) can't
4. I ..... the money from Ali (but) I didn't asked him.  
a) should have borrowed                      b) could borrow  
c) could have borrowed                      d) can borrow
5. I ..... my money. I regret not saving it.  
a) should save                      b) should have saved  
c) shouldn't save                      d) shouldn't have saved



6. I ..... well in my exams, but I didn't and now I regret it.  
 a) should have done b) could have done  
 c) shouldn't have done d) couldn't have done
7. I ..... well in my exams, but I didn't and now I regret it.  
 a) ought to have done b) could have done  
 c) shouldn't have done d) couldn't have done
8. I wonder if you ..... help me with my homework.  
 a) must b) might c) could d) should
9. They ..... thrown litter on the ground. They made the room dirty.  
 a) must have b) could have c) shouldn't have d) can't have
10. The questions were difficult, but the students ..... answer them.  
 a) could b) succeeded in c) can d) were able to
11. The questions were difficult, but the students ..... answer them.  
 a) could b) managed to c) can d) succeeded in
12. The questions were difficult, but the students ..... answering them.  
 a) could b) managed to c) can d) succeeded in - ing
13. I ..... swim when I was five.  
 a) ought b) should c) could d) can
14. You ..... criticized her in public. That wasn't suitable.  
 a) should have b) could c) must have d) shouldn't have
15. He ..... a good footballer. He had the ability but he didn't have confidence in himself.  
 a) should have been b) could have been  
 c) shouldn't have been d) couldn't have been
16. Huda was very upset with you yesterday. You ..... apologised for saying she was lazy.  
 a) should have b) can have c) must have d) mustn't have
17. Yesterday, Sara ..... up early. She missed her school bus.  
 a) must get b) mustn't have got c) should get d) should have got
18. I feel tired. I ..... up late yesterday.  
 a) should stay b) shouldn't have stayed  
 c) couldn't have stayed d) should have stayed
19. I feel tired. I ..... up late yesterday.  
 a) should stay b) oughtn't to have stayed  
 c) couldn't have stayed d) ought to have stayed
20. Thanks to technology, scientists ..... find new cures for difficult diseases.  
 a) ought b) shall c) have d) can
21. I ..... out but I stayed at home.  
 a) must have gone b) could have gone  
 c) can't have gone d) mustn't have gone
22. She ..... a new phone, but she didn't.  
 a) must have bought b) could have bought  
 c) can't have bought d) shouldn't have bought



## Unit (5) : The future of work

## Revision Vocabulary

virtual	افتراضي (مشابه ومحاكى للواقع) / واقعي / عملي	highlight	يبرز / يلقي الضوء على
virtual meeting	اجتماع افتراضي (عن طريق النت)	highlights	ابرز (أهم) الاحداث
mute	صامت / يكتم الصوت	fashion	موضة
sessions	جلسة / دورة	fashionable	عالمية / مساهمة للموضة
install	يسطب / يثبت (برنامج) / يركب (جهاز)	old-fashioned	موضة قديمة
installation	تسطيب / تثبيت (برنامج) / تركيب (جهاز)	look into	يتحقق من / يتقصي / يدرس
microphone	ميكروفون	look into possibilities	يدرس إمكانيات
sound	صوت (شيء)	link	رابط / يربط بصفحة / يربط / علاقة / يوصل
turn the sound up	يعطي الصوت	background	خلفية / أرضية
turn the sound down	يخفض الصوت	technique	أسلوب / طريقة
possible	ممكن / محتمل	shocked	مصدوم
possibility	إمكانية / احتمالية	create	يبتكر / يخلق / يبدع
mind map	خريطة ذهنية	creative	مبتكر / مبدع
interpersonal	شخصي	give up	يياس / يستسلم
interpersonal skills	مهارات التعامل مع الآخرين	employ	يوظف
instant	فوري / عاجل	consequences	عواقب / نتائج
documents	مستندات / وثائق	click on	يضغط / ينقر (ع الماوس)
information technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	information	معلومات
technical	فني / تقني	slides	شرائح عرض
call off = cancel	يلغي	forum	منتدى / ندوة
plug	يوصل الكهرباء / القابس (فيشة الكهرباء)	by accident	بالصدفة
decline	ينخفض / يقل / يرفض / تراجع / انهيار / تدهور	turn / switch on	يشغل
get into a decline	يتدهور / يتراجع	turn / switch off	يطفىء
apply	يطبق / يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	podcast	بث اذاعي على النت
application	تطبيق / طلب لوظيفة	share	يشارك / مشاركة / نصيب (حصّة)
version	نسخة / إصدار	share screen	يشارك الشاشة
essential	ضروري / جوهري / أساسي	presentation	تقديم / عرض
tips	نصائح	catch up with	يلحق ب / يدرك
join - ed	ينضم الي	catch up with your work	تلحق بعملك
download from	يحمل (ملف من علي الانترنت)	concentrate on	يركز علي
delay	تأجيل / تأخير / يؤجل / يؤخر	concentration	تركيز
effective	فعال	definitely = certainly = surely	بالتأكيد
effectively	بفاعلية / بشكل فعال	take a break	يأخذ راحة
stay in touch with	يبقي علي تواصل مع	internet connection	إتصال بالانترنت
stressful situations	مواقف عصيبة (تسبب توتر)	broadband connection	اتصال سريع النطاق
trend	تريند / ميل / نزعة / إتجاه	support	يدعم / يساند / دعم / مساندة / تأييد
clarify	يوضح / يفسر	welfare	الرفاهية / السلامة
clarification	توضيح / تفسير	suited to	مناسب ل
space	مساحة / فراغ / متسع	conference	مؤتمر
logic	المنطق	contact	يتواصل / يتصل / تواصل
logical	منطقي	attach	يرفق / يلصق
destroy	يدمر	record	يسجل / تسجيل / سجل
respond	يرد / يستجيب	conclude with	يختتم / ينتهي
risk	يخطر / مخاطرة	conclusion	خاتمة / نهاية



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (5)

## Revision Vocabulary

adopt	يتبنى	half-brother	أخ غير شقيق
convinced	مقتنع	inherit	يرث
clerk	موظف	jealous	غيور / حاقد
dare	يجرؤ	lodging	مسكن
fiancé	خاطب	engaged	مخطوبة
disappointed	خائب الامل / محبط	pale	شاحب الوجه
handsome	وسيم	grateful	شاكر / ممتن
cheerful	بشوش / مسرور / مبتهج	take revenge on	يثأر / الثأر

## Choose the correct answer :-

- To ..... is to receive something from someone else, usually  
a. adopt      b. get engaged      c. dare      d. inherit
- To ..... is to legally take someone else's child into your family.  
a. adapt      b. adopt      c. inherit      d. share
- A ..... is someone who is the son of one of your parents.  
a. half-brother      b. clerk      c. benefactor      d. fiancé
- Rasha and her ....., Adam, plan to have a wedding party in June.  
a. fiancée      b. fiancé      c. husband      d. rival
- The tourist office will send you information on .....  
a. position      b. location      c. lodging      d. distination
- LM ..... revenge on those who harmed you will never give you a sense of peace.  
a. Letting      b. Making      c. Taking      d. Sitting
- LM She is very rich; she has ..... a fortune from her late grandfather in a will وصية.  
a. robbed      b. inherited      c. left      d. done

## Note the following

everyone - body & someone - body & any one & none & each...

• بعدهم فعل (مفرد) ولكن عند الإشارة إليهم بضمير نستخدم ضمير (جمع) مثل (they - them - their).

⇒ فعل مضارع ب S / is / was / has : أفعال المفرد

EX: Everyone was playing well . I was pleased with them.

EX: Everyone drive(s) (their) cars on the right side in Egypt.

## Collocations and Expressions

give explanation	يقدم تفسير	make prediction	يتنبأ
give presentation	يقدم عرض توضيحي	make a summary	يلخص
do a session	يعقد جلسة	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
do project / revision	يعمل مشروع / يراجع	make up the way	يمهد الطريق
draw mind maps	يرسم خرائط ذهنية	attach a document / file	يرفق وثيقة / ملف
miss school work	يفوته عمل مدرسي	leave virtual meeting	يفادر اجتماع افتراضي
feel free to	لا تتردد ان	replaced completely by	يستبدل تماما ب
get stressed	يصبح متوتر / يتوتر	Let me know	إسمحلي أعرف



**Prepositions**

solution (to)	حل ل	experiment (with)	يجرب ب
tend (to)	يميل ل	(on) call	مشغول بمكالمة
attach ... (to)	يرفق / يلصق	sure (about)	متأكد من
(in) advance	مقدما	instead (of)	بدلا من

**راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)**

give in	يسلم	give up = stop	يقطع عن / يستسلم
give out	يوزع	give off = emit	يبعث (تخرج غاز)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. In feast العيد days, fathers give ..... money to children.

a) up                      b) away                      c) back                      d) out

2. If you don't succeed at first, never give .....

a) out                      b) away                      c) out                      d) up

3. You must give ..... smoking or you will face health difficulties.

a) away                      b) out                      c) up                      d) in

**راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة**

⇒ اسم + P.P

sun-baked	مجفف بالشمس	heart-broken	منكسر القلب (حزين)
left-handed	يستخدم اليد اليسرى (أعسر)	middle-aged	في منتصف العمر
right-handed	يستخدم اليد اليمنى	wind-powered	يعمل بقوة الرياح

EX: My uncle is a middle-aged man. (-)

EX: These are wind-powred turbines. (-) : لفي (a) مع الجمع

**(الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد)****Synonyms (syn) : meaning :**

install	set up	يثبت / يسطب (برنامج)
look into	investigate / explore / research	يتحقق من / يتحري
mute	silent / very low	صامت
switch	change / turn / convert	يغير / يبدل
virtual	simulated by computer	افتراضي (محاكي ب الكمبيوتر)
delay	postpone / put off / procrastinate	يؤجل / يماطل
essential	vital / necessary	اساسي / جوهري
instant	rapid / quick / swift / fast / urgent	سريع / فوري / عاجل

**Antonyms (anti) : opposite:**

install	يثبت / يسطب (برنامج)	uninstall / remove	يزيل
virtual	افتراضي	true / real / actual	حقيقي
instant	فوري / سريع	slow / late / delayed	بطيء / متأخر



Choose the correct answer :-

1. The internet has created a **virtual** world for game mania.

The antonym of "**virtual**" is "....."

- a. fictional      b. stimulated      c. real      d. imaginative

2. A new version of programme was **installed**.

The synonym of "**installed**" is "....."

- a. set up      b. turned up      c. turned off      d. switched on

3. The microphone is **mute**. The word "**mute**" is similar in meaning to .....

- a. loud      b. high      c. noisy      d. silent

4. The agency regrets to tell you that your flight to France has been **delayed**.

"**Delayed**" can be replaced by .....

- a. continued      b. hurried      c. postponed      d. went on

5. I heard a scream, so I went down the street to **looked into** what had happened.

The phrasal verb "**looked into**" is a synonym of .....

- a. invested      b. experimented      c. experienced      d. investigated

### كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي

- ✎ transport  
✎ tranform  
✎ transmit  
✎ transplant  
✎ transfer

- ينقل (ناس / بضائع)  
ينقل / يحول  
ينقل / يبث (إشارة)  
ينقل / يزرع (أعضاء جسم)  
يحول (أموال)

- ✎ at the end of ...  
✎ in the end

- في نهاية ...  
في النهاية

(a - an - the - article) are  
no article  
Arabic lecture  
The words (preposition) حرف الجر

كل يوم راجع مهارة

⇒ **Preposition** : a word that is used before a noun, pronoun to show place, time ..etc.

✓ حرف الجر هو كلمة تستخدم قبل الاسم أو الضمير لوصف مكان أو زمان .

**EX:** in / at / on / about / from / with ....

## (conjunction / linking words / linkers) الرابط

⇒ **Conjunction** : a part of speech that joins words, phrases, or clauses together.

⇒ after / before / while / when / because / for / if / or / since / although ....

✓ الرابط هو كلمة تربط جملتين. وأنواعه هي :-

<b>correlative</b>	both ... and / either ... or / neither ... nor	روابط ثنائية (مكونة من كلمتين مع بعض)
<b>coordinating</b>	for / and / nor / but / or / yet / so	روابط العطف (FANBOYS : (V)
<b>subordinating</b>	after / although / because / if / till / until	أدوات الربط العادية (غير ال V التي فوق)

**Choose the correct answer :-**

1. "He is a famous youtuber, **but** is humble". The word "**but**" is a/an ..... conjunction

a) coordinating b) subordinating c) correlative d) interrogative

2. "He is **neither** a doctor **nor** a nurse". "**Neither .. nor**" is a/an ..... conjunction

a) coordinating b) subordinating c) correlative d) interrogative

## (determiners) أدوات التحديد

⇒ **Determiner** : a part of speech that introduces a noun like a, an, the, my, many, this.

✓ أدوات التحديد هي كلمات تسبق الاسم لتحده. وأنواعه هي :-

<b>articles</b>	a / an / the	أدوات النكرة والمعرفة
<b>possessives</b>	my / his / her / its / our / your / their	صفات الملكية
<b>quantifiers</b>	many / much / few / little / some	محددات الكمية
<b>demonstratives</b>	this / that / these / those	أدوات الإشارة

1. "He is **an** actor". "**An**" is a/an .....

a) determiner b) preposition c) noun d) conjunction

2. "There isn't **much** cooking oil". "**Much**" is a/an .....

a) article b) preposition c) possessive d) quantifier

## (interjection / exclamation) لفظ التعجب

✓ لفظ التعجب هي كلمة أو جملة تعبر عن مشاعر قوية مثل الدهشة / السعادة / الغضب.

⇒ **Interjection** : a word or phrase used to express a strong feeling / emotion such as shock, pain, anger, enthusiasm or pleasure.

**EX:** oh/ alas/ really/ oh my God/ wow/ Oops/ ugh/ Look out/ Watch out/ Take care

⇒ How + صفة !

**EX:** How interesting!

⇒ What a/an + صفة + اسم !

**EX:** What a beautiful view!

⇒ Have a/an + صفة + اسم !

**EX:** Have a nice day!

1. "Oops" is a/an .....

a) noun b) interjection c) verb d) linking word



## Grammar

أنفعال يأتي بعدها (to + inf.)

agree	يوافق	learn	يتعلم	threaten	يهدد	pretend	يتظاهر
arrange	يرتب	offer	يعرض	want	يريد	manage	يتمكن
decide	يقرر	plan	يخطط	refuse	يرفض	forbid	يمنع
intend	ينوي	allow	يسمح	deserve	يستحق	permit	يسمح
advise	ينصح	force	يرغم / يجبر	fail	يفشل	invite	يدعو
expect	يتوقع	promise	يعد	hope	يأمل	cause	يسبب
demand	يطلب	afford	يقدر علي	attempt	يحاول	encourage	يشجع

EX: I expect to win the cup next week.

أنفعال الآتية يليها فعل ينتهي بـ (ing)

admit = confess	يعترف	practise	يمارس	consider	يفكر في	keep	يحافظ / يظل
deny	ينكر	fancy	يتخيل	delay	يؤجل	mind	يمنع
avoid	يتجنب	suggest	يقترح	put off	يؤجل	include	يشمل
prevent	يمنع	spend + مدة	يقضي	postpone	يؤجل	recommend	يوصي / يرشح
prefer	يفضل	dislike / hate	يكره	carry on = keep on	يستمر	give up	يتوقف
finish	ينهي	imagine	يتخيل	go	يذهب	enjoy	يستمتع

EX: He admitted borrowing my pen without asking me.

✓ would ('d) rather / had ('d) better + (to مصدر بدون )

EX: I'd rather finish my work early today.

أنفعال الآتية يليها (to + inf. / V-ing) مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى

- ✓ remember + to + مصدر (للمصدر) يتذكر أن يقوم بعمل شيء ما (الشيء لم يحدث)
- ✓ remember + V-ing (عمل) يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر أنه فعله (الشيء حدث)

EX: He remembered seeing the man. He already saw him before.

- ✓ forget + to + مصدر (للمصدر) ينسى أن يفعل شيئاً (الشيء لم يحدث)
- ✓ forget + V-ing (عمل) يفعل شيء ثم ينسى أنه فعله (الشيء حدث)

EX: Nadia forgot locking the door, She already locked it before going.

- ✓ stop + to + مصدر يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً (وقف علشان حاجة يعملها)
- ✓ stop + V-ing يتوقف عن عمل شيء ولو مؤقتاً (بطل فعل الشيء)

EX: He stopped smoking . He no longer smokes.

- ✓ regret + to + مصدر يشعر بالأسف لأنه من الضروري أن يفعل شيئاً ومضطر (أسف لاخبارك بخبر سيء)
- ✓ regret + V-ing يشعر بالأسف لأنه فعل شيئاً (فعل شيء ثم ندم علي فعله)

EX: He regretted to say that my brother had an accident.

- ✓ try + to + مصدر يحاول عمل شيء وغالباً لا ينجح
- ✓ try + V-ing يحاول عمل شيء (للاقتراح)

EX: A: I have a bad headache.

B: Try taking an aspirin.



مع التعبيرات الآتية تنتهي بـ (to) ولكن يليها فعل ينتهي بـ (ing)

contribute to	يساهم في	prefer to :ing	يفضل ... على ...
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	object to	يعترض
thanks to	بفضل / بسبب	lead to	يؤدي إلى
adapt to	يتأقلم مع	look forward to	ينتظر إلى

EX: I prefer staying at home to going out in this weather.

مع التعبيرات الآتية يليها فعل ينتهي بـ (ing)

have (difficulty - trouble) in	يجد صعوبة في	(be) worth	يستحق (حرف جر)
It's no good = It's no use	لا فائدة من	I can't stand /bear/help/face	لا يحتمل
without	بدون	It's a waste of time/money	إنها مضيعة للوقت / للمال

EX: It's a waste of time watching TV all day.

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

مع الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها (فعل ينتهي بـ ing) في حالة عدم وجود مفعول وسوف تكون الجملة في المعلوم .  
أما في حالة وجود مفعول يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) حتى لو الجملة مبنية للمجهول.

advise	ينصح	forbid	يمنع	permit	يسمح
allow	يسمح	recommend	يوصي بـ	encourage	يشجع

EX: They do not allow parking here.

EX: They allowed me to park here.

EX: I was allowed to park here .

(إذا لم يأتي بعدهم مفعول نستخدم V-ing)

(بعده مفعول نستخدم to ثم المصدر)

(مجهول ولكن كان المفعول موجود)

مع الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها (المصدر) إذا تابعا (الحدث بالكامل) أو (V-ing) في حالة لو تابعا (جزء من الحدث) .

see	يري	watch	يشاهد
hear	يسمع	notice	يلحظ

EX: I heard Ali sing a song. = I heard the whole song.

EX: I heard Ali singing a song. = I heard part of the song.

✓ go on + to + مصدر

يستمر في عمل شيء بعد الانتهاء من شيء آخر (ينتقل من عمل لآخر)

EX: He finished the reports he went on to type some emails.

✓ go on + V-ing

يستمر في القيام بنفس العمل

EX: he went on working for the same company.

✓ نفي (م + to) : (not to + م) ونفي (V-ing) : (not V-ing).

✓ (م + to) في المعلوم تتحول إلى : (to be + P.P) في المجهول (.)

✓ (V-ing) في المعلوم تتحول إلى : (being + P.P) في المجهول (.)

EX: Adel promised not to make that mistake again.

EX: I regretted not phoning Mazen before travelling. I should have done that.

EX: My room needs to be cleaned.

نحتاج أن نُنظف

EX: I don't like being deceived by others. لا أحب أن أُخدع / يتم خداعي



اقرأ الجمل دي كويس

EX: He **expects** / **expected to win** the cup.

expect to + V

EX: He **expects** that **he will** win the cup.

expect فاعل will win

EX: He **expected** that **he would** win the cup.

فاعل

مش يتوقع فاعل وراي بعني  
~~expected to win~~  
 he  
 she  
 we

EX: I **help** Sara **do / to do** her homework.EX: I **can't help staying** in hot close places.EX: I **like** watching / **to watch** TV.EX: I **'d like** to watch TV.EX: I **feel like** watching TV.EX: I **dislike** watching TV.✓ I can't / couldn't **afford + to + inf.**

لا أقدر

✓ I can't **stand / bear / help / face + V-ing**EX: I **can't afford to buy** a new car.EX: I **can't stand listening** to such loud music.EX: He **stopped to buy** his paper. He stopped in order to buy it.EX: He **stopped smoking**. He no longer smokes.EX: When he told us the story, we just **couldn't stop laughing**.EX: Do you **consider completing** your study abroad?

يفكر

EX: Many people **consider sport to be** a good way to keep fit.

يعتبر

## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

### Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. After the elections, he was ..... as a parliament member. install يُصَوِّغُ مِنْصِبَ  
 a. located                      b. declined                      c. installed                      d. motivated
2. The yellow in this painting is ..... and gentle, not bright.  
 a. switched                      b. muted فَانِجُ الْوَارِدِ                      c. sounded                      d. debated
3. Did you go to ..... or start working after high school?  
 a. colleauges زَمِيلُ الْعَمَلِ                      b. colleges كَلِمَةُ                      c. foes                      d. enemies
4. Feeling exhausted, I decided to ..... by watching a film.  
 a. switched on                      b. switched off سَوِّجَ                      c. employed                      d. responded
5. Lawyers must not leave the building while the court is in .....  
 a. operation                      b. trend                      c. respond لَمْ يَنْجُذِ الْإِنْفَاقَ                      d. session
6. Churches bells ..... throughout the city.  
 a. plugged                      b. sounded صَوَّتْ                      c. muted                      d. installed
7. Follow this good saying : "..... mind is in the sound body".  
 a. Mute                      b. Sound                      c. Average                      d. Reliable
8. They sailed along the ..... towards the sea.  
 a. bank                      b. sound                      c. board                      d. decline
9. The pain disappeared in an ..... after taking anesthetic مَخْذَر  
 a. distance                      b. instant لَحْظَةً                      c. distant                      d. application
10. The essay can be ..... into two paragraphs. بِإِجْرَائِهِ  
 a. shared الْمُطَالَعَةِ                      b. plugged                      c. concentrated بِلَاغِ                      d. clarified
11. The ..... of trees increases with rainfall amounts.  
 a. decline                      b. concentration                      c. explanation                      d. connection
12. Did you leave a ..... to the waiter?  
 a. tub                      b. tip نَقِشَ                      c. tap                      d. tape
13. He stood on the ..... of the hill.  
 a. tube                      b. tip                      c. tap                      d. bottom
14. I'll take garden waste to the rubbish .....  
 a. plug                      b. tip مُخَامَتَ                      c. session                      d. access
15. My ..... is in teaching for twenty years.  
 a. highlight                      b. background                      c. version                      d. identity
16. Some celebrities like to keeps or stays in the ..... trying not to be noticed  
 a. sight                      b. background                      c. installation                      d. risk
17. My secretary gave me some ..... information about the new deal.  
 a. separate                      b. declined                      c. background                      d. mute
18. **LM** The young man was arrested after the police discovered that he had been ..... in the crime.  
 a. engaged صَوَّرَ؟ جَرَّبَ                      b. enjoyed                      c. enlarged                      d. entered
19. **LM** If you neglect your work, it's difficult to catch .....  
 a. down                      b. out                      c. up with بِلَاغَةِ                      d. up

### Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

20. **LM** I shouldn't have annoyed my brother. This means that I ..... that.  
 a. hoped to do                      b. regret doing                      c. regret to do                      d. was pleased to do



## Unit Five

## Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:-

1. .... the new version of this application, it will benefit you.  
a) Share                      b) Install                      c) Destroy                      d) Plug
2. Can you ..... the sound till I finish my call.  
a) mute                      b) install                      c) apply                      d) respond
3. I hope I will ..... the university staff موظفين as a researcher.  
a) share                      b) separate                      c) join                      d) suit
4. Strong trading ..... exist between Egypt and many world countries.  
a) collections                      b) communications                      c) links                      d) contacts
5. Click on this ..... to download the free version of the application.  
a) session                      b) link                      c) technique                      d) explanation
6. Give me some time to ..... all the possible solutions to the problem.  
a) plug in                      b) look into                      c) decline                      d) delay
7. The new educational system should ..... the modern technology.  
a) delay                      b) catch up with                      c) contact                      d) decline
8. .... I can hardly hear you.  
a) Turn the TV up                      b) Switch the TV on                      c) Switch on the TV                      d) Turn down the TV
9. Use a marker to ..... the important parts of the text.  
a) attach                      b) present                      c) highlight                      d) tend
10. This report ..... some of the problems faced by old people in public means of transport.  
a) resends                      b) retypes                      c) edits                      d) highlights
11. Don't expect to get a/an ..... response. I will take my time to decide.  
a) virtual                      b) instant                      c) technical                      d) interpersonal
12. Parents are responsible for the ..... of their children.  
a) forum                      b) space                      c) welfare                      d) interview
13. If you have the demanded skills, you will be ..... to the job.  
a) joined                      b) suited                      c) shared                      d) downloaded
14. All the new games online are ..... . you feel as if they are factual واقعي.  
a) virtual                      b) instant                      c) technical                      d) interpersonal
15. One of the best ..... to study is using mind maps.  
a) sessions                      b) links                      c) techniques                      d) explanations
16. Today's match has been ..... because of the bad weather and heavy rain.  
a) plugged in                      b) looked into                      c) declined                      d) delayed
17. Sending letters has become ..... . Emails are faster and safer.  
a) essential                      b) old-fashioned                      c) shocked                      d) similar
18. The firemen ..... their lives to rescue the people in the burning house.  
a) risked                      b) declined                      c) joined                      d) caught up with
19. This point needs more ..... to be understood.  
a) conference                      b) clarification                      c) position                      d) possibility
20. His serious case حالة started ..... to the new medicine.  
a) applying                      b) muting                      c) installing                      d) responding
21. I don't expect that he will ..... this generous offer.  
a) plug in                      b) look into                      c) decline                      d) switch off



22. .... skills are necessary in teamwork to be sociable with all the work members.  
 a) Virtual      b) Instant      c) Technical      d) Interpersonal
23. Give children their own ..... to choose and decide.  
 a) forum      b) space      c) welfare      d) interview
24. Give me a flexible solution that can easily be .....  
 a) responded      b) applied      c) installed      d) muted
25. Don't hesitate ..... me if something goes wrong.  
 a) Connect      b) Contact      c) Catch up      d) Catch up with
26. There is a ..... of starting a new business in the coming days.  
 a) conference      b) clarification      c) position      d) possibility
27. Make sure that all the speakers are ..... before starting the forum.  
 a) plugged in      b) looked into      c) declined      d) delayed
28. I intend to attend the medical ..... held in the Hilton.  
 a) conference      b) clarification      c) position      d) possibility
29. Stress and nervousness ..... our mental health.  
 a) plug      b) install      c) destroy      d) share
30. You can download ..... of the today programme from the BBC website.  
 a- dates      b- forecast      c- pod casts      d- dairies
31. The..... form will ask for your name and place of birth.  
 a- application      b- certificate      c- degree      d- mark
32. There is now a UN emergency ..... to discuss the crisis أزمة.  
 a-season      b- session      c- serial      d- episode
33. Software updates can be ..... from the company's website.  
 a- uploaded      b- logged      c- downloaded      d- surfed
34. It was a/an ..... decision as all the facts were considered.  
 a- imaginary      b- logical      c- illogical      d- fictional
35. The government is trying to do more to educate the public about the.....of drug abuse.  
 a- aims      b- purposes      c- consequences      d- targets
36. All the attendants الحضور liked the ..... I gave.  
 a) document      b) background      c) presentation      d) option
37. Keep quiet, please. I need to ..... on my study.  
 a) concentrate      b) identify      c) conclude      d) reduce
38. I can't attend the lecture. Please, ..... it for me.  
 a) click      b) record      c) drew      d) switch

### Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions

39. How many study sessions have you ..... ?  
 a) given      b) done      c) made      d) put
40. .... free to stop me if I make anything mistaken.  
 a) Feel      b) Make      c) Give      d) Take
41. The explanation she has ..... isn't accurate.  
 a) given      b) done      c) made      d) put
42. I have ..... two documents to the email  
 a) brought      b) got      c) attached      d) highlighted
43. The notes I ..... help me remember.  
 a) put      b) do      c) make      d) feel
44. To ..... your screen with another device, you need a new software.  
 a) feel      b) take      c) share      d) look



- 45.** Before taking important decisions, ..... into its possibilities of success or not.  
 a) feel                      b) take                      c) share                      d) look
- 46.** We are ..... a project about the best application of smart technology.  
 a) making                      b) doing                      c) telling                      d) giving
- 47.** I have known about arrival ..... accident.  
 a) in                      b) at                      c) by                      d) with
- 48.** The manager is busy now; he is ..... a call.  
 a) in                      b) on                      c) of                      d) by
- 49.** He insisted that he should take his wages ..... advance.  
 a) at                      b) of                      c) in                      d) on
- 50.** Conclude your paragraph ..... a good summary of the main points.  
 a) with                      b) to                      c) from                      d) about

Mahmoud ElNaggar

## Unit Five : Grammar

### تمارين علي حالات المصدر و حالات V-ing

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I have finished ..... the report.

- a) write                      b) writing                      c) to write                      d) wrote

2- He suggested ..... for a swim.

- a) to go                      b) to going                      c) going                      d) goes

3- "Titanic" is a good fim, it is worth .....

- a) watch                      b) to watch                      c) watching                      d) to watching

4- Maha agreed to go ..... with us.

- a) to sail                      b) to sailing                      c) sailing                      d) sailed

5- Fancy ..... you here.

- a) seeing                      b) is seeing                      c) was seeing                      d) see

6- I wanted to avoid ..... her but I couldn't.

- a) meet                      b) met                      c) is meeting                      d) meeting

7- I'd rather ..... on the summer English course.

- a) enrol                      b) will enrol                      c) to entro                      d) enrolling

8. Fatma is looking forward ..... university next year.

- a) starting                      b) to starting                      c) starts                      d) started

9. I forgot ..... my friend last week. I should have done this.

- a) phone                      b) to phoning                      c) to phone                      d) phoned

10. We don't have any bread because Ali forgot ..... some from the baker's.

- a) buying                      b) to buy                      c) buy                      d) to buying

11. The thief denied ..... the money.

- a) stolen                      b) was stealing                      c) to steal                      d) stealing

12. She stopped ..... and put down her pen.

- a) write                      b) to write                      c) written                      d) writing

13. Shaimaa stopped ..... children's books when she went to secondary school.

- a) reading                      b) to read                      c) read                      d) to reading

14. On my way to school, my father stopped ..... a newspaper.

- a) to buy                      b) buying                      c) buy                      d) bought

15. We have arranged ..... at 9 o'clock.

- a) meeting                      b) will meet                      c) to meet                      d) met

16. The state contributes ..... youth with new jobs.

- a) provide                      b) to provide                      c) to providing                      d) providing

17. Stop ..... ! You are giving me a headache.

- a) to shout                      b) shouted                      c) shouting                      d) to shouting

18. She always prefers .....to school.

- a) to walk                      b) walking                      c) walk                      d) a and b

19. I remember ..... a TV programme about it. It was interesting.

- a) to watch                      b) watch                      c) watching                      d) being watched

20. Remember ..... in this application form, please.

- a) filling                      b) fill                      c) to fill                      d) filled

21. What would you like .....

- a) drinking                      b) to drink                      c) drink                      d) to drinking

22. On their way to Luxor, the tourists stopped ..... some photos of an ancient temple.

- a) to take                      b) take                      c) taking                      d) to taking



23. Karim admitted ..... the plate and said he was sorry.

- a) breaking      b) to break      c) breaks      d) break

24. Do you remember ..... at that hotel? - It was very comfortable.

- a) staying      b) to stay      c) to staying      d) stay

25. I regret ..... that book. It's not very good.

- a) to buy      b) buying      c) buy      d) to buying

26. In 1954, the government decided ..... the High Dam.

- a) built      b) building      c) to build      d) had built

27. We expect ..... the English test this year.

- a) pass      b) to passing      c) passing      d) to pass

28. Before you go to London, you should practise ..... English.

- a) to speak      b) speak      c) speaking      d) to speaking

29. On my first day at school, I remember ..... into the classroom and seeing my teacher.

- a) going      b) to go      c) to going      d) go

30. We don't want anybody ..... that we are here.

- a) know      b) knowing      c) known      d) to know

31. Our teacher of English allows ..... questions at the end of the lesson.

- a) asking      b) to ask      c) asks      d) asked

32. Our teacher of English allows us ..... questions at the end of the lesson.

- a) asking      b) to ask      c) asks      d) asked

33. Students are allowed ..... questions at the end of the lesson.

- a) asking      b) to ask      c) asks      d) asked

34. Everyone objects ..... the trees in our street.

- a) cutting      b) to cutting      c) cuts      d) to cut

35. I regret ..... my lessons. I got really bad marks.

- a) to neglecting      b) to neglect      c) neglecting      d) neglects

36. I regret ..... that you have failed your exams.

- a) to telling      b) to tell      c) telling      d) told

37. My brother is learning ..... the guitar.

- a) play      b) to playing      c) to play      d) playing

38. I tried ..... him, but he had already left.

- a) stopping      b) stopped      c) stop      d) to stop

39. If you have a headache, try ..... this medicine.

- a) taking      b) took      c) take      d) to take

40. He was angry with me because I forgot ..... him back the money I borrowed from him.

- a) to pay      b) paying      c) pay      d) pays

41. He had forgotten ..... the key until years later when he needed to open the cupboard.

- a) losing      b) to lose      c) lost      d) to losing

42. Suddenly everyone stopped ..... There was silence in the hall.

- a) talk      b) talking      c) to talk      d) talked

43. I regret ..... you that Nabil will not be joining the team. I know you wanted him with us.

- a) telling      b) to tell      c) have told      d) am telling

44. Nehad regrets ..... her mother on her birthday. She should have done it.

- a) not phone      b) not phoned      c) not phoning      d) not to phone

45. It's no good ..... a lot of sweets; you will gain more weight.

- a) ate      b) to eating      c) eating      d) eat

46. I can't help ..... when I speak with my little grandchild.

- a) to laugh      b) laugh      c) to laughing      d) laughing



## Unit (6): Let's get it done

### Revision Vocabulary

assess = evaluate	يقيم / يُقدر / يقيس / يحكم علي	brainstorm	عصف ذهني / يعصف ذهنياً (يفكر بجديّة)
assessment = evaluation	تقييم / مقياس	session	جلسة / دورة / حصّة
decline	ينخفض / انخفاض / يتدهور / تدهور * يرفض	priority	أولوية / أفضلية
raise	يرفع	logic	منطق / علم المنطق
efficiency	كفاءة	logical	منطقي
raise efficiency	يرفع الكفاءة	alternative to + V-ing	بديل
produce	ينتج	significant	هام / ملحوظ
product	منتج	significantly	بشكل هام / بشكل ملحوظ
production	إنتاج	distract	يشوش
productive	غزير الإنتاج / إنتاجي / مثمر	distracted	مشوش / شارد الذهن
productivity	الإنتاجية / العائد والمردود	distracton	تشويش
progress	تقدم	impact = affect = influence	تأثير / يؤثر
effective	فعال	impact = effect = influence (on)	تأثير
effectively	بفاعلية / بشكل فعال	go well	يسير علي يرام
effectiveness	فاعلية	permission	إذن / تصريح
strategy	إستراتيجية / تخطيط	error	خطأ / عطل
switch off	يستريح لفترة قصيرة (يفصل / يستريح)	delay	يؤخر / يؤجل
vary	يختلف / يتنوع	focus	يركز / تركيز
various	متنوع / مختلف	analyse	يحلل
variety	تنوع / تشكيلة	analysis	تحليل
procrastinate	يؤجل / يماطل	share	يشارك
procrastination	تأجيل / مماطلة / إرجاء	periods	فترات
increase in	يزيد / زيادة	research (on / into)	بحث علمي / يجري بحث
solution	حل	researcher	باحث / معيد
improve	يحسن	record	رقم قياسي
improvement	تحسين / تحسن	massive	ضخم
options	خيارات	aim to	يهدف الي
achieve	يحقق / ينجز	position	مكانة / وضع / موقع
diary	مفكرة / نوتة	fan	مشجع / معجب
less stressed	أقل توترا / أقل قلقاً *	drawback	جانب سلبي / عيب / عائق
take breaks	يأخذ فترات راحة	come over	يزور زيارة خاطفة
looking back	عودة للوراء / بالنظر للخلف / تذكر	findings	اكتشافات / نتائج بحث / نتائج
blog	مدونة / يدون شيئاً	perform	يؤدي / يفعل / يقوم بدور / يمثل
pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب	performer	مؤدي
negative	سلبي	performance	إداء
* night owls	سهاري الليل / طواف في الليل	beliefs	معتقد / اعتقاد / وجهة نظر
* early bird	نشيط	result in = lead to	يؤدي الي / ينتج عنه
state = mention	يذكر	take part	يشارك
divide into	يقسم الي	deal with	يتعامل مع
positive	إيجابي	data	بيانات



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (6)

## Revision Vocabulary

affectionately	بمحبة / بمودة	make good use of	يستغل
anxious	قلق	life sentence	عقوبة السجن مدى الحياة
boast about	يتباهى / يتفاخر	remarkable	ملحوظ / بارز
boastfully	بتباهي / بتفاخر	scar	ندب (جرح تارك أثر في الوجه مثلاً)
enthusiastic about	متحمس	shiny	لامع
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	sleeves	أكمام (القميص)
came back to haunt me	عاد ليطاردني	coach	حافله (عربة حنطور)
at the request of ..	بناءً علي طلب	wrist	معصم اليد / الرسغ

## Choose the correct answer :-

- I sometimes wear T-shirt with long ..... in winter.  
a. waist      b. thread      c. sleeves      d. buttons
- Mr. Ali spoke ..... to his students while he was saying goodbye. They were near to tears.  
a. carelessly      b. affectionately      c. fortunately      d. boastfully
- He had a long, curved ..... on his right cheek.  
a. scare      b. scar      c. scarcely      d. scarf
- LM My friend is ..... about the project; he speaks about its benefits all the time.  
a. kind      b. worried      c. angry      d. enthusiastic
- LM Mazen used to talk proudly about his possessions. He ..... about how much money he had made.  
a. complained      b. told      c. boasted      d. beat
- LM My father used to speak ..... about his family, showing great respect towards them.  
a. affectionately      b. foolishly      c. foolish      d. affectionate
- LM This research was done ..... the request of the science teacher.  
a. from      b. for      c. in      d. at
- LM The prisoner was given a life ..... for his crimes.  
a. insistence      b. sentence      c. tolerance      d. negligence

## Note the following

raise - raised - raised

يرفع / لا على / يجمع / يربى / يطرح موضوع (بليه مفعول)

rise - rose - risen

يرتفع / تشرق / يستيقظ (لا بليه مفعول)

⇒ raise (statue/ voice/ hand/ flag/ money/ children/ animal / subject / question)

⇒ rise (the sun / prices / smoke / level / rate / standard / plane / dust)

EX: You should raise your hands if you want to answer a question.

EX: What time does the sun rise?

arise - arose - arisen

يحدث / ينشأ (مشاكل)

arouse - aroused - aroused

يثير (التعاطف / المشاعر)



## Collocations and Expressions

مذكر

make sure	يتأكد	take part in = participate in	يشترك (شخص)
make changes	يحدث تغييرات	take place = happen = occur	يحدث (شيء)
make choice	يختار	give / have a priority over	لديه الأولوية على
make progress	يتقدم	get better organised	يصبح أكثر تنظيماً
draw conclusions	يستخلص استنتاجات	set record/alarm	يسجل رقم قياسي / يضبط المنبه
reach a conclusion	يصل إلى نتيجة	to be honest	أصدقك القول / لكي أمين معك
brainstorm ideas	يعصف ذهنياً لاستخراج الأفكار	write down	يكتب / يدون
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	keep a diary	يسجل مذكرات
raise productivity levels	يرفع مستويات الإنتاجية	on the decline	في الهبوط / في الانحدار
do a study	يقوم بدراسة	put the ideas into practice	يطبق الأفكار

## Prepositions

مذكر

tend (to)	يميل لـ	try (out)	يجرب / يختبر
(at) all	اطلاقاً / على الإطلاق	revise (for)	يراجع لـ
(at) least	على الأقل	(for) the rest of ...	لباقى ....
change / turn ... (into)	يتحول ... إلى	carry (on)	يستمر
increase (by) ...%	يزيد بنسبة ... %	go (with)	يتلازم مع / يستمر بـ

راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

look after = care about = take care of	يعتني بـ	look up	يبحث عن معنى بالقاموس
look into	يفحص / يتقصي الحقائق / يدرس	look for = search for	يبحث عن

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was looking ..... my little sister when my mother went shopping.  
a) on                      b) off                      c) up                      d) after
2. When you don't know a new meaning of a word, you should look it ..... in the dictionary..  
a) across                      b) up                      c) back                      d) down

راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة

⇒ اسم + V-ing

time-saving	موفر للوقت	thought-provoking	مثير للتفكير
English-speaking	متحدث باللغة الانجليزية	mouth-watering	مسيل للعاب / لذيذ

- EX: Canada is an English-speaking country. (-)
- EX: The table has mouth-watering dishes. (-)



## (الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد)

### Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

assess	analyse / judge / evaluate	يقيم
decline	reduce/decrease/deteriorate/reject/turn down	ينخفض / ينهار / يرفض
efficiency	effectiveness / productivity / competence	كفاءة (الانتاجية)
procrastinate	delay / postpone / put off	يؤجل / يماطل
productive	inventive / creative / fruitful	منتج / مبدع / مثمر
progress	advance / development	تقدم
raise	increase / bring up / improve / collect	يرفع / يربي / يحسن / يجمع
vary	differ / change / alter / modify	يتنوع / يختلف / يتغير
distract	disturb / interrupt / confuse	يشوش / يشتت الانتباه
drawback	downside / disadvantage / obstacle	عائق / عقبة

### Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

decline	ينخفض / ينهار / يرفض	increase / flourish / accept	يزيد / يزدهر / يقبل
efficiency	كفاءة	inefficiency / incompetence	عدم الكفاءة
productive	منتج / مبدع / مثمر	unproductive / sterile	غير منتج / عقيم
raise	يرفع	lower/reduce/decrease/lessen	يقلل / يخفض
vary	يتنوع / يختلف	agree / match	يتوافق / يتماشي / يتطابق

### Choose the correct answer :-

- Parents do their best to **raise** their children. The verb "raise" in this sentence is a synonym of **bring up**.
- "Resala" is a charitable organisation **raises** money for the needy. The verb "raise" in this sentence is a synonym of **collect**.
- The agency regrets to tell you that your flight to France has been **procrastinated**. "Procrastinated" can be replaced by **postponed**.
- Which prefix is used to get the antonym of "efficiency"? **in**.

### كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي

- celebrate
- celebrated (for) = famous (for)
- celebrity

⇒ (well-known / TV / sports) **celebrity**

EX: celebrated (novel / city / singer / actor)

EX: Egypt is celebrated for its monuments.

يحتفل ب (بدون حرف جر)  
مشهور ب (صفة وبعدها اسم)  
شخصية مشهورة (نجم / علم) (اسم)

to talk back to

يرد بوقاحة

LM Children need to be taught **not to talk back to** their parents.

This means that children .....

- a) weren't allowed to discuss issues.
- c) were asked to stop making noise.

- b) shouldn't be allowed to reply rudely.
- d) weren't allowed to say anything.

## كل يوم راجع مهارة : أنواع الجمل

✓ جملة خبرية (statement sentence).  
وهي جملة اولها (فاعل : subject + فعل : verb + مفعول / فكرة : object / thought + .). وقد تكون :-

simple	I like sports so much	جملة بسيطة (فاعل + فعل + ..) جملة واحدة
compound	You can apply online <u>or</u> in writing.	جملة مركبة (جملتين بينهما رابط : FANBOYS)
complex	<u>Although</u> he is rich, he is unhappy.	جملة معقدة (جملتين بينهما رابط غير FANBOYS)

✓ جملة أمرية (imperative sentence).  
وهي جملة اولها (فعل في المصدر : verb + مفعول / فكرة : object / thought + .). وقد يكون الامر :-

Open the door	أمر مثبت : يبدأ ب (المصدر ثم ...).
Don't (Never) make noise.	أمر منفي / نهى : يبدأ ب (Don't / Never ثم المصدر ...).

✓ جملة استفهامية / السؤال (question / interrogative sentence). وقد يكون السؤال :-

Where do you live?	سؤال اوله (أداة استفهام + فعل مساعد / ناقص + فاعل + فعل + .... + ؟)
Can she drive a car?	سؤال ب (هل) اوله (فعل مساعد / ناقص + فاعل + فعل + .... + ؟)

✓ جملة تعجبية (interjection / exclamation sentence).

✓ جملة شرطية (conditional sentence). وتحتوي علي (أداة الشرط (if) مع جملة الشرط + جواب الشرط).  
EX: If he works hard, he will pass his exams.

## Choose the correct answer :-

1. "How much is this dress?" This is a/an ..... sentence.

- a) interrogative      b) statement      c) conditional      d) imperative

2. "Tidy your room." This is a/an ..... sentence.

- a) interrogative      b) statement      c) conditional      d) imperative

3. What type of sentence structure is shown in the sentence below?

"Before I left for school, I checked my book bag for my homework."

- a) simple      b) compound      c) complex      d) imperative

4. What type of sentence structure is shown in the sentence below?

"My father felt ill, so we took him to the nearest hospital."

- a) simple      b) compound      c) complex      d) imperative



## Grammar

## الجملة النسبية Causative

✓ خلي بالك معناها (ان حد غيرك عملك الشيء او بمعنى اخر حصلت علي الشيء ...). يعني (مش الفاعل اللي عمل الشيء).

✓ نشوف أفعال الإقناع : (يقنع : get / have) بس ركز وراهم فيه (شخص عاقل / شيء غير عاقل).

✓ معلومة بسيطة (العاقل الشخص هنا بيبقي فاعل : معلوم) إنما (الغير عاقل الشيء هنا بيبقي مفعول : مجهول).

⇒ (have) + شخص + (م)

EX: I had a carpenter repair the door.

⇒ (get) + شخص + (to + م)

EX: I got a doctor to examine my father.

⇒ (have / get) + شيء + (P.P)

EX: I had my car repaired yesterday.

EX: The teacher will get the project done tomorrow.

✓ نشوف أفعال الإصرار والاجبار : (يجبر / يصّر : make / force).

⇒ (make) + مفعول + (م)

EX: My mother made me tidy the rooms.

⇒ (force) + مفعول + (to + مصدر)

EX: My mother forced me to tidy the rooms.

✓ نشوف أفعال السماح : (يسمح : let / allow).

⇒ (let) + مفعول + (م)

EX: Father let me go on a trip with my friends.

⇒ (allow) + مفعول + (to + م)

EX: Father allowed me to go a trip with my friends.

✓ نشوف أفعال المنع والاستحالة : (يمنع : stop).

⇒ (stop) + مفعول + (from) + (V-ing)

EX: Teachers stop students from making noise at class.

✓ لو عندك الفعل (persuade / concince) : يقنع) بنشتغل علي قواعد (get / have).

✓ لو عندك الفعل (insist / persist) : يصّر) بنشتغل علي قاعدة (make / force).

✓ لو عندك الفعل (permit) : يسمح) بنشتغل علي قاعدة (let / allow).

✓ لو عندك الفعل (prevent) : يمنع / It's impossible : من المستحيل) بنشتغل علي قاعدة (stop).

EX: Father prevented Omar from coming home late.

Father ..... Omar from doing that.

a) stopped

b) let

c) forced

d) allowed

EX: My father insisted that I should stay home. He ..... me to stay at home.

a) got

b) had

c) forced

d) allowed

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

- ⇒ (have / make / let) + شخص + (م)  
 ⇒ (get / allow / force) + شخص + (to + م)  
 ⇒ (have / get) + شيء + (P.P)

✓ في السببية في (المعلوم : مع الشخص العاقل) : مع الاحداث التي تستغرق فترة طويلة :-

- ✓ get + مصدر + فاعل عاقل (شخص عاقل)  
 ✓ have + مصدر + فاعل عاقل (شخص عاقل)  
 ✓ get / have + V-ing + فاعل عاقل (شخص عاقل)

EX: Fans had all the players play / playing well.

EX: I got a cleaner to clean / cleaning my flat yesterday.

✓ لو لقيت في الجملة ان الشخص عمل الحاجة بنفسه ويتلاقى في الجملة كلمات زي :

- ⇒ by : myself / himself / itself / ourselves / yourself - yourselves / themselves.  
 ⇒ alone / solo / without helping / with no help / on my own.

اختار (معلوم) مش تختار صيغة (السببية) لان انت اللي فعلت الشيء بنفسك انما السببية شخص ثاني عملك الشيء.

EX: Are you going to to have your shirt ironed? - No, I will ..... by myself.

- a) get it ironed      b) iron it      c) ironed it      d) have it ironed

### Make من حالات

- ✓ make + مصدر + (مفعول) (في المعلوم)  
 ✓ (is / are / was / were / be / being / been) make + to + مصدر (في المجهول)  
 EX: Father made Samy stay home. ⇒ معلوم (يجعل)  
 EX: Samy was made to stay home. ⇒ مجهول (جعل / أجبر / أرغم)

- ✓ make + (ضمير منعكس) + P.P

EX: She had to shout to make herself heard.      XX hear : م XX



## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level) ه.م

### Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

- The ..... of the earthquake lay 200 miles out to sea.  
 a. focus ~~ب. assessment~~ ~~ج. efficiency~~ ~~د. productivity~~
- When he started asking me for money, his true intentions came into .....  
 a. reflection ~~ب. performance~~ ~~ج. focus~~ ~~د. significance~~
- I must have had a ..... : I've left my briefcase and all my papers at home!  
 a. focus ~~ب. brainstorm~~ ~~ج. assessment~~ ~~د. strategy~~
- Most of us are more ..... in the morning.  
 a. productive ~~ب. productivity~~ ~~ج. produce~~ ~~د. production~~
- When I arrived, all the preparations for the wedding were still in .....  
 a. progress ~~ب. priority~~ ~~ج. permission~~ ~~د. distraction~~
- Some children find it easier to take aspirin in ..... than to swallow the pills.  
 a. analysis ~~ب. solution~~ ~~ج. drug~~ ~~د. strategy~~
- She had filled a basket with her garden .....  
 a. productive ~~ب. productivity~~ ~~ج. produce~~ ~~د. production~~

### Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

- Father had his children ..... to school today  
 a. to take ~~ب. take~~ ~~ج. taking~~ ~~د. taken~~
- Adel ..... He made it himself.  
 a. has his dinner cooked ~~ب. has his dinner been cooked~~  
 c. cooks his dinner ~~د. cooked his dinner~~
- The manager had all the workers ..... hard.  
 a. to work ~~ب. worked~~ ~~ج. working~~ ~~د. be worked~~
- Recently, she ..... her house painted.  
 a. got ~~ب. had~~ ~~ج. has got~~ ~~د. has had~~
- I don't speak good English, but I can make myself .....  
 a. understood ~~ب. understand~~ ~~ج. to understand~~ ~~د. understanding~~
- LM Which sentence doesn't express permission?  
 a. He allowed me to use his bike. ~~ب. My father let me go out with my friends.~~  
 c. She permitted me to go to the club. ~~د. Teacher made me do the exercise again.~~
- LM My father plans ..... a new villa ..... in our town next year.  
 a. have / built ~~ب. to have / built~~ ~~ج. get / built~~ ~~د. get / building~~
- LM I had my room decorated last week.  
 Which one of the following is structurally correct to give the same meaning?  
 a. I will decorate my room next week. ~~ب. My room will be decorated next week.~~  
 c. My room was decorated last week. ~~د. I had decorated my work last week.~~
- LM She was tired, so she returned ..... early.  
 a. to home ~~ب. home~~ ~~ج. the home~~ ~~د. a home~~



Unit Six

Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:-

1. Don't ..... today's work till tomorrow.  
a) interrupt      b) raise      c) rise      d) procrastinate
2. I have achieved a great ..... in learning English.  
a) progress      b) process      c) conclusion      d) permission
3. Fruit trees must be watered regularly to remain .....  
a) productive      b) individual      c) efficiency      d) recent
4. He was accepted for the job as he was .....  
a) recent      b) impressed      c) individual      d) efficient
5. You can ..... and have a drink.  
a) lead      b) vary      c) switch off      d) distract
6. The doctor said that I would need three ..... of therapy .العلاج  
a) factors      b) findings      c) sessions      d) errors
7. It is clear that this Coronavirus vaccine مصل is .....  
a) effective      b) effectively      c) effectiveness      d) effect
8. The ..... of this Coronavirus vaccine is clear.  
a) effective      b) effectively      c) effectiveness      d) effect
9. The interviewer will ..... the skills and abilities of the applicants for the job then decide who they will get the job.  
a) aim      b) assess      c) hand      d) decline
10. Your productivity would be ..... if you worked to a plan.  
a) delayed      b) procrastinated      c) interrupted      d) improved
11. Prices ..... from one shop to another.  
a) lead      b) vary      c) distract      d) switch off
12. Over population is a ..... for progress.  
a) drawback      b) priority      c) performance      d) alternative
13. The High Dam is a/an ..... work of modern engineering.  
a) active      b) focused      c) massive      d) unpleasant
14. Noise ..... me while studying my lesson.  
a) leads      b) varies      c) distracts      d) switches off
15. The report ..... that there is a link between addiction and crime.  
a) forced      b) stated      c) mentioned      d) b and c
16. The new traffic law ..... to reduce roads accidents.  
a) aims      b) assesses      c) hands      d) declines
17. The ..... of the research on that medicine have surprised us.  
a) factors      b) findings      c) sessions      d) errors
18. The media try its best to ..... the awareness of the dangers of Coronavirus.  
a) interrupt      b) raise      c) rise      d) procrastinate
19. Solar energy is the clean ..... to nonrenewable energy .الطاقة الغير متجددة  
a) drawback      b) priority      c) performance      d) alternative
20. The report gave a detailed ..... of the current economic crisis .أزمة  
a) procrastination      b) analysis      c) productivity      d) level
21. You can't go on the trip without your father's .....  
a) permission      b) concentration      c) increase      d) awareness



22. The application does not respond. It gives a/an ..... message.  
 a) factor                      b) finding                      c) session                      ~~d) error~~
23. Hard work always ..... to success.  
 a) leads                      b) varies                      c) distracts                      d) switches off
24. The learning ..... never stops at any time.  
 a) efficiency                      b) process                      c) conclusion                      d) permission
25. Your school work is ..... better this year. Keep working hard.  
 a) significant                      b) significantly                      c) individual                      d) individually
26. Stress affects your ..... at work. It reduces your productivity.  
 a) drawback                      b) priority                      c) performance                      d) alternative
27. You have to ..... your ideas before writing an essay.  
 a) brainstorm                      b) carry on                      c) suppose                      d) clear off
28. The ..... the state follows to solve the problem of terrorism is successful.  
 a) waste                      b) priority                      c) strategy                      d) task
29. Farmer are ..... They always get up early to fields.  
 a) night owls                      b) early morning                      c) early birds                      d) night sleepers
30. We are ..... a scientific study on the effect of the global warming on crops.  
 a) making                      b) doing                      c) giving                      d) taking
31. Like any invention, the mobile phone has its pros and .....  
 a) coins                      b) cons                      c) cans                      d) pans
32. Hard work leads to success. "Leads to" is a synonym of .....  
 a) swiches off                      b) results in                      c) adapts to                      d) looks into

## Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions

33. You can draw any ..... if you examine the information available.  
 a) progresses                      b) processes                      c) conclusions                      d) permissions
34. The progress you ....., is quite acceptable.  
 a) did                      b) gave                      c) made                      d) had
35. How many tasks have you ..... so far?  
 a) told                      b) reached                      c) brainstormed                      d) done
36. Your time will ..... better organized if you work to a plan.  
 a) get                      b) have                      c) give                      d) do
37. After two hours of discussion, we finally ..... a conclusion.  
 a) reached                      b) did                      c) took                      d) set
38. My best friend ..... a big difference in my life.  
 a) reach                      b) make                      c) take                      d) set
39. .... back, I realize how my father devoted يكرس his life to us.  
 a) Look                      b) Looking                      c) Looked                      d) To look
40. I got up late since I had forgotten to ..... the alarm.  
 a) reach                      b) make                      c) take                      d) set
41. I want to tell me what happened ..... details.  
 a) to                      b) at                      c) in                      d) for
42. I'd like you to come ..... on Friday and have tea with me.  
 a) out                      b) over                      c) into                      d) back
43. .... be honest, this course won't benefit you.  
 a) On                      b) At                      c) Of                      d) To
44. In lectures, I write ..... all the information our professors say.  
 a) with                      b) down                      c) on                      d) of

6

45. Carry ..... hard work to reach your goal.

a) on

b) in

c) over

d) with

46. The employment rate معدل التوظيف has increased ..... 3%.

a) in

b) by

c) for

d) from

47. I hope to take ..... in the final match.

a) place

b) after

c) part

d) out

48. I don't like fish ..... all.

a) from

b) with

c) at

d) for

49. Success goes ..... working hard.

a) up

b) with

c) down

d) out

50. How will you put this plan ..... practice?

a) at

b) into

c) from

d) with

Mahmoud ElNaggar



## Unit Six : Grammar

### تمارين علي الجملة السببية

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'll ..... an engineer to design our new house next week.  
a) have                      b) get                      c) let                      d) make
2. I'll ..... an engineer design our new house next week.  
a) have                      b) get                      c) let                      d) make
3. I'll get our new house ..... next week.  
a) design                      b) to design                      c) designed                      d) designs
4. My father insisted that I should stay home. He ..... me to stay at home.  
a) got                      b) had                      c) forced                      d) allowed
5. Our soldiers stop any enemy ..... any harm to our country.  
a) do                      b) to do                      c) doing                      d) from doing
6. The manager ..... workers to work extra time yesterday.  
a) stopped                      b) had                      c) forced                      d) let
7. The manager ..... workers work extra time yesterday.  
a) got                      b) made                      c) forced                      d) allowed
8. Shereen's housework was not very good so mother had her ..... it again.  
a) do                      b) done                      c) did                      d) to do
9. I got my clothes ..... yesterday.  
a) ironed                      b) irons                      c) ironing                      d) to iron
10. Teachers persuade us to work with a plan. They ..... us to work with a plan.  
a) allowed                      b) got                      c) forced                      d) have
11. Teachers persuade us to work with a plan. They ..... us work with a plan.  
a) allowed                      b) got                      c) forced                      d) have
12. Does she usually have her lunch .....? - No, she prepared it myself.  
a) prepare                      b) prepared                      c) to prepare                      d) preparing
13. We usually have our food ..... as we are busy studying.  
a) make                      b) to make                      c) made                      d) making
14. Don't allow yourself ..... distracted.  
a) get                      b) to get                      c) getting                      d) got
15. Don't let yourself ..... distracted.  
a) get                      b) to get                      c) getting                      d) got
16. He ..... . He did it himself.  
a) has his teeth brushed                      b) has his teeth been brushed  
c) brushed his teeth                      d) got his teeth brushed
17. Father prevented Omar from coming home late. Father ..... Omar from doing that.  
a) stopped                      b) let                      c) forced                      d) allowed
18. Mona went to an oculist to have her eyes ..... last week.  
a) test                      b) testing                      c) tested                      d) testable
19. After we had had our flat ....., we moved to it.  
a) furnished                      b) furnish                      c) to furnish                      d) furnishing

20. The washing machine doesn't work ; I will ..... a technician to check it.

- a) let                      b) have                      c) get                      d) make

21. The study plan makes us ..... productive.

- a) felt                      b) feel                      c) to feel                      d) feeling

22. Your car is making a lot of noise. You should have it .....

- a) service                      b) serviced                      c) to service                      d) being serviced

23. Judge permitted the prisoner to defend himself.

Judge ..... the prisoner defend himself.

- a) made                      b) let                      c) got                      d) allowed

24. The teacher wants to ..... us be on time every day.

- a) has                      b) have                      c) get                      d) gets

25. My friends are staying with me this week because they are having ..... now.

- a) their house paint                      b) painted their house  
c) their house painted                      d) their house to paint

26. The manager had the employees ..... Long to finish the reports.

- a) stay                      b) to stay                      c) stayed                      d) staying

27. The police man made the driver ..... the seatbelt.

- a) fasten                      b) to fasten                      c) fastened                      d) fastening

28. Yesterday, we ..... our car repaired by the mechanic.

- a) get                      b) let                      c) forced                      d) had



## Unit (7): The meaning of success

### Revision Vocabulary

impress	يبهر / يثير الإعجاب	rhetorical	بلاغي
impressive	مبهر / مؤثر / مثير للإعجاب (شيء)	rhetorical question	سؤال بلاغي
impressed	منبهر / متأثر (شخص)	aid	وسيلة / مساعدة / * يساعد
inspire	يلهم / يوحى / يشجع	the Paralympics	الالعاب أولمبية للمعاقين
inspiration	إلهام / وحي / مصدر إلهام	Paralympic games	الالعاب أولمبية للمعاقين
inspiring	مُلهم / مُشجع (شخص / شيء)	Paralympic athlete	رياضي معاق
treat	يعالج / يعامل	athlete	شخص رياضي / لاعب (اسم)
treatment	علاج / معاملة	athletic	رياضي (صفة)
value	قيمة	quality	صفة / سمة
valuable	قيم / ذو قيمة	visual aids	وسائل مرئية (بصرية)
overcome	يتغلب على	trust	يثق / ثقة
syndrome	متلازمة / أعراض مرض ما	elegant = graceful	أنيق / جميل
Down's Syndrome	متلازمة داون	ceremony	إحتفال
face-to-face	وجها لوجه	awards ceremony	حفل توزيع الجوائز
category	تصنيف / فئة / طبقة	paraphrase	يعيد صياغة
combine with	يربط / يجمع / يضم	powerlifting	رياضة رفع الاثقال
administrative	إداري	powerlifter	رياضي رفع الاثقال
councillor	عضو مجلس	success	النجاح
town councillor	عضو مجلس المدينة	signposting	لافتة / دلالة
town hall	مجلس المدينة (مبنى البلدية)	signposting language	اللغة الدلالية
independent	مستقل	attend	يحضر
challenge	تحدي / يتحدى	graduate	يتخرج
career	الحياة العملية (سنوات العمل في وظيفة ما)	a graduate of	خريج
profession	مهنة (تحتاج مؤهل عالي وتدريب)	graduation	التخرج
by profession	بالتدريب	degree	شهادة جامعية
audience	جمهور	certificate	شهادة
talk	خطبة / حديث (كلمة)	pause	يتوقف / توقف (موقت ثم يكمل)
feedback	تغذية رجعية / نتيجة سلوك / رد فعل	profit	ربح / مكسب / يربح / يستفيد
creativity	الابداع / الابتكار	indicate	يبين / يوضح / يشير الي
outdoor activities	أنشطة خارجية	complicated = complex	معقد / صعب
determination	عزيمة / إصرار	opportunities	فرص
short notice	رسالة موجزة	define	يُعرف
achieve	يحقق / ينجز	disabled	معاق
achievable	سهل تحقيقه / ممكن إنجازه	physical disability	إعاقه جسدية
diagram	رسم بياني	polio	مرض شلل الاطفال

equality  
المساواة



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (7)

## Revision Vocabulary

adore	يعشق	jealous	غيور / حسود
annoyed	متضايق / مزعج	property	عقار
call on	يزور	recover	يفيق / يسترد وعيه
client	عميل / زبون	unpleasant	غير سار
dismiss	يطرد من العمل (يفصل)	wealthy	ثري / غني
elegant	أنيق	gatekeeper	حارس عقار (بواب)
gloomy	كئيب	whisper	يهمس

## Choose the correct answer :-

1. Sara looked ..... in her white dress in the wedding.  
 a. guilty      b. gloomy      c. jealous      d. elegant
2. Nada is ..... of her cousin because she has bought an iPhone.  
 a. guilty      b. gloomy      c. jealous      d. elegant
3. LM You needn't ....., no one can hear us.  
 a. whisper      b. recover      c. admire      d. dismiss
4. LM I'm glad that my neighbour ..... and left hospital.  
 a. healed      b. cured      c. recovered      d. discovered

## Note the following

## الروابط الدالة على السبب

- because = as = since + جملة  
 because of = due to = owing to = thanks to + V-ing / اسم (اسم + صفة)  
 being + صفة
- EX: He didn't go to work because he was ill.  
 EX: He didn't go to work because of his illness / being ill.  
 EX: Being ill, he went to the doctor.

لان  
 بسبب  
 لكونه / لأنه

## Collocations and Expressions

give a presentation = make	يقدم عرض تقديمي	make choice	يختار
earn money / profit	يكسب فلوس / يربح	make pause	يتوقف
do powerlifting	يمارس رياضة رفع أثقال	change ... minds about	يغير رأيه بخصوص
do (did) well	يؤدي جيدا	aged = at the age of	يبلغ من العمر / في سن
try (do) ... best	يبدل ما بوسعه	achieve set goals	يحقق الاهداف الموضوعة
perform the role of	يؤدي دور	set a goal for	يضع هدف ل
no good reason why	لا يوجد سبب وجيه ل	the year to come	علي مدار العام القادم
in particular = in general	عموما	have in common	بينهم اشياء مشتركة
was born with Down's Syndrome	وُلد بمتلازمة داون	in terms of = in relation to	من حيث
a source of inspiration	مصدر الإلهام	catch a disease	يُصاب ب مرض
on (my/his/her) own = alone = solo = without any help			بمفردي / وحيدي
profession (teaching / medical / nursing / legal / engineering)			مهنة تحتاج لمؤهل عالي و تدريب
include winning gold at : include + V-ing			يشمل الفوز بالميدالية الذهبية في
the attached R.S.V.P (rezpondez s'il vous plait) = Please Reply form			نموذج (من فضلك أجب) المرفق



## Prepositions

take care (of) = care (about)	يعتني ب	begin (with)	يبدأ ب
dream (of / about)	يحلم ب		
enthusiastic (about)	متحمس ل	work (on) a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع
passionate (about)	متحمس ل	give (out)	يوزع
(at) midday	في منتصف النهار	attach ... (to)	يرفق

## راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

make for	يتجه نحو	make out	يفهم
make up for	يعوض	make up = invent	يبتكر / يولف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You must work hard to make ..... for the lost time.

- a) on                      b) up                      c) down                      d) into

## راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة

⇒ صفة + اسم

world-famous	أشهر عالمية	self-dependent	معتمد على نفسه
smoking-free	ممنوع فيه التدخين	self-centered	أناني

EX: Mo Salah is a world-famous footballer.

## (الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد)

### Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

achieve	reach / realize / fulfil	يحقّق / ينجز
impressive	admirable	مبهر (مثير للاعجاب)
independent	self-reliant	مستقل (معتمد على نفسه)
inspiration	motivation	إلهام (الدافع)
overcome	defeat / beat / conquer	يتغلب على

### Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

achieve	ينجز / يحقق	fail / miss	يفشل
impressive	مبهر	unimpressive / ordinary	غير مبهر / عادي
independent	مستقل	dependent	معتمد (متواكل)
success	النجاح	failure	الفشل

Choose the correct answer :-

1. "You need to overcome your fear of heights."

The verb "overcome" in this context is a synonym of .....

- a. reach                      b. conquer                      c. fail                      d. mess

2. When one is a success, this means they're not .....

- a. a triumph                      b. winners                      c. successful                      d. a failure

3. "He's made an **impressive** achievement."

The adjective "**impressive**" here can be replaced by .....

a. admired

b. admirable

c. ordinary

d. usual

### كل يوم راجع مهارة : (الترقيم)

✓ الترقيم هو مجموعة من الرموز تستخدم في اللغة المكتوبة.

⇒ Punctuation is a system of **symbols** that we use in **written** language.

### **(Capital letters) A,B,C** الحروف الكبيرة (الكابتل)

- الحروف الكبيرة (الكابتل) تكون في بداية الجملة والاسماء العلم (محددة) واللغات والاختصارات.....
- ✓ أول حرف في أول كلمة في أي جملة (سواء جملة أولي أو ثانية بعد ( . / ؟ / ! ) .
- ✓ ضمير الفاعل ( **انا : I** ) في أي مكان في الجملة.
- ✓ أول حرف من اسماء (الأشخاص / الألقاب التي قبل اسم الشخص / المدن / البلاد / القارات / الجنسيات / اللغات).
- ✓ أول حرف من اسماء (البحار / البحيرات / المحيطات / الأنهار / الجبال).
- ✓ أول حرف من اسماء (أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الأعياد).
- ✓ حروف الكلمات المختصرة.
- ✓ أول حرف في جملة (المباشر التي بين علامات التنصيص) : " - - - - - " .
- ✓ أول حرف من اسماء (الكتب السماوية / الكتب / القصص / الروايات / الجرائد / المجلات / الأفلام / المسرحيات).
- ✓ الحروف الأولى من عناوين الكتب و الروايات (ما عدا أدوات النكرة والمعرفة وحروف الجر).

EX: School starts in September. We look forward to it.

EX: the Red Sea / the River Nile / CV / the Prisoner of Zenda.

### **(Full stop / Period / Dot) (.)** النقطة

- ✓ النقطة تكون في نهاية الجملة لتبين ان الجملة انتهت.
- ⇒ A dot at the **end of a sentence** indicating that the sentence is **complete**.
- ✓ في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والامرية والاستفهامية الغير مباشر.
- ⇒ We use **periods** at the end of **statements, imperative and indirect question**.

EX: Mr. Mahmoud is our neighbor. He is very kind man.

EX: Work hard for your exams.

EX: Don't make noise.

### **(Question mark) (?)** علامة الاستفهام

- ✓ هي علامة في نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية (السؤال المباشر مش الغير مباشر).
- ⇒ It indicates an **interrogative clause** and it is put in **direct speech questions**.
- EX: He said, "What are you studying?"
- انما السؤال في الغير مباشر يحول الي خبرية (.) مع (asked / wondered / inquired)
- وكمان وجمل ضمائر الوصل البادئة بضمير الوصل ولكنها ليست سؤال انما هي (مبتدأ وخبر).
- EX: He asked me where I lived.
- EX: What made my father angry was that I came late.

### **(Exclamation mark) (!)** علامة التعجب

- ✓ هي علامة في نهاية الجملة التعجبية (كلمات او جمل تعبر عن مشاعر قوية مثل الدهشة / السعادة / الغضب).
- ⇒ It indicates an **exclamation / interjection clause**. (words or phrases used to **express** a strong feeling such as shock, pain, or pleasure)
- EX: What a beautiful view!



## Grammar

## الصفة و الظرف

- ✓ الصفة : كلمة تصف الاسم زي (tall / short / beautiful).  
الصفة بتجي بعد (be : am / is / are / was / were / feel / look) وكمان بتجي قبل (الاسم).  
EX: The film was interesting. EX: Do you feel tired?

- ✓ الظرف : (صفة + ly) ويصف (الفعل) بتلاقي معاه (فعل اساسي).  
⇒ kindly / happily / carefully  
EX: He runs quickly. ⇒ بسرعة / بشكل سريع / سريعاً

- الظرف بيحي (قبل الفعل وبعد الفعل). (اليتين صح بدون فرق : يجري بسرعة = بسرعة يجري).  
EX: He can carefully drive his car. = He can drive his car carefully.

- الظرف بيحي (قبل الصفة) بمعنى (جدا). والجملة بتكون مبنية علي (am/is/are + الصفة).  
EX: Mazen is really active. EX: He is greatly interested in sports.

- الظرف بيحي (قبل ظرف) بمعنى (جدا). والجملة بتكون مبنية علي (الظرف + فعل اساسي).  
EX: He drives his car really carefully.

- فيه كلمات شاذة بتنفع (صفة) وبتنفع (ظرف) ومش تزود لها (ly) تبقي كما هي زي :-  
(late : متأخر / متأخرا) - (early : مبكر / مبكرا) - (fast : سريع / بسرعة) - (free : مجاني / مجانا)  
(hard : جاد / جاد / صعب / بصعوبة) - (deep : عميق / بعمق) - (daily : يومي / يوميا)

- بتبقي (صفة) لو قبلها (am/is/are) او بعدها (اسم). وبتبقي (ظرف) لو معاه (فعل اساسي).  
EX: He was late for work. ⇒ متأخر : صفة  
EX: He came to work late. ⇒ متأخراً : ظرف

- ودول كمان شواذ برا الدرس بمعاني بعيدة جدا عن درس الظرف :-  
⇒ hardly = not → نادراً / لا (كلمة منفية) بيحي معها (any)  
⇒ freely → بحرية  
⇒ highly / deeply = very → جداً / للغاية  
⇒ lately = recently → مؤخراً / حديثاً

EX: I am too ill to walk. I can hardly walk. "Hardly" is a synonym of very.

EX: Despite being in a zoo, the animals behaved freely in their nature.

- فيه (صفات) كمان غريبة جدا لما تتحول ل (ظرف) بيتغير نهائياً. لازم نحفظهم كويس زي :-  
⇒ good جيد → well جيداً  
⇒ indoor داخلي → indoors داخل المنزل  
⇒ outdoor خارجي → outdoors خارج المنزل  
⇒ everyday يومي → every day كل يوم

EX: He is a good player. ⇒ جيد : صفة EX: He plays well. ⇒ جيداً : ظرف

- لو (صفة) بالصدفة اخرها (ly) : (friendly/fatherly/ugly) : لما تحولهم لظرف استخدم :-  
⇒ (in + a / an + الصفة + way / manner)  
EX: He spoke to me in a fatherly way.

- لو (صفة) بالصدفة اخرها (ly) بس (تصف الاتجاهات) : (northerly) : لما تحولهم لظرف استخدم :-  
 ⇒ (in + a / an + **الصفة** + direction)  
 EX: The wind blows in a northerly direction.

✓ نسال عن (الصفة والظرف) ب (How) :-

⇒ How + (الصفة / الظرف) .....?

EX: How quick are you?

EX: How quickly do you run?

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

✓ خلي بالك الظرف (awfully) بيحي قبل الصفة (sorry).

EX: I am awfully sorry for disturbing you.

✓ قبل الصفات العادية نستخدم الظروف الآتية بمعنى (جدا) :-

⇒ extremely / quite / rather / \*really / very / fairly

✓ قبل الصفات القوية نستخدم الظروف الآتية بمعنى (جدا جدا / للغاية) :-

⇒ totally / absolutely / completely / \*really / utterly / entirely

الصفة العادية	الصفة القوية منها	الصفة العادية	الصفة القوية منها
tired	exhausted	hot	boiling
frightened / scared	terrified	cold	freezing
angry	furious	big	enormous / huge
clever	brilliant	bad	terrible / horrible / awful
tasty	delicious	old	ancient
crowded	packed	small	tiny
happy / pleased	delighted / thrilled	surprised	amazed / astonished
hungry	starving	surprising	amazing / astonishing
interesting	amazing / fascinating	good	fantastic / wonderful / excellent

EX: I'm very tired.

EX: I'm completely exhausted.

✓ التقديم (inversion) : وهو (تقديم المساعد قبل الفاعل مثل السؤال).

ودا بيحصل لو (ظروف النفي) دي لو بدأت الجملة وكلمت أخرى زي :-

⇒ No sooner / hardly / **scarcely** / rarely / barely / never / in vain / seldom / not only / only then / so / such / **few** / **little** / nowhere / neither / nor

EX: Little did he know!



# Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

## Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. She ..... her friend to lunch  
 a. inspired      b. treated <sup>فَعَزَمَ</sup>      c. combined      d. challenged
2. You can often see ..... in the fields in September to harvest crops.  
 a. combines <sup>آلات الحصاد</sup>      b. coaches      c. lifts      d. hindrance
3. Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar always ..... the importance of hard work to reach our goal.  
 a. identifies      b. combines <sup>يُشَدُّ عَلَى</sup>      c. impresses      d. challenges
4. .... of your opinion I am going to Florida on vacation  
 a. Achievable      b. Councillor      c. Independent      d. Inspired
5. Wheel chairs are used by those who are physically .....  
 a. challenged      b. abled      c. sound      d. independent
6. It's important to ..... friends when they are in need.  
 a. insult      b. aid      c. avoid      d. scold
7. I am proud ..... receive this award.  
 a. of      b. in      c. to      d. with
8. **LM** The poor child was born ..... a hearing impairment <sup>ضعف السمع</sup> ; he has had hearing loss since birth.  
 a. of      b. at      c. with      d. in

## Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

9. She was ..... sorry for making that big mistake.  
 a. extremely      b. awfully      c. extreme      d. awful
10. He looked at me ..... when I interrupted him.  
 a. angrily      b. angry      c. anger      d. angered
11. The injured man was taken to hospital .....  
 a. quickly      b. quick      c. quickness      d. quicker
12. How ..... are you? You look healthy.  
 a. well      b. good      c. healthily      d. health
13. How ..... did you answer in exams? You look happy.  
 a. well      b. good      c. healthily      d. health
14. This lake is ten metres .....  
 a. deepen      b. depth      c. deep      d. deeply

## Unit Seven

## Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:-

1. To me, winning the gold medal is a/an ..... I work hard to achieve.  
a. disability      b. presentation      c. lecture      d. challenge
2. Criminals ..... laws, so they are punished by law.  
a. challenge      b. achieve      c. overcome      d. treat
3. He prefers to be ..... of his families. He wants to depend on himself.  
a. inspiring      b. independent      c. impressive      d. administrative
4. Your performance الاداء has ..... us. You're the best.  
a. evaluated      b. combined      c. impressed      d. paraphrased
5. Ronaldo is a/an ..... footballer. Most fans admire him.  
a. average      b. independent      c. impressive      d. administrative
6. I believe that time planning is necessary if one wants to get .....  
a. inspiration      b. success      c. determination      d. challenge
7. The job of a secretary is mainly .....  
a. inspiring      b. independent      c. impressive      d. administrative
8. The great achievements Dr zewail made ..... young scientists.  
a. evaluate      b. combine      c. summarise      d. inspire
9. Nature is ..... for poets. It is the source of the ideas for most poems.  
a. inspiring      b. independent      c. impressive      d. administrative
10. As a writer, Naguib Mahfouz found ..... for his novels in the Cairo society around him.  
a. achievement      b. success      c. inspiration      d. challenge
11. I began ..... at 14, and at 20 I became professional.  
a. value      b. powerlifting      c. polio      d. Syndrome
12. We've ..... significant success so far.  
a. challenged      b. achieved      c. overcame      d. treated
13. Winning the gold medal in the Olympics is the best ..... I've made.  
a. achievement      b. syndrome      c. inspiration      d. challenge
14. The refugees اللاجئين need urgent .....  
a. audience      b. diagram      c. feedback      d. aid
15. Parents of students are invited to the graduation .....  
a. creativity      b. certificate      c. ceremony      d. category
16. Most of my friends ..... my brother's wedding.  
a. attended      b. indicated      c. organised      d. paused
17. Videos and diagrams are all ..... aids teachers now use.  
a. rhetorical      b. visual      c. elegant      d. complicated
18. After ....., young men join the army for military service.  
a. picnic      b. talk      c. graduate      d. graduation
19. A ..... joins the army for military service.  
a. picnic      b. talk      c. graduate      d. graduation



20. I got my university ..... in 1998.  
**a. technique**                      **b. profit**                      **c. short notice**                      **d. degree**
21. It was not easy to give a presentation to a/an ..... I did not know for the first time.  
**a. audience**                      **b. diagram**                      **c. feedback**                      **d. aid**
22. I look forward to getting my General Secondary Education ..... this year.  
**a. Creativity**                      **b. Certificate**                      **c. Ceremony**                      **d. Category**
23. During your presentation, you may need to ..... for a few seconds after saying something that you want the audience to remember.  
**a. attend**                      **b. indicate**                      **c. organise**                      **d. pause**
24. Mr Elnaggar was dressed on a/an ..... black suit بدلة.  
**a. rhetorical**                      **b. visual**                      **c. elegant**                      **d. complicated**
25. Giving a ..... to a foreign audience needs good preparation.  
**a. picnic**                      **b. talk**                      **c. graduate**                      **d. graduation**
26. She made much ..... from selling clothes.  
**a. technique**                      **b. profit**                      **c. short notice**                      **d. degree**
27. Sometimes, it is difficult to provide ..... without making someone angry.  
**a. audience**                      **b. diagram**                      **c. feedback**                      **d. aid**
28. .... makes you different and unique.  
**a. Creativity**                      **b. Certificate**                      **c. Ceremony**                      **d. Category**
29. Your bad marks in physics ..... that you need to work harder to be better at it.  
**a. attends**                      **b. indicates**                      **c. organises**                      **d. pauses**
30. Using ..... language in a presentation makes it difficult for your audience to get your points easily.  
**a. rhetorical**                      **b. visual**                      **c. elegant**                      **d. complicated**
31. I've gone on a ..... with my close friends.  
**a. picnic**                      **b. talk**                      **c. graduate**                      **d. graduation**
32. It's a bit ..... : can you come tomorrow?  
**a. technique**                      **b. profit**                      **c. short notice**                      **d. degree**
33. A/An ..... is one of the visuals a presenter can use.  
**a. audience**                      **b. diagram**                      **c. feedback**                      **d. aid**
34. I sent my complaint شكوي to the local .....  
**a. quote**                      **b. disability**                      **c. role model**                      **d. councilor**
35. We need to ..... the new system to see how much we've achieved.  
**a. evaluate**                      **b. combine**                      **c. impress**                      **d. inspire**
36. I have a cousin who suffers from Down's .....  
**a. value**                      **b. powerlifting**                      **c. syndrome**                      **d. councilor**
37. I was careful to attend Professor El naggar's .....  
**a. votes**                      **b. averages**                      **c. lectures**                      **d. Paralympics**
38. My father is ..... about football. He never misses watching a match.  
**a. enthusiastic**                      **b. significant**                      **c. male**                      **d. female**
39. I look up to my father. He is my .....  
**a. quote**                      **b. disability**                      **c. role model**                      **d. modal**

40. He has been suffering from ..... since he was a baby.

- a. value      b. powerlifting      c. polio      d. childhood

**Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions**

41. I have to work hard to achieve the goals I've ..... for myself.

- a. caught      b. taken      c. achieved      d. set

42. The qualities we ..... in common make us a matching couple.

- a. change      b. give      c. have      d. win

43. Be careful, otherwise, you'll ..... diseases.

- a. catch      b. win      c. achieve      d. set

44. Fortunately, I ..... well in the final exam.

- a. did      b. had      c. treated      d. made

45. I am to ..... a presentation at the next meeting.

- a. change      b. give      c. set      d. win

46. Which of the following is used to mean "without help"?

- a. of their own      b. on their own  
c. helplessly      d. on the other hand

47. Many people can combine family care ..... success at work.

- a. from      b. at      c. with      d. about

48. I find no good reason ..... she has refused to marry him.

- a. for      b. of      c. why      d. what

49. My grandmother died last year, ..... ninety-two.

- a. aged      b. at the age of      c. when she is      d. a & b

50. The two sisters have several things ..... common.

- a. at      b. in      c. about      d. from

51. I need to look at the notes I ..... at the meeting.

- a. did      b. made      c. organised      d. told

52. We agreed to meet ..... midday.

- a. on      b. of      c. with      d. at

53. Each child has the right ..... good education.

- a. for      b. about      c. to      d. off

54. The applicants' personal photos are attached ..... their application forms.

- a. at      b. up      c. to      d. of

55. I am going to join university .....

- a. in the past      b. last year      c. in 2020      d. in the year to come



## Unit Seven : Grammar

### تمارين علي الصفة والظرف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is ..... at English.  
a) good                      b) well                      c) badly                      d) more badly
2. She speaks English.....  
a) good                      b) well                      c) bad                      d) more good
3. I had a/an ..... tasty meal at restaurant yesterday.  
a) completely              b) absolutely              c) very                      d) totally
4. The lunch we had at our uncle's was ..... delicious.  
a) very                      b) absolutely              c) a bit                      d) a little
5. Our teachers speak with us .....  
a) in a friendly way      b) friend                      c) a friendly              d) friends
6. Because we didn't have much time, so we had to run .....  
a) quick                      b) quickly                      c) very quick              d) more quick
7. I've got a/an ..... awful headache.  
a) absolutely              b) very                      c) a little                      d) a bit
8. I've got a/an ..... bad headache.  
a) completely              b) absolutely              c) extremely                      d) totally
9. I am ..... sorry for forgetting your camera at home.  
a) extremely              b) awfully                      c) extreme                      d) awful
10. He is a fast runner. "fast" here is a/an .....  
a) verb                      b) noun                      c) adjective                      d) adverb
11. He runs fast. "fast" here is a/an .....  
a) verb                      b) noun                      c) adjective                      d) adverb
12. The old lady ..... described the thief who stole her bag.  
a) accurately              b) accurate                      c) accurateness              d) accrete
13. Ahmed is polite, but he was surprisingly ..... to Yasser last night.  
a) silly                      b) sillyly                      c) in silly way              d) in a silly way
14. Ahmed is polite, but he spoke surprisingly ..... to Yasser last night.  
a) silly                      b) sillyly                      c) in silly way              d) in a silly way
15. Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar works ..... to make his students the best.  
a) hardship                      b) hardly                      c) hard                      d) too hardly
16. He is highly keen on his study. "highly" is a synonym of .....  
a) very                      b) not                      c) recently                      d) lately
17. Prices have risen ..... these days.  
a) sharp                      b) sharpen                      c) sharply                      d) sharpness
18. The hotel has a ..... swimming pool.  
a) indoor                      b) indoors                      c) outdoors                      d) badly
19. It rained all day so we had to stay .....  
a) indoor                      b) indoors                      c) outdoor                      d) outdoors
20. There is wind from Europe blowing .....  
a) north                      b) northern                      c) in a northerly direction              d) northerly



21. Mazen was ..... **pleased** with his marks in exams.  
a) completely    b) absolutely    c) terribly    d) quite
22. That's a/an ..... wonderful picture.  
a) fairly    b) hardly    c) absolutely    d) bit
23. Ali is late for school. "**Late**" here is a synonym of .....  
a) mainly    b) not early    c) recently    d) very
24. I haven't met Ali lately. "**Lately**" here is a synonym of .....  
a) mainly    b) not early    c) recently    d) very
25. On the journey, we could **act** ..... with my friends.  
a) free    b) freedom    c) freeing    d) freely
26. When the secretary **arrived** ....., the manager criticized her.  
a) late    b) lately    c) latent    d) latest
27. The ocean bottom is very deep. "**Deep**" here is a synonym of .....  
a) very little    b) very    c) a long way down    d) not
28. He is deeply interested in sports. "**Deeply**" here is a synonym of .....  
a) very little    b) very    c) a long way down    d) not
29. Whenever we meet him, he behaves.....  
a) kindly    b) kind    c) kinder    d) kindest
30. ...., he received the news.  
a) surprise    b) surprised    c) surprising    d) surprisingly
31. Man is always busy with his ..... life.  
a) everyday    b) every day    c) every where    d) a day
32. The weather in some African countries is ..... boiling in summer.  
a) fairly    b) hardly    c) absolutely    d) bit
33. The match conference was run very.....  
a) bad    b) worse    c) worst    d) badly
34. How ..... are you in English? You look so good.  
a) fluent    b) fluently    c) fluency    d) fluent
35. How ..... do you speak English? You look so good.  
a) well    b) good    c) healthily    d) health
36. She feels ..... hungry. She hasn't eaten for 12 hours.  
a) really    b) fantastic    c) extreme    d) terrible
37. He looked ..... when he lost the race.  
a) angrily    b) angry    c) anger    d) angered
38. He looked at me ..... when I interrupted his speech.  
a) angrily    b) angry    c) anger    d) angered
39. His performance on the piano was ..... fantastic.  
a) very    b) totally    c) quite    d) rather
40. Marawan was completely ..... as someone has won the prize.  
a) pleased    b) surprised    c) delighted    d) happy
41. Marawan was extremely ..... as someone has won the prize.  
a) amazed    b) thrilled    c) delighted    d) happy
42. You have to be ..... strong to be good at powerlifting.  
a) extremely    b) fantastic    c) extreme    d) terrible



## Unit (8): Work experience

### Revision Vocabulary

<b>candidate</b>	مرشح (وظيفة / منصب / انتخابات)	<b>basic</b>	اساسي
<b>curriculum vitae (CV)</b>	سيرة ذاتية	<b>editor</b>	محرر / رئيس تحرير (جريدة / برنامج)
<b>human beings</b>	البشر	<b>editorial</b>	مقال افتتاحي / تحريري (يكتبه رئيس التحرير)
<b>human resources (HR)</b>	قسم الموارد البشرية	<b>editorial department</b>	قسم التحرير
<b>intern</b>	متدرب مهني	<b>interview</b>	حوار / مقابلة
<b>internship</b>	فترة التدريب المهني / * الزمالة	<b>interviewer</b>	المحاور (المذيع) من يجري المقابلة
<b>full-time job</b>	وظيفة بدوام كامل	<b>interviewee</b>	المتحاور (الضيف): من يجري معه المقابلة
<b>part-time job</b>	وظيفة بدوام جزئي (لبعض الوقت)	<b>publish</b>	ينشر (يطبع)
<b>colossal</b>	ضخم / جسيم / هائل	<b>publisher</b>	الناشر / دار الطباعة (شخص / شركة)
<b>disaster = calamity</b>	كارثة	<b>feedback</b>	تغذية راجية / ملاحظات / نتيجة السلوك
<b>colossal calamities</b>	كوارث جسيمة	<b>nationality</b>	جنسية
<b>in charge</b>	المسئول (المكلف)	<b>multinational</b>	متعدد الجنسيات (شركة)
<b>in charge of = responsible for</b>	مسئول عن	<b>long-term</b>	طويل المدى / بعيد المدى
<b>charge with</b>	* متهم	<b>motivate</b>	يحفز / يشجع
<b>career</b>	الحياة العملية والمهنية	<b>motivated</b>	متحفز / متشجع
<b>measure</b>	يقيس	<b>trifling</b>	تافه
<b>measures = precedures</b>	إجراءات / تدابير / معايير	<b>residential</b>	سكني
<b>apply for</b>	يتقدم بطلب (وظيفة) / * يطبق	<b>residential streets</b>	شوارع سكنية
<b>applicant</b>	متقدم لوظيفة	<b>organise</b>	ينظم
<b>appropriate</b>	ملائم / مناسب	<b>organisational</b>	تنظيمي / مؤسسي
<b>appropriately</b>	بالشكل المناسب	<b>pandemic</b>	جائحة (مرض)
<b>follow-up</b>	متابعة / تكميل / تكميلي	<b>grade</b>	درجة (امتحان) / صف (دراسي)
<b>follow-up questions</b>	أسئلة المتابعة	<b>digital marketing</b>	التسويق الرقمي (عن طريق النت)
<b>permanent</b>	دائم	<b>impress</b>	يؤثر علي / يبهز
<b>temporary</b>	مؤقت	<b>impression</b>	إنطباع / تأثير / رأي
<b>advanced-level</b>	ذات مستوي متقدم	<b>impressed by</b>	منبهز
<b>start-up idea</b>	فكرة مبدئية	<b>expense</b>	نفقة / تكلفة
<b>award</b>	بمنح جائزة رسمية / جائزة رسمية	<b>living expenses</b>	تكاليف المعيشة
<b>reward</b>	يكافئ / مكافأة مالية	<b>overlook</b>	يطل علي / * يتغاضي عن
<b>charity</b>	جمعية خيرية	<b>persuade</b>	يقنع
<b>cover</b>	يغطي (خبر)	<b>profile</b>	وضع / ملف شخصي
<b>currently</b>	حاليا	<b>protect</b>	يحمي / يقي
<b>dress</b>	يرتدي / فستان	<b>protective</b>	واقفي / وقائي
<b>excellent</b>	ممتاز	<b>role-play</b>	يمثل دور
<b>excellence</b>	التميز / الامتياز	<b>seatbelt</b>	حزام الامان
<b>foreign</b>	أجنبي	<b>several</b>	عديد / كثير
<b>graduate</b>	يتخرج / خريج	<b>smartly</b>	بشكل أنيق
<b>colleague</b>	زميل (العمل)	<b>sort</b>	نوع
<b>journalism</b>	الصحافة	<b>team player</b>	شخص يجيد العمل في فريق
<b>landing</b>	هبوط (طائرة)	<b>topic</b>	موضوع
<b>manage</b>	يدير / يتحكم	<b>volunteer</b>	يتطوع / متطوع
<b>management</b>	إدارة	<b>include</b>	يشمل / يتضمن
<b>helmet</b>	خوذة	<b>youth</b>	الشباب
<b>experience</b>	خبرة	<b>news stories</b>	قصص إخبارية



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (8)

## Revision Vocabulary

admirer	معجب / مفرم	extravagant	مصرف / مبذر
apart from	بإستثناء •	fortune	حظ / ثروة
arrogant	مغرور / متغطرس	pay off	يسدد دين
astonished	مذهول / مندهش	rough	خشن
benefactor	فاعل خير	sigh	يتنهد
nod	يهز رأسه (موافق)	dark	مظلم / كنيب
shake	يهز رأسه (رافض)	funeral	جنازة
with a cold heart	بقلب بارد	say goodbye to = see ... off	يودع
except for	فيما عدا	debts	ديون

## Choose the correct answer :-

- To ..... is to breathe in and out making a loud sound.  
a. inhabit      b. sign      c. sigh      d. hinder
- Being ..... makes him fall in debt.  
a. arrogant      b. extravagant      c. elegant      d. gloomy
- LM He was imprisoned because he couldn't ..... off his debt on time.  
a. take      b. go      c. see      d. pay
- LM The sisters sobbed uncontrollably during their father's .....  
a. funeral      b. festival      c. party      d. birth
- LM He is very .....; he behaves in an unpleasant way and thinks that he is better than everyone else.  
a. modest      b. arrogant      c. simple      d. cruel

## Note the following

work

+ PLUS a work → works

العمل (اسم لا معدود مفرد)  
أعمال (هندسية / فنية / أدبية)

EX: Abu Simbel, the Pyramids and the Sphinx are amazing works.

EX: The Sphinx is a great / an amazing ..... (work / a work / works)

## Expressions

give feedback on	يقدم بعض الملاحظات عن	do internship	يقضي فترة تدريب مهني
give a talk	يلقي خطبة	do action	يقوم بإجراء
give impression = make	يترك إطباع لدي	do tasks	يقوم بالمهام
apply in writing / person	يتقدم بطلب كتابي / شخصيا	go (went) wrong	يتعطل
work part-time	يعمل بدوام جزئي	play the violin	يعزف علي الكمان
cover news stories	يقوم بتغطية الاخبار	set goals	يضع لنفسه أهداف
build/ design/ create website	يصمم موقع إلكتروني	stay in contact with	يبقي علي اتصال ب
call the fire brigade	يتصل ب لواء / فرقة الاطفاء	role-play an interview	يمثل أدوار مقابلة شخصية
receive/win a prize for excellence	يفوز بجائزة التميز	keep going	يستمر في التقدم
take on (a project / work / management / responsibility / task)			يتولي مسئولية
apply for (job / visa / nationality / citizenship / loan / college / internship)			يتقدم ل
interviewer : the person who asks the questions in an interview.			المحاور (المنيع)
interviewee : the person who is asked the questions in an interview.			المتحاور (الضيف)



## Prepositions

popular (with)	محبوب من / لدي	stop (from)=refrain (from)	يمنع من / يتوقف عن
impress .... (with)	يبهر .... ب	work (on)	يعمل علي (تطوير / إنهاء)
deal (with)	يتعامل مع	trace ... (to)	ينسب الي / يرجع الي
take (over)	يتولي المسؤولية / يسيطر علي	take (off)	تطلع / تطلع (الطائرة)
come (up)	يظهر	bring (back)	يستعيد

### راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

put away	يرتب	put out	يطفىء (نور / نار)
put on = wear	يرتدي	put off = postpone = delay	يؤجل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Never put ..... What can be done today till tomorrow.

a) on b) off c) up d) down

2. Before leaving home, put ..... unnecessary lights.

a) across b) up c) out d) down

### راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة

اسم + اسم =>

full-time	بدوام كامل	bullet-proof	ضد الرصاص
part-time	جزء من الوقت	water-proof	ضد الماء

EX: He found a part-time job.

EX: in military operation, officers wear bullet-proof suits. (-) (a) مع الجمع مفيش

### (الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد)

Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

disaster	calamity / catastrophe	كارثة / مصيبة
colossal	very large / massive / gigantic	جسيم / ضخم / هائل

Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

colossal	جسيم / ضخم / هائل	tiny / minute / little	دقيق / ضئيل الحجم
trifling	تافه	important / valuable	هام / ذو قيمة

Choose the correct answer :-

1. "I want to know who is in charge here." "In charge" can be replaced by .....

a. colossal b. fined c. full d. responsible

### كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي

a long + اسم : a long distance

along : along the Nile

based (in)

based (on)

طويل (صفة بعدها اسم)

بطول / علي طول / بامتداد / بمحاذاة (ظرف)

مقره في (مكانه في)

مبنى علي / قائم علي

## كل يوم راجع مهارة : (التقديم)

## علامات التنصيص (Quotation mark) " " / ' '

✓ نستخدمها (علامات التنصيص / الفاصلة المقلوقة) مع جمل الكلام المباشر والاقتباس.

⇒ Quotation mark is also known as **inverted commas**, it indicates **direct speech** and **extracted words**.

EX: I said to Mazen, "I have bought a new car recently."

## الفاصلة العليا (الابستروف) (apostrophe) ' '

✓ نستخدمها للاختصارات (حذف حروف) والملكية.

⇒ It is used for indicating a **\*contraction** (omitted letters) and **possession**.

EX: 'm (am) / 'll (will) / Maha's book / Fares' pen = Fares's pen / girls' school

✓ ومشي تنسي (s') لو الكلمة مش اخرها (s). انما (s') لو الكلمة اخرها (s) مهما كانت.

EX: one day's time / two years' time .

✓ عند (جمع الحرف المكرر) في كلمة ما وعند (جمع الاعداد).

EX: There are two m's in "Mahmoud".

EX: 100's of years (hundreds of years)

\*\* معلومة ليك : (جمع السنين) ب (s) وحرف ال (s) هنا يعني (عقد : ١٠ سنوات).

EX: Our school was built in the late of 1980s. ⇒ 1980 to 1989.

## النقطتين (colon) :

✓ قبل (الامثلة و القوائم : a list of items and examples).

EX: I need to buy : trousers, a shirt, black shoes and some other things.

✓ تعبر عن (النسبة : proportion) : (عدد : عدد).

EX: The ratio of success to failure is 2 : 1.

✓ لفصل الدقائق عن الساعات عند (إخبار الوقت).

⇒ It is used to **tell time** (to **separate hours** from **minutes**.) EX: It is 4 : 30.

✓ قبل الجملة الثانية التي تعتبر تفسير للجملة الاولى لتوضح وتشرح ما تم ذكره في الجملة الاولى وكأنها = is / is that.

EX: He has one problem : he talks a lot.

## الفاصلة المنقوطة (semi-colon) ;

✓ عند ربط جملتين لجعلهم جملة واحدة (دون استخدام الرابط يعني الرابط محذوف) ويشكل كبير ويكون الرابط المحذوف (ولكن : and / و : but).

او روابط أخرى زي : (because = since = for / although / yet / while / unless / or / nor).

EX: Samira is good at English; her brother is good at Arabic. ⇒ (; = but)

✓ بين الجمل المرتبطة ب (تعبير انتقالي) زي :-

⇒ moreover / nevertheless / however / otherwise / therefore / then / finally / thus / also / indeed / consequently / accordingly.

✓ بس خلي بالك : الكلمات دي قبلها (الفاصلة المنقوطة) وبعدها (كوما).

EX: It was raining all day yesterday; consequently, the roads are wet.

✓ لفصل عناصر وتفصيل داخل قائمة بها (كوما) :-

EX: I visited France; Paris, England; London and Japan; Tokyo.



open book

معروف: إن كلمة "all" تأخذ جمع - لا عدد - بمعنى "لكل" ولكن معنى "all" يبقى معانها طول - طوال  
شعر إلى آخره كله مع كل الكلمات دي

all (day - night - morning - week - month - year - life - the time)

→ each of + جمع + فعل مفرد + ...

معروف: إن each تأخذ F

→ every one of + جمع + ...

أو ممكن "every" تأخذ بشرط تبقى everyone of

على أלה تضع قسيمات التجزئة "all" بعد ضائر الفاعل

مثلاً (all of) قبل الجمع / ضائر المفعول المجمع "do them" - هذا

we all = All of us

الظروف دى بتستخدم مع every من each وكمان ينفع all

heavily  
almost  
practically  
without exception

يكون على الفعل مع التيسير

A number of + جمع + فعل جمع  
the number of + جمع + فعل مفرد  
one of + جمع + فعل مفرد

→ all + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد is, was, has, are, were, have, had  
 + اسم مفعول جمع + فعل جمع

• فعل جمع + جمع + الاسم المفرد

→ every + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد  
each

• فعل مفرد + مفرد + الاسم المفرد  
 وهي لا تستخدم معها "a" لأنها ليست مفرد ذلك الجمع  
 (5) لأنها ليست جمع

→ every + مفعول زمني night, day, week, month, year

في الأسماء المفردة: طعام - سواحل - مواد جمع - ساعات  
 سواد - راسية - ألوان - الألعاب الرياضية - الأنشطة  
 والنظواهر الطبيعية والوجبات والرسائل المصورة  
 الأسماء المفعولة

→ every تستخدم مع هذه الظروف وليس each  
 nearly - almost - Practically - without exception

many + جمع + فعل مفرد  
 much + اسم مفعول كمي + فعل مفرد  
 a lot of + جمع + فعل مفرد  
 \* a lot of + lots of + plenty of

تستخدم each عندما نتحدث عن شخصين - شيئين لأنها  
 تعبر اثنين أو أكثر. معناها كل على حدة - كل واحد لوحده  
each hand - each other - each of them

\* a lot  
 \* Few قليل العدد ولا يمكن  
 \* Little قليل الكمية ولا يمكن  
 \* a little بعض

the whole (day - time - morning - summer - weekend - book - life)  
 \* the whole هي الوحيدة التي تقبل the

\* وإذا شئت الكلمات في اختار  
 a few - a little  
 only - just - quite

all (None of) X  
 \* but في نفس الجملة لكل بغيره  
 at None of

Some + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد  
 any + اسم مفرد + فعل مفرد  
 Some + اسم جمع + فعل جمع  
 any + اسم جمع + فعل جمع

• فعل مفرد + جمع + None of each of  
 • every ليس مفيد

hardly any  
 almost not no  
 hardly - scarcely - rarely  
 seldom - never - without - prevent



## Grammar

## الأنواع في صيغة الجنبى المجهول

• الزمن في (المجهول) : ضم الحرف الاول للفعل (يقرأ / كتب / لقد ترجمت).

• المضارع البسيط (مجهول) : is / are + P.P :

⇒ always / sometimes / usually / often / every day, on Sunday, once - twice / حقيقة

EX: English is written from left to right. ⇒ حقيقة : مضارع بسيط (تكتب)

• الماضي بسيط (مجهول) : was / were + P.P :

⇒ yesterday / last .. / ago / in the past / اكتشافات / كتابات لمؤلف / تاريخ قديم / اختراع

EX: My car was repaired at the mechanics yesterday. ⇒ ماضي بسيط (صلحت)

• المضارع المستمر (مجهول) : am / is / are + being + P.P :

⇒ now / at the moment / currently / today / look! / listen!

EX: A new school is being built in our village at the moment. ⇒ مضارع مستمر (تبنى)

EX: My favourite program is being shown now. ⇒ مضارع مستمر (يعرض)

• الماضي المستمر (مجهول) : was / were + being + P.P :

⇒ while ماضي بسيط (مستمر) + ماضي مستمر

⇒ when ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط Yesterday (اي توقيت قبل / بعد)

EX: While I was studying, lunch was being cooked. ⇒ ماضي مستمر (كان يطبخ)

• المضارع التام (مجهول) : has / have + been + P.P :

⇒ just / already / yet / lately / recently / since / for / so far / up till now / عدد

EX: Our house has been painted recently. ⇒ مضارع تام (يُدهن : يتم دهانه)

• الماضي التام (مجهول) : had + been + P.P :

⇒ after/as soon as ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام

⇒ before/by the time ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط

EX: After the emails had been written, I sent them. ⇒ ماضي تام (كُتبت)

EX: Before she went shopping, house work had been done. ⇒ ماضي تام (فُعلت)

• المستقبل البسيط : (will + مصدر)

• المستقبل البسيط (مجهول) : will + be + P.P :

⇒ tomorrow/next/future/in the coming years/probably/sooner or later/I think / تاريخ جاي

EX: New projects will be carried out in the coming years. ⇒ مستقبل بسيط (سوف تُنفذ)

need + to ؟

needn't + ✕

• لو عندك فعل (مصدر) جاي بعد (to) او جاي من ضمن حالات المصدر.

والفعل المصدر دا لو مجهول يعني عليه ضم حوله ل (to be / be + P.P) والافعال دي بتيجي بعد :-

⇒ will / can / should / must / has to / have to need to / \*would (d) like to

is going to / allow .. to / needn't / is supposed to / had better / let ⇒ + be + P.P

EX: This room needs to be cleaned. ⇒ مصدر : (تحتاج ان تنظف)

Would rather + ؟



• لو عندك فعل (V-ing) والفعل دا مجهول عليه ضم حوله ل (being + P.P) والأفعال دي بتيجي بعد :-

⇒ like / love / hate / avoid / insist on / deny / admit / is used to / remember / look forward to / worth / before - after بدون فاعل ⇒ + being + P.P

EX: I don't like being laughed at. ⇒ (لا أحب ان يُسخر مني) : V-ing

• لو عندك فعل (Having) والفعل اللي بعدها مجهول عليه ضم حوله ل (been + P.P) لان في الاصل بييجي وراها :- (P.P)

EX: Having been arrested, the criminal was taken to prison.

⇒ (بعد ان قبض : تم القبض عليه) : Having + P.P

• معروف ان الفعل (make) في المعلوم بييجي وراه (مفعول : شخص) اختار (مصدر).

بس لما يتحول للمجهول بالشكل دا (is, are, was, were, being, been, be + made) لا اختار بقي (مصدر + to).

EX: Father made Samy stay home. ⇒ معلوم (يجعل)

EX: Samy was made to stay home. ⇒ مجهول (جعل / أجبر / أرغم)

• أفعال اللي تحت دي اسمها أفعال (لازمة) لا تتحول ل (المجهول) زي :-

⇒ (collapse / happen=arise / rain / leave / rise / worry / take off / break down / go)

EX: The building collapsed yesterday.

### ملاحظة هامة جدا

⇒ (It) + ..... + (that) + أي نوع مجهول مهما كان + (It)

⇒ (It) + مصدر + (مجهول) + أي فاعل غير (في حالة المضارع والمستقبل)

⇒ (It) + to have + P.P + (مجهول) + أي فاعل غير (في حالة الماضي)

EX: It is said that smoking is bad for health.

EX: Smoking is said to be bad for health.

⇒ حقيقة : مضارع بسيط

EX: He (is known to have beaten) five opponents last year. ⇒ ماضي بسيط

• النقطة اللي فوق دي مهمة جدا : لو جملة بدأت ب (It) وكمان بعدها لقيت (that) إختار ما بينهم (مجهول) من أي نوع. ولو بدأت الجملة بأي فاعل غير (It) وبعدها لقيت (مجهول) هتختار حاجة من اثنين اما (مصدر + to) في حالة المضارع أو تلاقي (to have + P.P) في حالة الماضي.

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

✓ الأفعال اللي تحت دي بييجي وراها (مفعول) ثم (مصدر) في (المعلوم). إنما لما يتحولوا للمجهول بياخدو (مصدر + to).

⇒ make / see / hear / watch / notice / help + مفعول + مصدر

⇒ is, are, was, were, be, being, been + أي تصريف تالت من الأفعال دي

EX: I saw a boy cross the street.

EX: A boy was seen to cross the street.

✓ ممكن بعد (when / if) تلاقي (P.P). دي اصلها جملة مبنية للمجهول وبتيجي مع الحالة (الصفريّة) بشكل كبير.

EX: When / If heated, water turns into vapour.

= When / If it is heated, water turns into vapour.

⇒ after / before / while + V-ing

(بدون فاعل في المعلوم)

⇒ after / before / while + being + P.P

(بدون فاعل في المجهول)

⇒ having + P.P

(في المعلوم)

⇒ having + been + P.P

(في المجهول)

EX: After being painted, the flat was furnished.

EX: Having been painted, the flat was furnished.



# Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

## Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. You can apply ..... person or online.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) at                      d) for
2. .... the cream to the infected area twice a day.  
a) Qualify                      b) Apply                      c) Create                      d) Carry out
3. We must ..... new technology to education to improve it.  
a) measure                      b) intern                      c) apply                      d) motivate
4. I installed a new ..... on my phone to help me to translate new words.  
a) department                      b) qualification                      c) application                      d) statement
5. The bulldozers الجرافات ..... the land before the road is built.  
a) degree                      b) mark                      c) grade                      d) score
6. My brother has made the ..... in the world of business.  
a) qualification                      b) grade                      c) hobbies                      d) application
7. I need to ..... my mobile phone.  
a) intern                      b) apply                      c) charge                      d) act
8. Tom is ..... with robbery.  
a) responsible                      b) committed                      c) charged                      d) interned
9. The Russian forces ..... Ukrain soldiers during the war between them.  
a) interned                      b) applied                      c) charged                      d) paved

## Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

11. He was seen ..... down the stairs.  
a) run                      b) ran                      c) to run                      d) to running
12. I object ..... in this bad way.  
a) to treat                      b) to be treated                      c) to treating                      d) to being treated
13. Heat ..... from the sun.  
a) come                      b) comes                      c) is come                      d) was come
14. Grandpa is very ill. He needs ..... to hospital.  
a) to take                      b) to be taken                      c) taking                      d) b and c
15. When ....., the meat tastes delicious.  
a) cooks                      b) cooked                      c) cooking                      d) cook
16. He doesn't make noise in the class for the fear of .....  
a) punishing                      b) been punished                      c) be punished                      d) being punished
17. Your report ..... with interest.  
a) are read                      b) is read                      c) reads                      d) b and c
18. The new edition ..... at bookshops now.  
a) are sold                      b) sells                      c) is sold                      d) b and c
19. Yehia Haqqi ..... as the poineer of modern short story.  
a) still remembers                      b) is still remembering  
c) is still remembered                      d) is still being remembered
20. Om kalthoum ..... as the the east planet.  
a) still knows                      b) is still knowing  
c) is still known                      d) is still being known
21. The house is said to ..... last night.  
a) be robbed                      b) rob                      c) have robbed                      d) have been robbed



22. I fastened the seatbelt. Then the plane ..... off.  
**a) was taken                      b) took                      c) was taking                      d) takes**
23. The thief who tried to get in the house was seen and ..... by a fierce dog.  
**a) chasing                      b) was chased                      c) chased                      d) be chased**
24. He doesn't let himself ..... by others.  
**a) be cheated                      b) cheat                      c) to be cheated                      d) to cheat**
25. We can't possibly allow the antiques ..... abroad.  
**a) to sell                      b) to be sold                      c) to be selling                      d) to being**
26. After ..... , the criminal was taken to prison.  
**a) to be arrested                      b) being arrested                      c) had arrested                      d) been arrested**
27. **LM** Most of the novels ..... by Nagib Mahfouz are still read by thousands of people.  
**a) writing                      b) written                      c) were written                      d) which written**
28. **LM** I ..... an email from the company every time the manager asks me to undertake a new duty.  
**a) send                      b) sent                      c) was sent                      d) am sent**
29. **LM** Who ..... the radio ..... by?  
**a) was / inventing                      b) is / invented                      c) was / invented                      d) is / inventing**
30. **LM** I bought my mother a nice present on her birthday. What is the correct passive sentence(s)?  
**a) A nice present was bought to my mother on her birthday.**  
**b) A nice present was bought for my mother on her birthday.**  
**c) My mother was bought a nice present on her birthday.**  
**d) Both B and C.**
31. **LM** Which of the following sentences can't be changed into the passive voice?  
**a) I sent an email to the sales manager yesterday.**  
**b) I usually read useful books on holidays.**  
**c) Farmers usually go to their fields after the sun rises.**  
**d) After I had gone to the club, I met my friends.**
32. **LM** It's advisable to practise sports regularly to keep fit.  
 What is the correct passive sentence that gives the same meaning?  
**a) Sports were practised regularly to keep fit.**  
**b) Sports should be practised regularly to keep fit.**  
**c) You should practise sports regularly to keep fit.**  
**d) You ought to practise sports regularly to keep fit.**
33. **LM** This exercise must be done again because it wasn't written accurately.  
 What is the correct active sentence that gives the same meaning?  
**a) You must do the exercise again because it isn't written accurately.**  
**b) You must do the exercise again because you write it accurately.**  
**c) You had to do the exercise again because you didn't write it accurately.**  
**d) You must do the exercise again because you didn't write it accurately.**
34. **LM** Someone must have stolen the jewellery.  
 What is the correct passive sentence that gives the same meaning?  
**a) The jewellery must have been robbed.** **b) The jewellery must have been stolen.**  
**c) The jewellery must be stolen.** **d) The jewellery can't have been stolen.**
35. **LM** Which of the following can't be a correct passive sentence?  
**a) Traffic rules must be followed firmly.**  
**b) The Internet is widely used everywhere.**  
**c) More and more problems are arisen because of a lack of national awareness.**  
**d) I started my trip to Alexandria after my car had been checked and repaired.**



## Unit Eight

### Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:-

1. The human ..... discusses adding new workers to the company.  
a. resources                      b. process                      c. measures                      d. beings
2. Human ..... are different, in appearance as well as in personality.  
a. resources                      b. processes                      c. measures                      d. beings
3. Of all ....., Omar was chosen to get the job.  
a. waitresses                      b. candidates                      c. internships                      d. profiles
4. It is the first time for me to be ..... of the office.  
a. achievable                      b. part-time                      c. in charge                      d. digital
5. When you are responsible for something, you are ..... it.  
a. in charge of                      b. charged with                      c. applied                      d. traced
6. When you are responsible for a crime, you are ..... It.  
a. in charge of                      b. charged with                      c. applied                      d. traced
7. It was a/an ..... for him to lose all his money.  
a. internship                      b. excellence                      c. excerpt                      d. calamity
8. I was in a/an ..... danger when a wild dog ran after me.  
a. colossal                      b. achievable                      c. advanced                      d. trifling
9. I have to ..... for the new job before the ending of this month.  
a. evaluate                      b. apply                      c. trace                      d. lace
10. Each candidate is kindly asked to send their ..... by email.  
a. productivity                      b. management                      c. economics                      d. curriculum vitae
11. I'm just a/an ..... here, not an employee or an applicant.  
a. waitress                      b. candidate                      c. intern                      d. profile
12. It is great that a university student gets a summer ..... to prepare themselves for the labour market.  
a. internship                      b. excellence                      c. experts                      d. calamity
13. When I was a student at university, I found a/an ..... job as an assistant in shop for Thursdays and Saturdays.  
a. full-time                      b. part-time                      c. achievable                      d. digital
14. The government has taken the necessary ..... to face the current economic crisis.  
a. disasters                      b. excellences                      c. experts                      d. measures
15. I never forget to have a look at the ..... of the newspaper.  
a. editorial                      b. expense                      c. excellence                      d. impression
16. A/An ..... organisation or company belongs to several countries.  
a. multinational                      b. organisational                      c. residential                      d. basic
17. Your fluency will ..... the interviewer, I am sure.  
a. impress                      b. volunteer                      c. follow-up                      d. graduate
18. My audience all looked ..... by the presentation I was giving.  
a. permanent                      b. long-term                      c. impressed                      d. appropriate

19. At weekends, I ..... at a charity that help old people.  
**a. impress                      b. volunteer                      c. persuade                      d. graduate**
20. If you ..... students, you make them do better.  
**a. graduate                      b. cover                      c. motivate                      d. overlook**
21. It was lack of ..... which made it difficult for me to get the job.  
**a. profile                      b. pandemic                      c. experience                      d. follow-up**
22. Try to use ..... words when you complain. Be polite even when you are angry.  
**a. permanent                      b. long-term                      c. impressed                      d. appropriate**
23. It is necessary to be ..... dressed for a job interview.  
**a. appropriately                      b. nationally                      c. smartly                      d. a & c**
24. People earn money to pay for their living .....  
**a. editorials                      b. expenses                      c. excellences                      d. impressions**
25. Factories must not be built near ..... areas.  
**a. team player                      b. basic                      c. residential                      d. organisational**
26. It is duty of us all to ..... those who help the community.  
**a. award                      b. cover                      c. overlook                      d. scold**
27. I was ..... my secondary school certificate in 1994.  
**a. awarded                      b. covered                      c. motivated                      d. rewarded**
28. Coronavirus ..... has made a lot of difference in most fields.  
**a. profile                      b. pandemic                      c. experiences                      d. follow-up**
29. A beginner employee starts by learning the ..... skills of the career.  
**a. multinational                      b. editorials                      c. residential                      d. basic**
30. There is going to be a/an ..... change with the coming of the new management.  
**a. multinational                      b. based                      c. residential                      d. organisational**
31. To be a good member of a work group, you need to be a good .....  
**a. team player                      b. interviewer                      c. career                      d. basic**
32. I don't have much experience as I have ..... recently.  
**a. impressed                      b. volunteered                      c. persuaded                      d. graduated**
33. The accident has left a/an ..... effect on his leg. He can't walk without a stick.  
**a. permanent                      b. protective                      c. impressed                      d. appropriate**
34. All in all, she got ..... at her university years.  
**a. editorial                      b. expense                      c. excellence                      d. impression**
35. When I was a beginner as a journalist, I used to ..... local news stories.  
**a. award                      b. cover                      c. motivate                      d. reward**
36. I am looking forward to a good ..... in my new job.  
**a. file                      b. pandemic                      c. start-up                      d. follow-up**
37. I did very well while answering the ..... 's questions.  
**a. team player                      b. interviewer                      c. career                      d. journalism**
38. His good analysis and comments ..... everybody with his opinions.  
**a. rewarded                      b. volunteered                      c. persuaded                      d. graduated**
39. As a student, I have a/an ..... goal. I want to take medicine as a profession.  
**a. multinational                      b. long-term                      c. impressed                      d. protective**



40. I think I have given a good ..... at the job interview.  
**a. editorial      b. expense      c. excellence      d. impression**
41. This sunscreen provides a/an ..... layer طبقة that protects your skin from harmful rays.  
**a. permanent      b. protective      c. impressed      d. organisational**
42. You need some ..... treatment after you leave hospital.  
**a. profile      b. pandemic      c. experience      d. follow-up**
43. A job applicant has to prepare an impressive .....  
**a. goal      b. profile      c. suit      d. video**
44. .... marketing means selling goods and services online.  
**a. Digital      b. Traditional      c. Partner      d. Offline**
45. My language skills helped me ..... a better position with a higher salary.  
**a. to get      b. get      c. a & b      d. getting**

**Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions**

46. I was very nervous when I ..... my first talk.  
**a. went      b. gave      c. played      d. received**
47. As a university student, you can ..... only part-time.  
**a. work      b. build      c. make      d. do**
48. My laptop stopped because something ..... wrong with the power supply.  
**a. went      b. gave      c. played      d. received**
49. The internship I had ..... gave me a lot of experience.  
**a. worked      b. built      c. made      d. done**
50. The goals ..... for this child does not suit his abilities.  
**a. make      b. set      c. accept      d. give**
51. .... going, Mazen. You're doing a great job.  
**a. Keep      b. Offer      c. Give      d. Make**
52. The good impression Leen has ..... in the interview helped her get the job.  
**a. moved      b. offered      c. done      d. made**
53. The plane ..... off at 5:30.  
**a. takes      b. sits      c. gives      d. lands**
54. When someone ..... a task, he agrees to do it.  
**a. traces ... to      b. finds out      c. takes on      d. looks for**
55. My son traced his low marks ..... the headache he had in the exam room.  
**a. of      b. in      c. to      d. into**

## Unit Eight : Grammar

## تمارين علي المبني للمجهول

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. His car ..... for 70,000 pounds last week.

- a) has sold                      b) will sell                      c) was selling                      d) was sold

2. breakfast ..... by my mother every day.

- a) is always preparing                      b) always is prepared  
c) always prepares                      d) is always prepared

3. A new school .....in our village at the moment.

- a) is built                      b) is being built                      c) built                      d) is building

4. New cities ..... in the desert recently.

- a) have been built                      b) have built                      c) had been built                      d) had built

5. Our airconditioner needs to .....

- a) repairing                      b) repair                      c) be repaired                      d) repaired

6. How many languages ..... in 2100.

- a) will speak                      b) were spoken                      c) will be spoken                      d) are spoken

7. How many languages ..... in 1900.

- a) will speak                      b) were spoken                      c) will be spoken                      d) are spoken

8. Tom and Gerry cartoons ..... into many languages.

- a) have translated                      b) were translating  
c) had translated                      d) have been translated

9. I don't like ..... by others.

- a) deceiving                      b) been deceived                      c) being deceived                      d) be deceived

10. I wouldn't like ..... by others.

- a) deceiving                      b) been deceived                      c) being deceived                      d) to be deceived

11. His masters degree will ..... next Monday.

- a) have discussed                      b) be discussing                      c) be discussed                      d) discuss

12. The criminal ..... at 5 o'clock yesterday.

- a) was questioned                      b) was being questioned  
c) questioned                      d) was questioned

13. The criminal ..... yesterday.

- a) was questioned                      b) was being questioned  
c) questioned                      d) was questioned

14. Before the last month, our house .....

- a) had furnished                      b) had been furnished                      c) furnished                      d) was furnished

15. Our rubbish..... every week.

- a) are emptied                      b) is emptied                      c) was emptying                      d) is emptying

16. After the tickets ..... , we went to the theatre.

- a) had booked                      b) were booking                      c) booked                      d) had been booked

17. Preparations for the party ..... now.

- a) have made                      b) has to be made                      c) are being made                      d) are making

18. I'm going to ..... for the job of a receptionist tomorrow.

- a) be interviewing                      b) have interviewed                      c) be interviewed                      d) interview



19. The drivers are made ..... the driving rules on roads.  
 a) to respect      b) repect      c) to be respected      d) repected
20. Paper ..... by the chinese in the second century.  
 a) invented      b) was inventing      c) was invented      d) is being invented
21. It ..... that life is full of good and evil.  
 a) knows      b) known      c) is known      d) has known
22. Our novel "The Prisoner of Zenda" ..... by Antony Hope.  
 a) is written      b) writes      c) wrote      d) was written
23. I object to ..... what to do.  
 a) tell      b) be told      c) telling      d) being told
24. I don't mind ..... by people.  
 a) being helped      b) helping      c) being helping      d) am helped
25. Sooner or later, I think a cure for cancer .....  
 a) will have discovered      b) will be discovering  
 c) will be discovered      d) will discover
26. At restaurant, food ..... while I was chatting on my mobile.  
 a) was serving      b) is served  
 c) was being served      d) has been served
27. The thief ..... before he tried to escape.  
 a) was arresting      b) had arrested      c) had been arrested      d) is arrested
28. Since the femto second....., there has been breakthrough in chemistry.  
 a) was discovered      b) discovered      c) has been discovered      d) is discovered
29. It ..... that ghosts don't exist.  
 a) has believed      b) is believed      c) is believing      d) had believed
30. Our fathers' instructions ..... strictly.  
 a) need to follow      b) should follow      c) should be followed      d) follow
31. Every drop of water equals life so water mustn't ..... foolishly.  
 a) be using      b) be used      c) use      d) been used
32. Answers have..... to in the correct space.  
 a) to be written      b) to being written      c) be written      d) to write
33. A lot of vegetables ..... at the maraket today.  
 a) were selling      b) selling      c) are being sold      d) are selling
34. English ..... everywhere.  
 a) speaks      b) is speaking      c) is spoken      d) spoken
35. Is your house ..... now?  
 a) painted      b) being painted      c) painting      d) be painted
36. The first heart transplant operation ..... in Britain 20 years ago.  
 a) was done      b) was doing      c) had been done      d) had been doing
37. As soon as I returned home, I found that my money .....  
 a) stole      b) had stolen      c) was stolen      d) had been stolen
38. Having ....., the man was taken to hospital.  
 a) been injured      b) being injured  
 c) injured      d) be injured
39. Has my parcel ..... by anyone?  
 a) posted      b) post      c) been posted      d) be posted

40. It ..... that food prices will increase.

- a) reports      b) has been reported      c) reported      d) being reported

41. Drivers are advised ..... an alternative route in case of emergency.

- a) to use      b) to be used      c) use      d) being used

42. The houses ..... in the earthquake.

- a) collapse      b) are collapsed      c) were collapsed      d) are collapsed

43. Don't let yourself ..... by others.

- a) be deceived      b) be deceiving      c) deceive      d) to deceive

44. You ..... if you illegally throw rubbish in the street.

- a) may be fined      b) may fine      c) have to fine      d) must fine

45. In some countries, the drug for Corona virus ..... yet.

- a) wasn't used      b) hasn't been used      c) isn't used      d) has used

46. Look! That big tree ..... and I think it will block the street.

- a) is cut      b) is cutting      c) will cut      d) is being cut

47. The statue ..... out of stone by the ancient Egyptians.

- a) has carved      b) will be carved      c) has been carved      d) was carved

48. She's thought to ..... from diabetes.

- a) be suffered      b) being suffered      c) have suffered      d) suffers

49. The novel "Al Ayam" was written ..... Taha Hussien.

- a) in      b) on      c) by      d) to

50. Having ..... , the criminal was taken to prison.

- a) to be arrested      b) being arrested      c) had arrested      d) been arrested



Unit (9): Starting again

Revision Vocabulary

contribute to + V-ing	يساهم في / يشارك في	motivate	يحفز / يشجع
contribution to	مساهمة / مشاركة	motivation	دافع / حافز
common sense	حسن الادراك / فطنة / شعور عام	the Olympics	الاولمبياد
career = working life	حياة مهنية (عملية)	debate	مناظرة / مناقشة / يناقش
career direction	تغير وظيفي / تحول وظيفي	passion	عاطفة / حماس / شغف
employ	يوظف	passionate about	عاطفي / متحمس
employment	توظيف / وظيفة / عمل	enthusiastic about	متحمس
employable	مقبول في وظيفة	generation	جيل
experience	خبرة وتجربة حياتية	ignore	يتجاهل
life-changing	مغير للحياة	tough	خشن / صعب / قاسي
reinvent ... as	يعيد إكتشاف / يعيد تأهيل / يصلح	argue	يجادل / يناقش (بحدة)
reinvent yourself	تعيد إكتشاف / تأهيل نفسك	argument	جدال / نقاش (حاد)
reinvent the wheel	يخترع الذرة (يضيع وقته)	light	منظور / وجهة نظر
entrepreneur	رائد أعمال / متعهد / مقاول	bank	بنك / مصرف
entrepreneurship	ريادة الاعمال (مجازفة إقتصادية)	banking	التعاملات البنكية (المصرفية)
entrepreneurial	ريادي (مجازف إقتصادي)	banking procedures	الاجراءات المصرفية
working knowledge	معرفة عملية	wise	حكيم
pointless	غير مجدي / غير مفيد	wisdom	الحكمة
question	يشك / يسأل	recycle	يعيد تدوير وتصنيع
second-hand	مستعمل	exist	يوجد
solar-powered	يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	recipe	وصفة طعام
factor	عامل / عنصر	ingredients	مقادير / مكونات (أكلة)
vehicle	مركبة / وسيلة نقل	lead - led	يقود / يحيا / يؤدي
adventure	مغامرة	physical	بدني / جسماني
optimistic	متفائل	physically	بدنيا / جسمانيا
pessimistic	متشائم	mental	عقلي / ذهني
celebrate	يحتفل بـ (بدون حرف جر)	mentally	عقليا / ذهنيا
challenge	يتحدى / تحدي	mentally disabled	متأخر ذهني (معاق ذهني)
conclude	يستنتج / يختتم	refreshing	منعش
conclusion	إستنتاج / خاتمة	rely on	يعتمد على
consider	يعتبر / يفكر في	elderly people	كبار السن
respect	يحترم / إحترام	solution	حل
retire	يتقاعد (يطلع على المعاش)	typical of	نمطي / معتاد / نموذجي
exception	إستثناء / إستبعاد	introduce	يقدم
permanent = constant = continuous	مستمر	fountain	نافورة
temporary	مؤقت	creative writing	الكتابة الإبداعية
appreciate = value	يُقدر	innovate = create	يبدع
necessarily	بالضرورة	innovator	مبدع / مخترع (شخص)
translate	يترجم	innovative = creative	إبداعي (صفة)
potential	قدرة / إمكانية	innovation=creation=creativity	الإبداع



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (9)

## Main Vocabulary

boast	يتباهي / يتفاخر	desert	يهجر / يترك
my heart sank	لقد حزن قلبي	survive	ينجو / يبقى حياً
catch - caught	يقبض علي	fear for	يخاف علي
commit	يرتكب (جريمة)	night watchman	حارس ليلي
criminal	مجرم / إجرامي	confirm	يؤكد
crouch	يجلس القرفصاء	permanently	بإستمرار / علي الدوام

## Choose the correct answer :-

- LM When I heard about the road accident, I ..... for my friend's safety because he was driving that car.  
a) considered b) feared c) blamed d) criticised
- LM No one has declared the final result yet, so I can't ..... that I won the competition.  
a) accept b) seem c) appear d) confirm
- LM There is a night ..... who goes round the building to keep us safe at night.  
a) thief b) watchman c) burglar d) dustman
- LM He wasn't faithful; he ..... his friend when he was in trouble and didn't help him!  
a) deserted b) desired c) disappeared d) remained
- LM Luckily, the old man ..... the terrible accident.  
a) lived b) died c) arrived d) survived
- LM I ..... down to get the lady's handbag from the floor.  
a) broke b) filled c) crouched d) cut
- LM When I received the dreadful news, my heart ..... I was upset and disappointed.  
a) sank b) cheered c) thought d) keen

## Collocations and Expressions

make comment	يعلق	do volunteer work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي
make exception	يستثني	do writing	يؤلف (يقوم بالتأليف)
make argument	يقدم حجة	get married = is married	يتزوج
make a difference	يحدث الفارق (يحسن)	gain working knowledge	يكتسب خبرة العمل
tell the difference between	يذكر الفرق بين	get paid to	يتقاضى أجر علي
take it easy	يأخذ الأمور ببساطة	have contact	يتواصل
take a look	يلقي نظرة	have an impact on	له تأثير علي
gain wisdom	يكتسب الحكمة	lead a happy life	يعيش حياة سعيد
build a car	يصمم سيارة / يصنع سيارة	give reasons for	يعطي اسباب (مبررات) ل
a solar-powered car	سيارة تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية	in other words	بصيغة أخرى
change career direction	يغير المهنة	in the light of ...	في ضوء / من منظور ....
realise the extent to	يدرك مدى ...	experience a situation	يمر بموقف ما
continue working into his 70s or older			يواصل العمل حتي سن السبعينات او اكبر



## Prepositions

result (in) = lead (to)	يؤدي الي	reaction (to)	رد فعل ل
result (from)	ينتج من / يحدث بسبب (سببه)	(to) my surprise	وما أصابني بالدهشة
typical (of)	مثال نموذجي ل / نمطي	comment (on)	يعلق على
work .... (out)	يفهم / يستنتج	(in) her twenties	في العشرينيات
break (down)	يتحلل / يتعطل	get (into)	ينخرط في / يدخل

## راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

set up = establish = build = found	يؤسس	set off	يبدأ رحلة / يغادر / ينطلق
------------------------------------	------	---------	---------------------------

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Before setting ....., check the car oil.

- a) across      b) up      c) back      d) off

## راجع كل يوم بعض الصفات المركبة

اسم + عدد →

five-minute	لمدة خمس دقائق	ten-storey	ذو عشر طوابق
three-hour	لمدة ثلاث ساعات	five-star	ذو خمس نجوم
two-way	ذو اتجاهين	fifty-pound	من فئة الخمسين جنيه

EX: He had a five-day holiday. (-)

EX: Egypt has many five-star hotels. (-) (a) مع الجمع مفيش

## (الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد)

Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

common sense	wit / wisdom / sound judgement	حسن الادراك / الفطنة
employment	job / post / position / hiring / taking on	التوظيف / وظيفة
reinvent	reform / modify	يعيد تأهيل وإصلاح
wisdom	insight / common sense	الحكمة (البصيرة)
typical	common / familiar	نمطي / معتاد / شائع / مألوف

Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

common sense	حسن الادراك / الفطنة	folly / stupidity	حمافة / غباء
wisdom	الحكمة	folly / stupidity	الحمافة / الغباء
typical	نمطي / معتاد / مألوف	exceptional	إستثنائي

Choose the correct answer :-

1. "Use your common sense if something goes wrong."

In this sentence, "common sense" is synonym of .....

- a. folly      b. wit      c. wisdom      d. b & c

2. "Egypt is reinventing the educational system."

The verb "reinvent" here is synonymous with .....

- a. create      b. find out      c. invent again      d. reform

## كل يوم راجع مهارة : (الترقيم)

## الفاصلة السفلي (الكوما) , (comma)

- ✓ نضع بعد الكوما فراغ (space).
- ✓ نستخدمها لفصل الكلمات داخل قائمة بدل من تكرار كلمة (and) نضع (الكوما) وقبل آخر كلمة نضع (and).
- ⇒ It is used to **separate** words in a **list**.
- EX:** I study many subjects : Arabic, English, physics, chemistry, biology **and** maths.
- ✓ بعد وقبل (المنادي) : (لما تخاطب / تنادي علي شخص : يا فلان : **address a person**).
- EX:** Shady, work hard for exams. **EX:** Work hard for exam, Shady.
- ✓ بعد (الظرف الباديء) الجملة : **(after the adverb if it begins)**.
- EX:** Fortunately, the driver wasn't injured.
- ✓ لفصل الجمل البادئة بالروابط زي : **(after / before / while / when / if / although)**.
- EX:** If she had got the enough money, she would have bought the dress.
- ✓ بعد وقبل كلمة **(please)**.
- EX:** Please, open the door.
- EX:** Open the door, please.
- ✓ قبل (السؤال المذيل : **question tag**) : **(قبله كوما وبعده علامة إستفهام)**.
- EX:** Mona has got the prize, hasn't she?
- ✓ قبل وبعد جملة المباشرة التي بين اثنين كوتاشين في الخبرية (.) علي حسب جملة القول قبل او بعد.
- أو قبل جملة المباشرة التي بين اثنين كوتاشين في الاستفهامية (?) مش بعدها.
- EX:** He said to me, "I have got a car." **EX:** He asked me, "Where do you live?"
- EX:** "I have got a car.", He said to me. **EX:** "Where do you live?" He asked me.
- ✓ بعد ظرف الزمان لو بدأ جملة زي : **(tomorrow / now / today / yesterday / last .. / next..)**.
- EX:** Yesterday, the match was cancelled due to heavy rain.
- ✓ لفصل أجزاء العناوين والتواريخ (في التاريخ الشهر ثم اليوم ثم السنة وراهم).
- EX:** I live in Faqus, Sharqia. **EX:** Today is May 15, 2021.
- ✓ بعد كلمات الموافقة والرفض والاستئذان والرفض زي : **(yes/no/sure/of course/excuse me/sorry)**.
- EX:** Yes, I have experience in sales. **EX:** Excuse me, where is the bank, please?
- ✓ لفصل الجمل البادئة ب (اسم الفاعل : V-ing) او ب (اسم مفعول : P.P) او ب (المصدر + to).
- EX:** Crossing the street, I met Sally. ⇒ **While** I was crossing ..
- EX:** Painted well, the house looked fantastic. ⇒ **Because** the house was painted ..
- EX:** To pass your exams, you should do well.
- ✓ قبل (رابط التناقض الذي في المنتصف) زي : **(but / unlike / however / not + صفة)**.
- EX:** I am tired, not bored.
- EX:** I like football, unlike my brother.
- ✓ نستخدم (اثنين كوما) لفصل (العبارة الاعتراضية) عن الجملة التي قبلها والتي بعدها.
- ودا مع جمل ضمائر الوصل مع **(who / which)**. بس مش مع **(that)** ليه ؟؟ لان **(that)** لا تستخدم مع (الكوما).
- EX:** Samy, who is my next door neighbour, is a doctor.



## Grammar

(Quantifiers : المحددات) تعبيرات التجزئة

(all / every / each / the whole / none)

## ✓ all / all (of)

⇒ all + (اسم لمعدود كمية) + (فعل مفرد)

⇒ all + (اسم معدود جمع) + (فعل جمع)

EX: All Mona's money is at home.

EX: All my friends like music.

كل : (تشير إلى المجموعة ككل بوجه عام بمعنى الكل بلا استثناء)

is, was, has ⇒ مفرد  
are, have ⇒ جمع

## ✓ every / each

⇒ every / each + (اسم مفرد) + (فعل مفرد)

EX: Every student has a book.

⇒ (all students)

EX: Each girl plays the piano well.

⇒ (separately)

✓ نستخدم (each) غالبا للإشارة إلى أفراد المجموعة (كل فرد على حدة) بشكل منفصل (كل واحد لوحده) (واحد واحد).

كل .... : (لهم معني متشابه جدا)

## الفرق بين Every &amp; Each

✓ (البيان التكرار والعادات والروتين : قبل المدة الزمنية).

✓ ⇒ Every + مدة زمنية every (day / week / month / year / night)

✓ نستخدم (every) فقط مع الظروف الآتية مش (each) :-

⇒ nearly / almost / practically / without exception

EX: Nearly every student was examined.

⇒ X each

✓ نستخدم (each) عندما نتحدث عن (شخصين / شينين). لأنها تقبل اثنين أو أكثر معناها (كل على حدة / كل واحد لوحده).

EX: He carried a bag in each hand.

⇒ X every

EX: We should help each other.

⇒ (مصطلح مهم)

EX: He bought two new jackets and paid 500 pounds for each of them.

⇒ the whole (day / time / morning / summer / weekend / book / life)

EX: I spent the whole day on the beach.

⇒ (the whole day)

• خدت بالك (the whole) هي الوحيدة التي قبلها (the). يعني سهلة جدا.

## ✓ None of .....

✓ عند نفي وعكس (all) نستخدم (none)

EX: We all went to the party but none of us enjoyed it.

✓ غالبا وجود (but) علشان تعكس وتنفي الجملة وبنسبة كبيرة الحل بيكون (none) لانهم كلمات النفي في الدرس دا.

EX: We all went to the party but none of us enjoyed it.

\* خلى بالك من الملاحظة دي مهمة جدًا :-

None X all

⇒ (None / Each) of + (اسم جمع) + (فعل مفرد)

EX: None of these cameras (is) good.

EX: Each of the students (is / was / has / writeS).

• وخلي بالك اكر ان فيه (each of) بس مفيش (every of).

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

✓ خلي بالك : معروف ان كلمة (all) بتاخد (جمع / لا معدود) بمعنى (كل).  
ولكن ممكن (all) يبقى معناها (طول / طوال) لتشير الي الشيء كله مع الكلمات دي :  
⇒ all (day / night / morning / week / month / year / life / the time.  
EX: he worked all his life in the mines. = the whole life

✓ معروف ان (each) بتاخد (of) :-  
⇒ each of + اسم مفرد + اسم جمع  
✓ بس ممكن (every) تاخد (of) بشرط تبقي (every one of ...) المنفصلة بس :-  
⇒ every one of + اسم جمع  
EX: Each of the the students is having a test now.  
EX: I read every one of these books.

✓ خلي بالك نضع تعبيرات التجزئة (all) بعد ضمائر الفاعل.  
✓ انما (all of) قبل الجمع / ضمائر المفعول الجمع (us/you / them).  
⇒ We all = All of us

⇒ nearly / almost / practically / without exception  
✓ الظروف دي بنستخدم معاها (every) مش (each) وكمان ينفع (all) :-  
EX: Nearly every student was examined. ⇒ X each  
EX: Nearly all the students were examined.

✓ بص علي (الفعل) مع التعابير دي :-  
الضمير      الفعل      الجمع      اسم جمع + اسم مفرد  
⇒ A number of      + اسم جمع + اسم مفرد  
الضمير      الفعل      الجمع      اسم جمع + اسم مفرد  
⇒ The number of      + اسم جمع + اسم مفرد  
الضمير      الفعل      الجمع      اسم جمع + اسم مفرد  
⇒ One of      + اسم جمع + اسم مفرد  
EX: A number of students are absent today.  
EX: The number of applicants for the job is in increase.  
EX: One of the players was injured.



## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

### Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. He is always wasting his time ..... the wheel. يخترع العجلة  
 a. debating      b. inspiring      c. reinventing      d. ignoring
2. She'd rather ..... to her room for some privacy.  
 a. resign      b. retire يلجأ / يعود      c. refer      d. appear
3. The interviewer said, "Are you in ..... at the moment?"  
 a. market      b. job مجال وظيفة      c. employment      d. post
4. Listen to words of ..... may inspire you to do your utmost.  
 a. reason الأسباب / الأسباب الملهمة      b. wisdom      c. knowledge      d. cause
5. Were you be able to make any ..... out of these examples?  
 a. contribution      b. impression      c. sense تأقنمت      d. sensitive
6. We have one thing in ..... : we both love football.  
 a. debate مستمر      b. common      c. respect      d. term

### Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

7. Sara was invited to many parties and she went to .....  
a) every one اشخاص      b) everyone اشخاص      c) all one      ~~d) whole one~~
8. .... like money.  
 a) All we      b) We all      c) All of us      ~~d) b and c~~
9. I didn't sleep ..... night last night.  
 a) each      b) every كل      c) all كل      ~~d) whole~~
10. .... of my three brothers is interested in sports.  
 a) Every      b) Each م      c) All      d) Both
11. Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar wishes you ..... success.  
 a) each      b) every      c) all      d) whole
12. We go to visit our grandfather ..... other Friday.  
a) Every كل يوم      b) Each الآخر      c) All      d) Both
13. In rural areas, as a ..... , 80% of people know each other.  
 a) each كل واحد      b) every      c) all      d) whole as a whole

## Grammar

(Quantifiers : المحددات : المعدود واللامعدود)

(many / few / a few / much / little / a little)

مع الأسماء المعدودة : تأتي في صيغة (جمع) هي تُعامل معاملة (الجمع) وتأخذ فعل (جمع).

وأفعال الجمع : (فعل مضارع بدون s / have / were / are).

EX: students (are / were / have ... / go / these / those / they / do ... / don't ...).

مع الأسماء اللامعدودة : هي أسماء التي لا تُعد : هي (الكمية) وليست (مفرد) ولا (جمع).

يعني لا يُستخدم معها (a / an) لأنها ليست (مفرد) ولا تجمعها ب(s) لأنها ليست (جمع).

مع الأسماء اللامعدودة : تُعامل معاملة (المفرد) وتأخذ فعل (مفرد).

وأفعال المفرد : (فعل مضارع ب s / has / was / is).

EX: water (is / was / has ... / gives / this / that / it / does ...? / doesn't ...).

مع الأسماء اللامعدودة :

الطعام والسوائل والغازات ومواد الصنع والمواد الدراسية والألوان والألعاب الرياضية والانشطة و الظواهر الطبيعية والوجبات والأسماء المجردة (المعنوية) مثل :

advice	نصيحة	furniture	أثاث	money	المال
luggage	أمتعة	harm	ضرر	news	الأخبار
baggage	أمتعة	damage	الدمار	traffic	المرور
bread	الخبز	information	معلومات	literature	الأدب
experience	خبرة	knowledge	معرفة	weather	الطقس
education	التعليم	equipment	معدات	soup	شوربه
help	مساعدة	evidence	دليل	work	العمل
meat	لحمة	heat	حرارة	paper	الورق
coffee	القهوة (مشروب)	research	بحث	time	الوقت
freedom	الحرية	rubbish / litter	قمامة	lightning	البرق

EX: There was heavy rain yesterday.

- الجدول داه يساعدنا نتعرف علي محددات الاسماء (المعدودة : الجمع) والاسماء (اللامعدودة : الكمية) :-

الاسم المعدود : العدد / الجمع	الاسم اللامعدود : الكمية
many كثير للعدد	much كثير للكمية
too many كثير جدا للعدد	too much كثير جدا للكمية
How many ....? كم عدد ....?	How much ....? كم كمية ....?
a few قليل للعدد (ويكفي)	a little قليل للكمية (ويكفي)
few قليل للعدد (ولا يكفي)	little قليل للكمية (ولا يكفي)
* more ... than أكثر من (مع العدد)	* more ... than أكثر من (مع الكمية)
fewer than أقل من (مع العدد)	less than أقل من (مع الكمية)
the fewest الأقل (مع العدد)	the least الأقل (مع الكمية)
several عديد / كثير (مع العدد)	an amount of كمية من
a number of عدد من	a quantity of كمية من

EX: There aren't many cars on the road today.

EX: I don't have much money to help you.



⇒ many + (اسم معدود جمع)

⇒ much + (اسم لا معدود كمية)

⇒ a lot of + (اسم لا معدود كمية) / (اسم معدود جمع) ⇒ في الجملة المثبتة بس

EX: He hasn't got much money.

EX: Do you have many friends?

EX: He hasn't got many friends.

EX: Do you have much money?

EX: There are a lot of shops in our town.

في الجملة المنفية والسؤال

في الجملة المنفية والسؤال

+ PLUS a lot of = lots of = plenty of

+ PLUS a lot

كثيرًا (بدون of)

✓ few

✓ little

✓ a few

✓ a little

قليل للمعدود (ولا يكفي : not enough)

قليل للكمية (ولا يكفي : not enough)

قليل للمعدود (ويكفي)

قليل للكمية (ويكفي)

EX: He answered few questions. = He didn't answer many questions.

EX: I have little money. = I don't have much money.

+ PLUS only / just / quite ⇒ a few - a little

⇒ XX few XX little

EX: I have only a few friends, I find them in need.

⇒ some + (اسم معدود جمع) / (اسم لا معدود كمية)

⇒ any + (اسم معدود جمع) / (اسم لا معدود كمية)

EX: I have some ideas for my new business.

EX: Would you like some tea?

EX: Were there any mistakes in your homework?

في الجملة المثبتة والعرض والطلب (مع انه سؤال)

في الجملة المنفية والسؤال (مش عرض ولا طلب)

جملة مثبتة

عرض

سؤال

- خلي بالك ان (any) بتيجي في (النفي) ب (not : n't) وكمان لو في الجملة كلمات وافعال منفية زي :-

⇒ hardly / scarcely / rarely / seldom / never / without / refuse / deny / prevent

EX: He climbed the mountain without any difficulty.

+ PLUS any : (في الجملة المنفية مع المعدود الجمع / اللامعدود الكمية)

= no : (في الجملة المثبتة مع المعدود الجمع / اللامعدود الكمية)

EX: There isn't any water in the bottle.

= There is no water in the bottle.

+ PLUS hardly any / almost not (no) : (تقريبًا لا يوجد)

EX: He has hardly any friends.

= He has almost no friends.

## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

- معروف ان (many / much) بتيجي في الجمل (المنفية / السؤال). ومعروف ان (a lot of) بتيجي في الجملة (المثبتة).

بس ممكن (many / much) تيجي في الجملة (المثبتة) لو جه قبلها (so / too / as ..... as).

EX: I have so much homework to do.

EX: I have too many jobs to do.

- معروف ان (little) : قليل ل اللامعدود / الكمية

بس كمان ممكن يجي وراها (اسم معدود : مفرد / جمع) :-

صغير السن / صغير الحجم / بسيط غير هام

+ PLUS little + اسم معدود

EX: My little sister loves watching cartoon.

EX: I have some little things to discuss with you.



## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. Japan has many ..... islands.  
a) few                      b) little                      c) some                      d) any
2. Some.... child broke the shop window and ran away.  
a) few                      b) many                      c) some                      d) any
3. **LM** There is ..... meat in the fridge; we only have ..... for three, and we've invited 12 people!  
a) little/enough                      b) a little / many                      c) more / a few                      d) much / no
4. **LM** The police don't have ..... evidence that the young man is the criminal, so they need to look for ..... more.  
a) a lot / not                      b) many / any                      c) enough / some                      d) enough / no
5. **LM** Would you like to have ..... fresh fruit juice? - Yes, only ....., please.  
a) some / a few                      b) some / a little                      c) many / a little                      d) much / little
6. **LM** Ahmad : Have you bought ..... bread, Yasser?  
Adel : No, I bought. ....  
a) much / few                      b) a lot / a few                      c) much / a little                      d) any / little
7. **LM** The majority of students got ready for the final exam, but..... them lagged Behind (لم يأتوا) as they didn't revise well.  
a) a few                      b) a lot                      c) lots                      d) a few of
8. **LM** I have hardly..... cooking oil left; I used almost ..... of it yesterday.  
a) no / all                      b) some / a few                      c) any / all                      d) many / none
9. **LM** ..... you buy any paper? - No, I bought.....  
a) Didn't / no                      b) Did / a few                      c) Didn't / some                      d) Did / some
10. **LM** She is very punctual; she rarely comes late, .....?  
a) is she                      b) she is                      c) doesn't she                      d) does she
11. **LM** Which of the following can be used with countable and uncountable nouns?  
a) few                      b) a lot of                      c) a few                      d) much
12. **LM** I have hardly any butter left. "Hardly any" means ".....".  
a) almost a few                      b) only a few                      c) almost no                      d) not many
13. **LM** I don't have much news about the accident. This means that I have.....news about the accident.  
a) a little                      b) a lot of                      c) almost any                      d) no
14. **LM** ..... has ..... own problems, don't they?  
a) No one / their                      b) Everyone / their                      c) Everyone / his                      d) No one / her
15. **LM** I have almost ..... sugar in the apartment. I need to buy. ....  
a) much / some                      b) no / some                      c) many / a little                      d) any / some
16. **LM** We have plenty of petrol in the car, so it is ..... to reach our destination.  
a) little / enough                      b) lot / some                      c) plenty / enough                      d) many / a lot
17. **LM** Which of the following isn't structurally correct?  
a) None of my friends arrived on time.  
b) All students are asked to share in the project.  
c) The furniture in the new flat are very expensive.  
d) Each bank of the river is full of trees.
18. **LM** Which of the following is structurally correct?  
a) I'm sorry, I have only a few time left; I can't go to the club.  
b) Only a few student got low marks.  
c) The money I have are not enough for the things we need.  
d) All of us are ready for the final exam.



## Unit Nine

### Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. You can use your ..... to solve this problem.  
 a. direction      b. employment      c. contribution      d. common sense
2. To work in the field of communication, you will need working ..... of the latest computing systems.  
 a. wisdom      b. changing      c. knowledge      d. ingredient
3. Dr Zewail's work was a great ..... to science.  
 a. direction      b. employment      c. contribution      d. common sense
4. Volunteers ..... their time and effort to charity work.  
 a. care      b. conclude      c. contribute      d. introduce
5. My parents have made great ..... to my personal life.  
 a. motivations      b. generations      c. exceptions      d. contributions
6. I value the ..... of elderly people. They have learned a lot throughout their lives.  
 a. procedure      b. changing      c. direction      d. wisdom
7. .... is a simple understanding of how something works.  
 a. Direction      b. Employment      c. Contribution      d. Common sense
8. I worked in the USA for ten years, which was an amazing ..... I will never forget.  
 a. experience      b. changing      c. knowledge      d. ingredient
9. He didn't make enough money working as an employer, so he decided to ..... himself as tour guide.  
 a. contact      b. inspire      c. question      d. reinvent
10. It is not easy to change ..... direction after twenty years of working in the same field.  
 a. career      b. employer      c. contribution      d. common sense
11. I think online ..... is safe. Your money is not in danger.  
 a. vehicle      b. working      c. knowledge      d. banking
12. The security ..... in this factory are perfect.  
 a. seaweeds      b. quantifiers      c. recipes      d. procedures
13. Don't let your ..... life kill your happiness. Humans need some time for themselves.  
 a. vehicle      b. working      c. knowledge      d. banking
14. A good employer makes full use of the ..... of each member of the staff.  
 a. procedure      b. coaches      c. entrepreneurs      d. potentials
15. A child doesn't like it when you ..... their requests.  
 a. ignore      b. consider      c. celebrate      d. retire
16. Most young people are ..... about football. They're crazy about it.  
 a. typical      b. tough      c. pointless      d. passionate
17. Ayman is very ..... about football. He watch every match for his favourite team.  
 a. proud      b. popular      c. positive      d. enthusiastic
18. I find this argument ..... . We'll never reach an agreement.  
 a. typical      b. flexible      c. pointless      d. passionate

19. The younger ..... find it easy to deal with modern technology.  
 a. motivation      ~~b. generation~~      c. exception      d. contribution
20. There was a/an ..... about combating air pollution help in our school yesterday.  
~~a. grandchildren~~      b. respect      c. debate      d. argument
21. The ..... I had made did not persuade them to agree to my suggestion.  
 a. grandchildren      b. respects      ~~c. arguments~~      d. retire
22. Times are being ..... for me. I've lost my job and my father is very ill.  
 a. typical      ~~b. tough~~      c. pointless      d. passionate
23. Nearly everyone needs ..... It encourages him to go on facing difficulties.  
 a. motivation      b. generation      c. exception      ~~d. contribution~~
24. He took my advice without ..... He trusts me.  
 a. contacting      b. inspiring      ~~c. questioning~~      d. reinventing
25. I think this is a very high price for such a ..... car.  
 a. solar-powered      ~~b. second hand~~      c. bottled      d. creative
26. I think this a fair price for such a ..... car. It runs on electricity form the sun.  
 a. solar-powered      b. second hand      c. bottled      ~~d. creative~~
27. Planning is one of the basic ..... of success.  
 a. passions      ~~b. paintings~~      c. factors      d. transports
28. This is a modern ..... which is environmentally friendly.  
~~a. vehicle~~      b. working      c. knowledge      d. banking
29. It is commonly believed that is healthier to drink ..... water.  
 a. solar-powered      b. second hand      c. bottled      d. creative
30. The best thing about plastic is that it can be .....  
~~a. recycled~~      b. enveloped      c. broken down      d. existed
31. I got the ..... for this dish from the internet.  
 a. seaweed      b. quantifier      ~~c. recipe~~      d. procedure
32. Extinct animals no longer ..... on earth.  
 a. recycle      b. gain      c. break down      d. exist
33. All students must wear the school uniform. There is no .....  
 a. motivation      b. generation      c. exception      d. contribution
34. The last paragraph of an essay ..... what has been written in it.  
 a. cares      b. concludes      c. contributes      d. introduces
35. He can't remember anything, He is ..... disabled.  
 a. elderly      ~~b. necessarily~~      c. mentally      d. physically
36. Being ....., he always looks at positive side of everything.  
 a. optimistic      b. refreshing      c. stressed      d. overworked
37. It is the right thing to respect ..... people.  
 a. elderly      b. necessarily      ~~c. mentally~~      d. physically
38. We are ..... Sama's birthday on July 7<sup>th</sup>. We are giving a big party.  
 a. ignoring      ~~b. considering~~      c. celebrating      d. retiring
39. This hot weather is not ..... of January which is a cold winter month.  
 a. typical      b. tough      ~~c. pointless~~      d. passionate



40. Being over 60 does not ..... mean you cannot work.  
**a. elderly      b. necessarily      c. physical      d. mental**
41. The first thing to ..... is to raise the staff's salaries. It is an urgent demand.  
**a. ignore      b. consider      c. celebrate      d. retire**
42. Sara worked hard all school year, ..... she came first.  
**a. However,      b. So,      c. As a result,      d. b & c**

**Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions**

43. Doing an internship helped me ..... work knowledge.  
**a. gain      b. make      c. build      d. do**
44. You can ..... some writing for our website.  
**a. do      b. face      c. have      d. start**
45. She ..... married to a successful young engineer.  
**a. gained      b. made      c. built      d. got**
46. I am a volunteer. I do not ..... paid for my work.  
**a. feel      b. get      c. increase      d. sound**
47. The positive impact Mr Mahmoud Elnaggar ..... on his students is clear.  
**a. does      b. faces      c. has      d. sounds**
48. Unlike wood, plastic products never .....  
**a. suffer from      b. break down      c. go out      d. burn**
49. He was a professional teacher of English, however he has managed to reinvent himself ..... an engineer.  
**a. as      b. to      c. in      d. from**
50. "Care ....." means nearly the same as "look after".  
**a. of      b. off      c. for      d. after**

## Unit Eight : Grammar

### تمارين علي الحددات All, Every, Each, The whole and None

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was thirsty, so he drank ..... the juice.

- a) every      b) each      c) all      d) whole

2. .... of the visitors has come to the party.

- a) Every      b) Each      c) All      d) whole

3. .... the student in my class lives near to our school.

- a) Every      b) whole      c) Either      d) All

4. .... the students in my class live near to our school.

- a) Each      b) whole      c) Either      d) All

5. .... student in my class has his own desk.

- a) Each      b) whole      c) Either      d) All

6. All Mazen's money ..... at home.

- a) are      b) were      c) is      d) have been

7. I have three sisters. .... of them are married.

- a) whole      b) Every      c) All      d) Each

8. .... the salt that you need is in the cupboard.

- a) All      b) Both      c) Either      d) Each

9. .... player was given a task to do in the game.

- a) Both      b) Whole      c) All      d) Every

10. .... of players was given a task to do in the game.

- a) Both      b) All      c) Each      d) Every

11. .... the players were given tasks to do in the game.

- a) All      b) Half      c) Each      d) Either

12. Almost ..... shirt is fashionable.

- a) all      b) every      c) whole      d) too

13. Each student ..... a tablet.

- a) own      b) owns      c) are owning      d) were owning

14. None of the mobiles ..... modern.

- a) were      b) have      c) has      d) is

15. .... member of the team is given a particular job to do.

- a) Every      b) Each      c) All      d) Both

16. .... of the three brothers has acar.

- a) None      b) Both      c) Half      d) Every

17. .... phone is smart.

- a) Both      b) Each      c) Half      d) All

18. Let's help ..... other.

- a) all      b) every      c) each      d) the whole

19. We spent the ..... day on beach.

- a) all      b) whole      c) either      d) neither



20. All of my friends ..... football.

a) like

b) likes

c) is liking

d) has liked

21. .... books have covers.

a) Half

b) Either

c) All

d) Neither

22. I visit my grandma ..... week.

a) neither

b) every

c) either

d) each

23. All Adel's friends ..... helping her yesterday.

a) were

b) are

c) is

d) was

24. Doctors see ..... patient separately.

a) each

b) all

c) every

d) half

25. .... of the four seasons is different.

a) Each

b) Whole

c) all

d) Every

26. She tried many dresses but ..... of them is her size.

a) all

b) every

c) none

d) ever

27. He ate the ..... cake this morning.

a) all

b) every

c) whole

d) too

28. We all went to the party but ..... of us enjoyed it.

a) either

b) every

c) none

d) both

all X none of  
each of

## تمارين علي الحددات Many, Much, A Little and A Few

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most of the news you told me ..... inaccurate.

- a) was      b) are      c) were      d) have been

2. He hasn't got ..... experience in sales.

- a) some      b) much      c) many      d) a lot of

3. I haven't seen ..... close friends in Sara's party.

- a) any      b) some      c) no      d) much

4. Father give me (just) ..... money.

- a) a few      b) a little      c) less      d) little

5. .... workers are absent than yesterday due to heavy rain.

- a) Less of the      b) More      c) A few      d) Less

6. How ..... coffee do you drink daily?

- a) many      b) often      c) much      d) long

7. How ..... coffee cups do you drink daily?

- a) many      b) often      c) much      d) long

8. There isn't ..... furniture in my new house.

- a) a lot      b) many      c) little      d) much

9. .... young people are interested in sport.

- a) Much      b) Little      c) A lot of      d) Fewer

10. She carried ..... luggage in her hands during her travel.

- a) an      b) some      c) many      d) any

11. I told the customs officer that I didn't have ..... luggage.

- a) many      b) plenty      c) much      d) few

12. I told the customs officer that I didn't have ..... luggage.

- a) many      b) plenty      c) any      d) few

13. There were ..... of old books in my father's office.

- a) lot      b) packets      c) little      d) lots

14. She hasn't got ..... friends so she feels lonely.

- a) much      b) some      c) many      d) little

15. She hasn't got ..... friends so she feels lonely.

- a) much      b) some      c) little      d) any

16. She has got ..... friends so she feels lonely.

- a) much      b) no      c) many      d) some

17. My father's advice ..... led me to success.

- a) has      b) were      c) are      d) have

18. There's almost ..... orange juice in the cup.

- a) no      b) a lot      c) any      d) some



19. There's hardly ..... orange juice in the cup.  
 a) no                      b) a lot                      c) any                      d) some
20. Too ..... supporters were in the stadium last match.  
 a) little                      b) many                      c) a lot of                      d) much
21. He answered ..... questions, so he couldn't pass.  
 a) many                      b) little                      c) much                      d) few
22. He answered ..... questions, so he could pass.  
 a) many                      b) little                      c) much                      d) few
23. Would you like to have ..... tea?  
 a) cup                      b) some                      c) many                      d) few
24. .... students were absent yesterday.  
 a) Much                      b) Several                      c) Little                      d) A lot
25. He rarely had ..... patience.  
 a) any                      b) some                      c) few                      d) many
26. .... of water has gone under this old bridge.  
 a) Much                      b) Several                      c) Lots                      d) Many
27. There's ..... evidence that he is the criminal.  
 a) many                      b) a lot of                      c) an                      d) several
28. There isn't ..... evidence that he is the criminal.  
 a) many                      b) a lot of                      c) much                      d) several
29. Our teacher did the sum without ..... difficulty.  
 a) few                      b) many                      c) any                      d) no
30. Mr. Mahmoud El naggar has just ..... friends and he is happy with them.  
 a) little                      b) few                      c) a few                      d) a little
31. Too ..... harm was done to the car after the accident.  
 a) many                      b) much                      c) a lot of                      d) little
32. .... harm was done to the car after the accident.  
 a) Many                      b) A number of                      c) An amount of                      d) Several
33. Our town has some big and ..... shops.  
 a) much                      b) little                      c) any                      d) few
34. Do you need ..... help? *عز*  
 a) many                      b) few                      c) some                      d) a lot
35. He has ..... pounds with him but they are not enough.  
 a) few *قليل*                      b) a few                      c) little                      d) a little
36. He has ..... money with him but they are not enough.  
 a) few                      b) a few                      c) little *قليل*                      d) a little



## Unit (10): Places of cultural interest

## Revision Vocabulary

temple	معبد	dam	سد / يبنى سد / يحتجز الماء
landmark	معلم بارز (أثر من الآثار) / علامة مميزة	dedicate to = devote to + V-ing	يكرس
landmark	طفرة (حدث هام) / تاريخي (صفة)	dedicated = devoted	مُخصص / مكرس / متفاني
myth = legend	أسطورة / خرافة	dedication	تفاني / إتقان / تكريس
tourist attractions	عوامل (أماكن) جذب للسياح	mausoleum	ضريح
heritage site = tourist site	موقع أثري	elaborate	متقن الصنع / متطور / مُركب / معقد
heritage	تراث / ميراث	all in all = in the whole	في العموم / بشكل عام
national heritage	التراث القومي	heal	يلتئم / يشفي
ruins	أطلال / بقايا دمار	healing	إلتئام (الجرح) / الشفاء
picturesque	خلاب / جميل / بديع المنظر / فاتن	healing process	عملية الإلتئام (الجرح) / الشفاء
column = pillar = post	عمود	preserve	يحفظ / يحفظ / * محمية (طبيعية)
monuments	الآثار	well-preserved	محفوظ / محفوظ جيداً
port	ميناء	Worth + V-ing	يستحق / قيمة
gateway	مدخل / بوابة / معبر	well-worth	يستحق / جدير بـ
remain	يبقى / يظل	the highlight	الجزء الأبرز / أفضل شيء
remains	بقايا / أطلال (الآثار)	moving = emotional	محرك للمشاعر (محرز)
places of interest	أماكن سياحية	not to be missed	لا يفوتك / ضروري
dig up - dug	يخرج من باطن الأرض / يعثر على	displays	معروضات
hand in	يسلم شيء لـ (شخص مسئول)	coffin	تابوت / كفن
pick up	يشترى بسعر جيد / * يلتقط (يشيل من ع الأرض)	artefacts	تحف (مصنوعات يدوية)
come across	يجد بالصدفة / يقابل بالصدفة	lighthouse	منارة / فئار
aware of	علي علم بـ / مدرك لـ / واعي بـ	must-see	شيء لابد من رؤيته
benefit from	يستفيد / فائدة	absolute must-see	حتما لابد من رؤيته
beneficial to	مفيد لـ	bargain	صفقة / سلعة سعرها جيد
explore	يستكشف (مكان)	sacred	مقدس
exploration	استكشاف	fort	حصن / قلعة
diversity	تنوع	inhabit	يسكن / يقطن
unearth = uncover	يكشف	archaeology	علم الآثار
essential	ضروري / جوهري	archaeologist	عالم آثار
mummy	مومياء	archaeological	أثري
bank	ضفة (نهر)	structure	بناء / هيكل / تركيب
contemporary = recent = current	معاصر / حديث	mark	يميز / علامة
mural = wall painting	لوحة جدارية	negotiate	يتفاوض
inspire	يلهم / يشجع	destruction	دمار / خراب
captivate	يأسر / يفتن	authentic = original = genuine	أصلي
parade	عرض (عسكري)	aspects	جوانب / مجالات
alleyway	زقاق	transport	ينقل
maze	متاهة	reign	فترة تولي (حكم / قيادة)
decipher	يفك شفرة	rule	يحكم (بلد)



الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

Great Expectations : Chapter (10)

Revision Vocabulary

acquit	يبرئ / يخلي سبيل	murder	يقتل
coincidence	صدفة	related	ذو قرابة / ذو صلة
knit	يغزل / يطرز / يخط	relations	أقارب
lawyer	محامي	legal	قانوني / شرعي
rowing	التجديف	tears	دموع
take my mind off	أزيع عن دماغي	homeless	مشرود / بلا ملوي

Choose the correct answer :-

- Five months ago, she was ..... of the charge of murder.  
a. rowed      b. murdered      c. acquitted      d. committed
- He bought his own boat because he liked ..... so much.  
a. rowing      b. acquitting      c. confessing      d. denying
- Who hadn't planned to meet at club, it was just a .....  
a. relations      b. coincidence      c. purse      d. tears
- No one guessed they were ..... because they looked so different.  
a. relations      b. coincidence      c. purse      d. tears
- LM My sister likes to make clothes out of wool; she is ..... a sweater for my brother.  
a. letting      b. knitting      c. hitting      d. sitting
- LM My aunt asked a famous ..... to help her with a legal problem. He defended her well in the court.  
a. farmer      b. judge      c. criminal      d. lawyer

Collocations and Expressions

do / conduct a survey	يجري بحث / دراسة	hold a sporting event	يقيم حدث رياضي
make a conclusion	يستنتج	hold a conference	يقيم مؤتمر
get lost : (got lost)	يتوه : (تاه)	negotiate the price	يتفاوض حول السعر
write down	يدون / يكتب	in favour of	لصالح / لمصلحة
in honour of	تكريما لـ	that's a good point	هذه نقطة (فكرة / وجهة نظر) جيدة
by chance = by luck	بالصدفة	stand on a rocky hilltop	يقع على قمة تل صخري
open-air market	سوق مكشوف	feel as though	يشعر كما لو
long = in length / high = in height / deep = in depth			الصفة = in + الاسم من الصفة
Seven Wonders of the Ancient World			عجائب العالم القديم السبعة

Prepositions

provide ... (for)	يوفر ... لـ	(on) the banks of	على ضفتي ...
short (for)	إختصار لـ	(on) time	في الوقت المحدد (بالضبط)
known (as)	معروف كـ	associated (with)	مصحوب بـ / مرتبط بـ
end (up in)	ينتهي به المطاف في	apart (from)	باستثناء



## راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

take <b>in</b> = trick	يخدع	take <b>to</b> = addict to	يحب (يدمن)
take <b>after</b> = look like	يشبه	take <b>over</b> = take on	يتولى المسؤولية
take <b>out</b>	يخلع (أسنان)	take <b>off</b>	يخلع ملابسه

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The dentist said that I had to have two teeth taken .....

- a) off                      b) on                      c) up                      **d) out**

## (الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد)

Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

come across	run into / find by chance / meet by chance	يجد (يقابل) بالصدفة
dig up	uncover / unearth	يجد / يكتشف / يخرج من باطن الأرض
elaborate	intricate / detailed / complicated	متقن الصنع / مشغول بعناية
myth	legend / fallacy / fable / fantasy	أسطورة / خرافة
aware	conscious / alert / acquainted	واعي / مدرك / علي علم ب
highlight	best part	الجزء الأبرز
moving	emotional / affecting / touching	محزن / محرك للمشاعر / مؤثر
well worth	beneficial / valuable / useful	يستحق / جدير ب

Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

contemporary	معاصر	old-fashioned / out of date	قديم
dedicated	متفاني / مكرس	indifferent/apathetic/unresponsive	غير مبالي

Choose the correct answer :-

1. "This is an **elaborate** system."

The adjective "**elaborate**" here is a synonym of .....

- a. simple                      **b. complicated**                      c. complex                      **d. b & c**
2. "He **dug up** some secret news." This means he ..... some secret news.
- a. told                      b. covered                      **c. uncovered**                      **d. unearthed**

3. Which of the following is an antonym of "**cotemporary**"?

- a. modern                      b. fashioned                      c. fashionable                      **d. old-fashioned**

## كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي

✗ hit the book = study hard

✗ give or take = plus or minus

يذاكر بجد

أكثر أو أقل / يزيد أو ينقص

1. **LM** It's about a one-hour drive to the factory, give or take a few minutes.

"Give or take" means "....."

- a. plus                      b. minus                      **c. plus or minus**                      **d. exactly**
2. **LM** If you don't **hit the books** this week, you won't pass the exam. This means: .....
- a. You should throw away the books                      **b. You should study hard.**
- c. You should buy the needful books.                      **d. You should postpone your exam.**



## كل يوم راجع مهارة : (البراجراف والمقال)

### الفرق بين الفقرة والمقال :-

- ✓ الفقرة (paragraph) هو مجموعة من (الجملة : sentences) عن موضوع واحد محدد.
- ✓ المقال (essay) هو مجموعة من (الفقرات : paragraphs) عن موضوع واحد محدد.
- ✓ في اول فقرة نترك فراغ (space / indent) يسع ل كلمة.

### مكونات الفقرة (البراجراف) :-

**Topic sentence** (main idea/opening/introduction/introductory/ beginning)

الجملة الرئيسية (الجملة الافتتاحية / المقدمة)

- ✓ هي (أول جملة) في البراجراف وتعبّر عن (الفكرة الرئيسية للبراجراف) : ما يدور عنه البراجراف.
  - ✓ هذه جملة توضع في بداية الموضوع تساعدك علي معرفة (الفكرة الرئيسية / المقدمة : **topic sentence**) :-
  - ⇒ That the ..... / In fact / As a matter of fact ..... في الواقع / في الحقيقة
  - ⇒ On the threshold of my speech, I'd like to say that ..... في مستهل حديثي أحب ان أقول ان
  - ⇒ First of all / Firstly / To begin with ..... في البداية
  - ⇒ It has been taken for granted that ..... من المسلم به ان
  - ⇒ It's undeniable fact that / No one can deny that ..... لا يمكن إنكار أن
  - ⇒ I'd like to shed light on ..... أحب ان ألقى الضوء علي
  - ⇒ Personally / In my view I think ..... شخصيا / من وجهة نظري (جملة اعطاء الرأي في المقدمة)
- EX: **It has been taken for granted that** reading is the food for mind.

**Supporting sentences** (bulk / body / context / middle)

الجملة الداعمة (العرض / الهيكل / النص / الوسط)

- ✓ يتكون بين (المقدمة والخاتمة) وهي جملة تدعم الفكرة الرئيسية (المقدمة) : يعني هي شرح وتوضيح ل (المقدمة).
- بإعطاء (أسباب وأمثلة ومعلومات هامة وتفاصيل أخرى) عن البراجراف ب (روابط / كلمات دالة). تقدر تقول هي (شرح باستفاضة للموضوع).

- ⇒ support the main point of the paragraph by giving reasons, examples, background information and details with transitions and signposting
- EX: Reading widens horizons and thought. It increases our information. ....

**Concluding sentence** (conclusion / clincher / closing sentence / end)

الجملة الختامية (الخاتمة / النهاية)

- ✓ هي (آخر جملة) التي تنهي البراجراف وهي (خلاصة **summary** ونظرة مختصرة **brief overview**) للموضوع.
- ✓ (الجملة الختامية) هي (الجملة الرئيسية : الاولى : المقدمة). بس مكتوبة (بصيغة أخرى : متعاد صياغتها : **restate**).
- ⇒ In the conclusion, we **restate** the **topic sentence / main idea**.

- ✓ هذه جملة توضع في نهاية الموضوع تساعدك علي معرفة (الجملة الختامية : **concluding sentence**) :-
  - ⇒ To sum up, ..... في الختام
  - ⇒ To conclude / In conclusion / In short / In brief ..... والخلاصة
  - ⇒ In a nut shell ..... باختصار
  - ⇒ All in all / On the whole ..... وبصفة عامة
  - ⇒ Finally / Lastly / last but not least / Eventually ..... وأخيرا
- EX: **To sum up**, there are many benefits for practicing sports regularly.

## مكونات المقال :-

- ١- البراجراف الاول : (المقدمة) : Introduction paragraph
- ٢- البراجراف الثاني (الوسط) : Body paragraph
- ٣- البراجراف الثالث والآخر (النهاية) : Conclusion paragraph

- ✓ في أول برآجراف اسمه : (برآجراف المقدمة : introduction paragraph) :-
- أول جملة فيه (الجملة الافتتاحية : topic sentence) تسمى (الجملة الجاذبة لانتباه القارئ : hook).
- وهي جملة واحدة (تجذب إنتباه القارئ).
- ⇒ The hook is the first sentence in the introductory paragraph that (grabs / captures - catches the reader's attention
- آخر جملة فيه تسمى (الاطروحة : thesis sentence). وهي جملة واحدة.
- وهي أننا نطرح جملة لمناقشتها في (الوسط).
- ⇒ Thesis sentence is the the last sentence in the introductory paragraph.
- ✓ في ثاني برآجراف (برآجراف الوسط : body paragraph) :
- أول جملة فيه (الجملة الافتتاحية : topic sentence) ترتبط وشرح ل (جملة الاطروحة) التي نهت البراجراف الاول (برآجراف المقدمة).
- ⇒ The topic/first sentence in the body paragraph relates to the thesis sentence.
- ✓ في (الجملة الختامية : conclusion sentence) كل برآجراف نضع جملة (تخلص summarises) موضوع البراجراف وتنقلنا ل البراجراف القادم.

## أنواع المقال :-

- ✓ (المقال الإقناعي persuasive essay) فيه الكاتب يقطع القارئ ويؤثر عليه. بعرض الموضوع بالحقائق والمنطق.
- ⇒ Persuasive essay is to influence/convince others with facts, logic and reasoning.
- ✓ (المقال الوصفي descriptive essay) فيه الكاتب يصف التفاصيل وكأن الكاتب يرسم صورة. ويركز علي الصفة.
- ⇒ Descriptive essay is to use vivid details واضحة to give the reader a mental image of a person, place, thing, event, or idea. (like painting a picture)
- ⇒ Adjective is necessary in writing descriptive essay.
- ✓ (المقال الجدلي Argumentative essay) وهو مقال الأفكار المتناقضة (المزايا والعيوب).
- وهو متشابه جدا مع (المقال الإقناعي : persuasive essay) لانه يقدم الحقائق والمنطق.
- ⇒ Argumentative essay is also : for and against / in favour of and opponent / advantages and disadvantages / merits and demerits / pros and cons / benefits and drawbacks / opportunities and obstacles essay.
- ✓ (المقال القصصي narrative essay) وهو مقال يروي قصة قصيرة.
- ⇒ Narrative essay is some sort of a story (tells a story).
- ✓ (المقال التفسيري explanatory/expository essay) وهو مقال يشرح اسباب الشيء و تفسير لماذا ....
- ⇒ Expository essay explains things and state facts and is described a how-to essay.
- ✓ (المقال التأملّي reflective essay) وهو مقال يشرح مجموعة من أفكار الفرد وخبراته.
- ⇒ Reflective essay is a collection of one's thoughts and experiences.



✓ (المقال النقدي critical/review essay) وهو مقال يقيم مزايا وعيوب (كتاب / رواية / فيلم) ومن الكتابة الإبداعية الذي يحلل الفكرة.

⇒ Review / critical essay is to evaluate the merits and demerits of a (book/novel/film) and it is a form of creative writing which analyses an idea.

### قبل كتابة المقال :-

✓ نحدد الموضوع الذي نكتب عنه وهذا يسمى (ما قبل الكتابة : preview : نحدد الموضوع الذي نكتب عنه).

⇒ Preview : is to decide on a topic to write.

✓ نخطط الأفكار في (قائمة : listing) أو (العنقودية / تجميع الأفكار : cluster gram / clustering)

⇒ Clustering : is like drawing a word map; ideas arranged in a visual image.

✓ ثم (الكتابة الحرة : free writing) أو (العصف الذهني : brainstorming).

⇒ Brainstorming : is like free writing and it can help get thoughts flowing and plays a vital role in pre-writing to gather data.

### خلي بالك من خصائص المقال الجيد :

✓ (الترابط التسلسل / الزمني : coherence) : هو التدفق السلس والمنطقي للجمل التي في الفقرة. والمقال الجيد والفقرة الجيدة يجب أن تركز على فكرة واحدة مترابطة وجمل مترابطة منطقياً. والترابط يتحقق عندما نستخدم روابط انتقالية وكلمات دلالية واضحة لربط الجمل.

⇒\* Coherence is smooth and logical flow of sentences in a paragraph.

⇒ A well-written paragraph should focus on a single coherent idea and consists of logically connected sentences.

⇒ Coherence is achieved when clear transitions and signposting link sentences.

### Choose the correct answer :

1. .... development of education is a must to keep up with the latest technology.

- a) There                      b) It is                      c) That the                      d) There is

2. What is the last paragraph in the essay called?

- a) conclusion                      b) body paragraph                      c) Irrelevant sentence                      d) introduction

3. .... is like free writing and plays a vital role in pre-writing to gather data..

- a) Brainstorming                      b) Clustering                      c) listing                      d) Questioning

4. What is a hook?

- a) An opening a sentence that captures the reader's attention.  
b) The last sentence of a paragraph.  
c) A tool used to catch a thought.  
d) A boring sentence.

5. A supporting sentence is .....

- a) a series of paragraphs about one main idea, or point.  
b) signal words that help organize a paragraph, using time order or listing order.  
c) reasons, examples, and other details that support the main point.  
d) a way to conclude the paragraph.

6. I'd like to shed light on the brain; it is the most important organ in body.

This is a ..... to an essay about the brain.

- a) conclusion      b) supporting      c) topic      d) middle

7. Where should the thesis statement be restated?

- a) In the introduction      b) In the conclusion.  
c) In the body paragraphs.      d) After conclusion.

8. What is an essay?

- a) A group of irrelevant sentences.  
b) A group of sentences about one main idea.  
c) A group of ideas in a paragraph.  
d) A group of paragraphs about one main idea.

9. .... is like drawing a word map; ideas are arranged in a visual image.

- a) Brainstorming      b) Clustering      c) Free writing      d) Questioning

10. To sum up, we must find a solution to this serious phenomenon.

This is a ..... to an essay about bullying.

- a) conclusion      b) supporting      c) topic      d) middle

11. What is a paragraph?

- a) A group of ideas in a report.  
b) A group of sentences about one main idea.  
c) A group of topics about one main idea.  
d) A group of irrelevant sentences.

12. .... writing is intended to influence / convince others.

- a) Descriptive      b) Expository      c) Narrative      d) Persuasive

13. A topic sentence is . ....

- a) reasons, examples, and other details that support the main point of the paragraph.  
b) a sentence with signal words that increase effectiveness of organization.  
c) a way to conclude the paragraph so the reader knows what the entire paragraph was about.  
d) the sentence that expresses the main point, or idea, of a paragraph.

14. What term is used to describe a how-to essay?

- a) Persuasive      b) Descriptive      c) Expository      d) Narrative

15. .... is smooth and logical flow of sentences in a paragraph.

- a) coherence      b) brainstorm      c) clustering      d) publishing



## Grammar

## الأنواع الناقصة في الاستنتاج

- ١- في المضارع نستخدم (must / can't + inf) للتعبير عن التأكيد.  
٢- في الماضي نستخدم (must / can't + have + P.P) للتعبير عن التأكيد.

- ⇒ **must** متأكد (أيوا) : (أكيد ١٠٠% ان الشيء يحدث ويحدث)  
⇒ **can't** متأكد (لا) : (أكيد ١٠٠% ان الشيء لا يحدث ولا حدث / مستحيل)  
**EX:** This watch **is** made of gold. I **must be** expensive  
**EX:** Ali **was** punished. He **must have made** a mistake.  
**EX:** It **can't be** a giraffe; it **has** a short neck.  
**EX:** He **can't have finished** reading the book. He **bought** it **yesterday** and it's very long.  
✓ I'm (sure - certain) / surely / certainly / definitely ⇒ (must / can't)  
✓ \* It's impossible & only & too + صفة ⇒ (can't)  
**EX:** It's **only** 4:30 now , the match **can't have begun** yet.  
**EX:** he **can't** lift these metal bars. They are **too** heavy.

- ٣- للتعبير عن عدم التأكيد في المضارع نستخدم (may / might + inf).  
وفي الماضي نستخدم (may / might + have + P.P).

- ⇒ **may / might** غير متأكد : محتمل / ربما / مش عارف (٥٠% أيوا - ٥٠% لا)  
**EX:** He **might / may be** at home. I'm not sure.  
**EX:** He **might have rung** yesterday evening. I **don't know**.  
✓ I'm (not sure - not certain) / likely / perhaps / probably / It's probable /  
It's possible / I don't think so - believe so / I don't know / I can't remember /  
I am hoping / I have no idea / I haven't decided yet ⇒ (may / might)

## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

- He is a good doctor , he ..... a clever student.  
a) must be      b) can't be      c) must have been      d) can't have been
- The car broke down again; it ..... well yesterday.  
a) can't repair      b) must repair      c) can't have repaired      d) can't have been repaired
- LM** He ..... on time because he missed his usual early train.  
a) had to arrive      b) must have arrived  
c) won't have arrived      d) couldn't have arrived
- LM** Ann hasn't arrived yet. She ..... have missed the train. Who knows?  
a) should      b) might      c) can't      d) must
- LM** Amin travelled to work by bus. He ..... by train as usual.  
a) must have travelled      b) had to travel  
c) could have travelled      d) might have travelled
- LM** Amany did not come to school yesterday. She ..... have been ill. I will contact her to know the reason for her absence.  
a) can't      b) must      c) shouldn't      d) might
- LM** Which of the following doesn't show uncertainty?  
a) Hatim may arrive on time.      b) Hala must have passed the exam.  
c) The player might have been chosen for the first team.  
d) I'm not sure whether Hani will attend the party or not.

إيضاح → نفي - نفي



إعتاد على. Used to + inf.

✓ لما نتكلم عن (العادات في الماضي) نستخدم (used to + م) ومعناها (اعتاد علي فعل شيء في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الان. يعني : حاجة كنت بعملها زمان ودلوقتي لا) و بيكون معناها جملة زي (when I was ....).

مصدر + used to + الفاعل العاقل ⇒

(النفي) .... مصدر + didn't + use to + مصدر (السؤال) .... مصدر + did + use to ⇒

EX: He used to smoke, when he was a pupil in primary school.

EX: I didn't use to play computer games, but now I do.

EX: Where did you use to live?

✓ علشان (used to + م) معناها (اعتاد علي فعل شيء في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الان).  
ومن هنا (used to + م) = (لم يعد : no longer / no more / any longer / any more).  
خلي بالك الاربع كلمات دي بتدل علي (المضارع : نفي للعادة في المضارع).  
ومعروف ان (no : no longer / no more) بتيجي مع الجملة (المثبتة).  
يبقي بعدهم (مضارع مثبت ب s او بدون s).  
إنما (any : any longer / any more) بتيجي مع الجملة (المنفية).  
يبقي معناها (مضارع منفي ب : don't / doesn't).

EX: He used to smoke. = He no longer smokes.

EX: He used to smoke. = He doesn't smoke any more.

✓ علشان (used to + م) معناها (اعتاد علي فعل شيء في الماضي ولم يعد يفعله الان).  
ومن هنا (used to + م) لوجاب معناها (but now).  
ف (but) تدل علي (العكس / النفي) وكمان (now) تدل علي (المضارع). مع بعض يبقي (مضارع منفي).  
يعني (don't / doesn't). ودا بيكون مع كل الافعال الا فعل واحد : (be) ف نفيه (amn't / isn't / aren't).  
EX: He used to play football but he doesn't now / now he doesn't.  
EX: He used to be a trader but he isn't now / now he isn't.

بس خلي بالك ان (but) بتدل علي (التناقض) يعني : لو قبلها جملة (مثبتة) هيبقي بعدها جملة (منفية) والعكس وكمان (but now) يبقي (تناقض مرتبط بالمضارع) سواء (اثبات او نفي).

EX: He used to play football but now he doesn't.

EX: He didn't use to play football but now he plays (does).

✓ معروف ان (used to + م) عادة كانت بتحصل في (الماضي) ودلوقتي (لا) : صح تمام.  
إنما لو العادة مازالت مستمرة يبقي (used to + V-ing) (am, is, are / get / become / grow + used to + V-ing).  
وكمان معروف ان (V-ing = اسم = صفة + اسم = ضمير يحل محل اسم).

EX: He is used to walking to work.

EX: He is used to sport.

EX: African people are used to hot weather.

EX: He didn't like Chinese food when he was young, but he is used to it now.

- في العادات في الماضي : (used to + م = would + م) مع أفعال (الحركة : التي بتتفع في الاستمرار). الاتنين صح.  
- مع أفعال (الحالة : التي مش بتتفع في الاستمرار) ناخذ (used to) مش (would).  
- لو ذكر (عدد في الماضي او كلمات دالة علي درس الماضي) بلاش (used to) وبلاش (would) اختار (الماضي).  
EX: When I visited my uncle's farm, I used to walk / would walk in the fields.  
EX: When I was young, I used to have a bike. X: would have  
EX: I went there three times last year. X: used to / would go



# Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

## Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar devotes all his life to ..... students.  
a. teach                      b. teaching                      c. taught                      d. teaches
2. The discovery of a vaccine for coronavirus will be the most important .....  
a. pillar                      b. landmark *لأخرة*                      c. mausoleum                      d. bargain
3. The end of the war was a ..... decision.  
a. preserved                      b. landmark                      c. initial *أول*                      d. ramp
4. This story is interesting, it is worth .....  
a. read                      b. to read                      c. reading                      d. reads
5. Anees Mansour always wrote a daily ..... in Al-Akhbar newspaper.  
a. temple                      b. column *عمود*                      c. gateway                      d. artefact
6. Mazen ..... very well in the job interview.  
a. handed in                      b. picked up                      c. came across *يتراءى*                      d. dug up
7. Those who hate you will always.....your past searching for something against you.  
a. devote to                      b. dig up *يستخرج*                      c. appreciate                      d. honour
8. The area of land that conserves wildlife or plants is a natural .....  
a. environment                      b. surroundings *محيط*                      c. preserve                      d. deserve
9. Helen keller's life story is a ..... to what can people endure *تتحمل / تقاسي*.  
a. sign                      b. signal                      c. monument                      d. leading
10. The detective *مخبر* ..... evidence behind killing the old lady.  
a. handed in                      b. picked up                      c. unearthed                      d. researched
11. His low marks ..... his chance of getting into a good university.  
a. destroyed                      b. upgraded *أصل*                      c. ruined *فك*                      d. damaged

## Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

12. *there* ..... used to be a large villa here.  
a) Their *كانت*                      b) There                      c) Those                      d) These
2. A knife is used to ..... things.  
a) cut                      b) cutting                      c) cuts                      d) be cut
3. He was in the habit of getting up early. This means that he ..... up early.  
a) used to get                      b) is used to getting                      c) didn't use to get                      d) did used to get
4. He is in the habit of getting up early. This means that he ..... up early.  
a) used to get                      b) is used to getting                      c) didn't use to get                      d) did used to get
5. When we were children we ..... buy Ghazl El-Banat sweets.  
a) always eat                      b) used to always                      c) always used to                      d) used always to
6. When we were children we ..... buy Ghazl El-Banat sweets.  
a) always eat                      b) would always                      c) always would                      d) used always to
7. He was used to smoking, but now he .....  
a) is no longer                      b) no longer is                      c) no longer does                      d) does no longer
8. **LM** My father..... to work when he was young, but nowadays he uses his car.  
a) would always walk                      b) didn't use to walk  
c) is used to walking                      d) always walks
9. **LM** He no longer smokes as he. ....  
a) would do                      b) used to do  
c) is used to doing                      d) never used to do
10. **LM** Yasser would always go to the cinema on Monday. This means: ..... on Monday.  
a) He is used to going to the cinema.                      b) He used to go to the cinema.  
c) He always goes to the cinema.                      d) He never went to the cinema.



## Unit Ten

### Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Archaeologists found some ..... of an ancient Roman temple buried in the sand.  
a. myth                      b. bargain                      c. tourist attraction                      d. remains
2. Eiffel Tower is France's best-known .....  
a. port                      b. remain                      c. landmark                      d. column
3. Paris is a ..... city. It is well-planned and beautifully designed.  
a. picturesque                      b. dedicated                      c. devoted                      d. ugly
4. I have to ..... the documents to the manager in person.  
a. pick up                      b. hand in                      c. come across                      d. dig up
5. This is just a ..... ; nothing like that happened before.  
a. myth                      b. heritage site                      c. tourist attraction                      d. remain
6. Massive concrete ..... support the roof of the building.  
a. cellars                      b. traditions                      c. ramps                      d. pillars
7. Anees Mansour used to write a daily ..... in Al-Ahram.  
a. port                      b. temple                      c. landmark                      d. column
8. This is an original spare part قطعة غير. Where have you ..... it up.  
a. picked                      b. handed                      c. come                      d. dug
9. The Great Pyramid is Egypt's best-known .....  
a. myth                      b. bargain                      c. tourist attraction                      d. remains
10. Port said is one of Egypt's important .....  
a. ports                      b. temples                      c. banks                      d. columns
11. These temples were ..... to ancient Egyptian gods.  
a. picturesque                      b. dedicated                      c. devoted                      d. b & c
12. While I was searching in some documents. I ..... a photo of my grandfather.  
a. picked on                      b. handed in                      c. came across                      d. buried up
13. According the UNESCO, Saint Catherine is a World .....  
a. Myth                      b. Heritage Site                      c. Fable                      d. Remains
14. El-karnak ..... is a world-famous monument.  
a. port                      b. temple                      c. landmark                      d. column
15. I ..... the small tree to move it. It had deep roots.  
a. picked of                      b. handed in                      c. came across                      d. dug up
16. As a student, All my time is ..... to my study.  
a. aware                      b. authentic                      c. intricate                      d. dedicated
17. Moving and ..... are synonyms.  
a. beneficial                      b. emotional                      c. absolute                      d. royal
18. The mother's tears were so ..... that I myself started to cry.  
a. elaborate                      b. initial                      c. medieval                      d. moving
19. Salah's incredible goal was the ..... of the match.  
a. alleyway                      b. dam                      c. highlight                      d. maze
20. Planning is ..... to achieving one's goal.  
a. practical                      b. entire                      c. preserved                      d. essential



21. The Ancient Egyptians used a special way to ..... the dead bodies.  
a. preserve      b. dam      c. display      d. highlight
22. Ancient Egyptian mummies were ..... in a special process.  
a. original      b. preserved      c. royal      d. well-paid
23. The final match is an absolute ..... Don't miss it.  
a. parade      b. must-see      c. mausoleum      d. coffin
24. This is a/an ..... digital system that needs an expert to deal with.  
a. elaborate      b. easy      c. medieval      d. moving
25. The Suez Canal is a major ..... to world trade.  
a. aspect      b. healing      c. gateway      d. procession
26. This event is ..... Everybody is careful to share in it.  
a. well worth      b. mysterious      c. prehistoric      d. missed
27. A good citizen is ..... of the challenges that face their society.  
a. aware      b. authentic      c. intricate      d. dedicated
28. The giant ..... controlled the flow of the river.  
a. alleyway      b. dam      c. highlight      d. maze
29. Following a good diet is surely ..... to your health.  
a. beneficial      b. emotional      c. absolute      d. royal
30. The ..... was ready for burying the dead person.  
a. parade      b. must-see      c. mystery      d. coffin
31. Taking a rest after the operation is an important part of the ..... process.  
a. aspect      b. healing      c. gateway      d. procession
32. These monuments are part of our national .....  
a. document      b. expedition      c. fort      d. heritage
33. The lighthouse of Alexandria no longer exists. Its ..... were found under water.  
a. reigns      b. wonders      c. ruins      d. observatories
34. Human life is ..... All religions prohibits تحرم any aggression اعتداء against it.  
a. sacred      b. elaborate      c. dedicated      d. explored
35. This area of the forest hasn't ever been ..... No one has gone there ever.  
a. appreciated      b. carved      c. classified      d. explored
36. A civilized citizen respects the ..... of opinions. People do not agree on everything.  
a. chance      b. diversity      c. bank      d. evidence
37. This ..... was built to protect the palace.  
a. document      b. expedition      c. fort      d. heritage
38. The ancient Egyptians ..... the Nile Valley and the Delta thousands of years ago.  
a. surrounded      b. unearthed      c. marked      d. inhabited
39. No one can deny the effect of the internet on ..... society.  
a. contemporary      b. official      c. preserved      d. archaeological
40. A/An ..... is a painting that painted on a wall, either inside or outside a building.  
a. lighthouse      b. mummy      c. mural      d. archaeology
41. This tower ..... the city centre.  
a. surrounds      b. unearths      c. marks      d. inhabits
42. In the past, ..... were uses mainly to guide ships.  
a. lighthouses      b. mummies      c. murals      d. archaeologies

43. There're so many places of ..... to visit in Aswan.  
**a. structure                      b. interest                      c. Muse                      d. sculpture**
44. A team of archaeologists have ..... a royal tomb full of golden antiquities.  
**a. surrounded                      b. unearthed                      c. marked                      d. inhabited**
45. A/An ..... is the dead body of a human preserved in a special process.  
**a. lighthouse                      b. mummy                      c. mural                      d. archaeology**
46. The Valley of the Kings is on the west ..... of the Nile.  
**a. chance                      b. diversity                      c. bank                      d. evidence**
47. .... is the study of ancient societies by examining what remains of their buildings, graves tools etc.  
**a. Lighthouse                      b. Mummy                      c. Mural                      d. Archaeology**
48. The Great Pyramid is the tallest ..... the ancient Egyptians built.  
**a. structure                      b. tradition                      c. for                      d. pillar**
49. Thousands of people joined the ..... celebrating the National Day.  
**a. parade                      b. must-see                      c. mausoleum                      d. coffin**
50. I got lost into the ..... of narrow streets of old Cairo.  
**a. mausoleum                      b. dam                      c. highlight                      d. maze**
51. We hope Egypt will soon achieve progress in all ..... of science and technology.  
**a. aspects                      b. healings                      c. transports                      d. processions**
52. Don't let day dreams أحلام اليقظة ..... you to a world of unreal success.  
**a. transport                      b. inspire                      c. tour                      d. survey**
53. President Sadat ..... Egypt for about ten years.  
**a. categorized                      b. deciphered                      c. established                      d. ruled**

### Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions

54. A useful survey has been ..... by a team of researchers.  
**a. done                      b. got                      c. conducted                      d. a & c**
55. In open-air markets, sellers expect their price to be .....  
**a. shown                      b. got                      c. negotiated                      d. held**
56. Our organisation is ..... an educational conference next summer.  
**a. being                      b. getting                      c. doing                      d. holding**
57. Mazen ..... lost in the city centre.  
**a. did                      b. got                      c. negotiated                      d. help**
58. This wonderful place is a/an ..... must-see.  
**a. absolute                      b. salute                      c. solute                      d. sore**
59. ...., I agree with all that you have suggested doing.  
**a. All                      b. All at all                      c. All in all                      d. To all**
60. IT is a ..... for the Information Technology.  
**a. abbreviate                      b. shot                      c. short                      d. long**



## Unit Ten : Grammar

### تمارين علي الإستنتاج

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I ..... written the number incorrectly. I have just called a hospital not the restaurant.

- a) **must have**    b) **may have**    c) **can't have**    d) **should have**

2. The plates are empty. Maha ..... eaten her lunch.

- a) **must have**    b) **may have**    c) **can't have**    d) **can't be**

3. The man ..... her because he was on holiday in Spain in that time.

- a) **must kill**    b) **must have killed**    c) **can't have killed**    d) **may have killed**

4. I ..... enrol on a driving course. I haven't decided yet.

- a) **must**    b) **might**    c) **need**    d) **should**

5. They are wearing heavy clothes. It ..... be summer there.

- a) **shouldn't**    b) **can't**    c) **mustn't**    d) **must**

6. He ..... near here because he comes to work by bus.

- a) **can't live**    b) **must live**    c) **can't have lived**    d) **must have lived**

7. He ..... near here because he comes to work on foot.

- a) **can't live**    b) **must live**    c) **can't have lived**    d) **must have lived**

8. Our phone is rining. Dad ..... the phone bill.

- a) **can't pay**    b) **can't have paid**    c) **should pay**    d) **must have paid**

9. Who knocks on the door? - I don't know. He ..... our father.

- a) **can't**    b) **has to**    c) **might**    d) **must**

10. There is a lot of traffic on the roads today, so we ..... late.

- a) **ought to be**    b) **can't be**    c) **might be**    d) **must have been**

11. The football players look very sad. They ..... won the match.

- a) **can't have**    b) **could have**    c) **must have**    d) **might not**

12. You ..... climb that mountain unless you have an oxygen cylinder.

- a) **must**    b) **might**    c) **might**    d) **can't**

13. Jana walked past me without speaking. She ..... me.

- a) **might have seen**    b) **must have seen**  
c) **can't have seen**    d) **should have seen**

14. It was impossible to know how that building was burnt. You ..... how that happened.

- a) **must know**    b) **might have known**  
c) **can't have known**    d) **must have known**

15. A: He's only been in the laboratory for ten minutes.

B: Surely he ..... have finished the experiment.

- a) **must**    b) **can't**    c) **might**    d) **may**

16. Hany told me that he was born on February 31, but there isn't a day 31.

He ..... have been mistaken.

- a) **will**    b) **must**    c) **should**    d) **can't**

17. A: I can't remember where the remote control is, Mona.

B: It's not sure. You ..... have put it somewhere.

- a) **mustn't**    b) **can't**    c) **might**    d) **won't**

18. The pharaohs built the pyramids. They ..... very powerful men.

- a) must be      b) must have been      c) are      d) can't have been

19. A: Look, Ahmed's car is outside his house.

B: He ..... have been at home.

- a) must      b) can't      c) might      d) may

20. Ali ..... have attended the lecture this morning. He is ill in hospital!

- a) can't      b) mustn't      c) might      d) must

21. I phoned you yesterday but you didn't answer. I think you ..... asleep.

- a) can't have been      b) would have been  
c) must have been      d) should have been

22. Ahmed is a professor of Chemistry. He must ..... very clever at school.

- a) be      b) have been      c) have      d) had been

23. He has a big villa and servants. He ..... be poor.

- a) can't      b) shouldn't      c) must      d) won't

24. He ..... been injured. There was blood on his face.

- a) can't have      b) mustn't have      c) must have      d) should have

25. The exam ..... been very difficult. All the class got the full mark.

- a) can't have      b) could have      c) might have      d) must have

26. Perhaps, I ..... left my money at the office yesterday.

- a) must have      b) might have      c) can't have      d) can have

27. No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he ..... gone to see his uncle.

- a) might have      b) must have      c) can't have      d) must

28. Are you sure he stole the money? – he ..... have. I am not sure.

- a) must      b) can't      c) should      d) may

29. I can't find my book. I ..... it on the bus.

- a) may leave      b) may have left      c) must leave      d) can't have left

30. Ali is well organized. He ..... have forgotten the meeting date. He has written it in his diary.

- a) must      b) mustn't      c) can't      d) might

31. The thieves ..... in through the window. Look – it's still close.

- a) must have come      b) must come      c) can't have come      d) may come

32. He drives an expensive car. He ..... have a good job.

- a) should      b) can't      c) might      d) must



## Used to + inf & Would + inf. تمارين علي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... live in the countryside when I was young.  
a) uses to      b) used to      c) isn't used to      d) is using to
2. Where did you ..... to live when you were young?  
a) used      b) use      c) using      d) uses
3. I ..... living in the countryside.  
a) uses to      b) used to      c) am used to      d) am using
4. I used to live in the countryside but now I .....  
a) do      b) don't      c) amn't      d) didn't
5. When Sara was twelve, she ..... learn drawing in her free time.  
a) use to      b) used      c) uses to      d) would
6. Mazen used to play basketball. He ..... does it.  
a) any longer      b) no longer      c) usually      d) am used to
7. Mazen used to play basketball. He doesn't play it .....  
a) any longer      b) no longer      c) usually      d) am used to
8. Mr. Mahmoud El naggar is used to ..... his students.  
a) helps      b) helping      c) helped      d) helper
9. When I was young, I ..... have a car.  
a) use to      b) used to      c) uses to      d) would
10. .... used to be a cinema in our town in the past.  
a) Their      b) There      c) Those      d) These
11. Marawan used to be naughty, but now he .....  
a) isn't      b) doesn't      c) wasn't      d) didn't
12. He ..... reading Al-Ahram newspaper.  
a) is used for      b) used to      c) is in the habit of      d) no longer
13. He ..... reading Al-Ahram newspaper.  
a) is used for      b) used to      c) is used to      d) no longer
14. He was in the habit of ..... up early but now he doesn't.  
a) get      b) gets      c) got      d) getting
15. Adel ..... stories for children. He still writes for them.  
a) didn't use to write      b) wrote  
c) used to write      d) is used to writing
16. When I was young, I ..... walk to school.  
a) used to often      b) often used to      c) often use to      d) use to often
17. When I was young, I ..... walk to school.  
a) would often      b) often would      c) often use to      d) use to often
18. When he was young, he ..... be thin.  
a) use to      b) used to      c) uses to      d) would
19. He ..... healthy food.  
a) is used to      b) was used      c) is used for      d) no longer
20. He gets used to ..... early.  
a) sleep      b) slept      c) sleeping      d) sleeps

21. When I was a child, I ..... drink milk, but I drink it now.

- a) didn't use to    b) am not used to    c) use to    d) used to

22. When I was a child, I ..... drink milk, but I don't drink it now.

- a) didn't use to    b) am not used to    c) use to    d) used to

23. He didn't use to gain weight, but now he .....

- a) does    b) gain    c) gained    d) gaining

24. Scissors are used to ..... cloth.

- a) cut    b) cutting    c) cuts    d) be cut

25. Scissors are used for ..... cloth.

- a) cut    b) cutting    c) cuts    d) be cut

26. He ..... football match. He never stops this habit.

- a) used to watch    b) didn't use to watch  
c) is used to watching    d) no longer watches

27. My brother ..... have long hair, but now doesn't.

- a) was    b) didn't use to    c) used to    d) uses to

28. My brother ..... have long hair, but now he has.

- a) was    b) didn't use to    c) used to    d) uses to

29. I didn't use to drink tea when I was young, but I ..... it now.

- a) used to    b) use to    c) am used to    d) uses to

30. I ..... Hany yesterday.

- a) used to meet    b) didn't use to meet  
c) met    d) was met

31. He doesn't smoke ..... longer.

- a) too    b) any    c) no    d) not

32. .... Shady used to going to library?

- a) Did    b) Has    c) Does    d) Is

33. .... Shady use to go to library when he was young?

- a) Did    b) Has    c) Does    d) Is

34. Did Shady ..... to going to library?

- a) used    b) use    c) get used    d) using

35. Last year, I ..... three courses in finance.

- a) used to do    b) got used to doing  
c) did    d) was used to doing



## Unit (11): Find your culture

### Revision Vocabulary

<b>monolingual</b>	أحادي اللغة	<b>ancestors</b>	أجداد / أسلاف
<b>bilingual</b>	ثنائي اللغة / شخص يتحدث لغتين	<b>embrace</b>	يتبنى / يعتنق / * يعانق (يحتضن)
<b>multilingual</b>	متعدد اللغات	<b>pride</b>	فخر
<b>multicultural</b>	متعدد الثقافات	<b>proud</b>	فخور
<b>multiculturalism</b>	تعدد الثقافات	<b>roots</b>	جذور / الأصل / المنشأ
<b>dominant</b>	مهمين / مسيطر / سائد	<b>homesick</b>	شاعر بالحنين للوطن
<b>identify</b>	يتعرف علي / يحدد هوية	<b>homesickness</b>	الحنين للوطن
<b>identity</b>	الهوية (الشخصية)	<b>expatriate</b>	مغترب
<b>mother tongue</b>	اللغة الأم / لغة المنشأ	<b>end up</b>	ينتهي الي
<b>deep-seated</b>	راسخ / متأصل	<b>fortunate = lucky</b>	محظوظ
<b>clear-cut</b>	واضح / محدد	<b>humour</b>	الفكاهة / السخرية
<b>well-known</b>	معروف / مشهور	<b>sense of humour</b>	حس الفكاهة
<b>well-balanced</b>	متزن عاطفياً ونفسياً	<b>passionate about</b>	متحمس / شغوف +
<b>widely spoken</b>	يتم التحدث بها علي نطاق واسع	<b>raise</b>	يربّي
<b>benefits</b>	فوائد	<b>forum</b>	منتدى / ندوة
<b>contemporary</b> = recent	معاصر / حالي	<b>by chance = by luck</b>	بالصدفة / بال حظ
<b>beneficial</b>	مفيد	<b>estimate</b>	يقدر
<b>precious</b>	غالي / ثمين / نفيس	<b>isolated from</b>	منعزل عن
<b>inhabitants</b>	سكان / مقيمين	<b>official</b>	رسمي
<b>initiative</b>	مبادرة	<b>sociolinguist</b>	عالم لغوي إجتماعي
<b>gap</b>	فجوة / ثغرة	<b>majority</b>	أغلبية
<b>thanks to + V-ing</b>	بفضل / بسبب	<b>minority</b>	أقلية
<b>convince</b>	يقنع	<b>attention</b>	إنتباه / إهتمام
<b>survive</b>	ينجو (من حادث) / يبقى حياً	<b>last for</b>	يستمر لمدة
<b>dialect = accent</b>	لهجة / لكنة	<b>unique</b>	فريد من نوعه
<b>characteristics</b>	سمات / خصائص	<b>date back</b>	يعود تاريخه الي
<b>satisfaction</b>	القناعة / الرضا	<b>classify = catagorise</b>	يصنف
<b>keen on = interested in = fond of</b>	مهتم ب	<b>commemorate</b>	يحيي ذكرى / يُذكر ب
<b>oasis</b>	واحة	<b>including</b>	مشمئلا / متضمنا (من ضمنهم)
<b>immigrant</b>	مهاجر	<b>chopsticks</b>	عيدان تناول الطعام (الصيني)

### الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (11)

### Revision Vocabulary

<b>deliberately</b>	عمداً / عن قصد	<b>spark</b>	شرارة / إلهامية
<b>faint</b>	يفغمي عليه	<b>spoil - ed (spoilt)</b>	يفسد
<b>fiercely</b>	بعنف	<b>steamer</b>	باخرة
<b>guide</b>	يرشد	<b>tie up</b>	يربط / يُقيد
<b>acquit</b>	يبرأ (بطلع براءة)	<b>put out flames</b>	يطفيء ألهبة النار
<b>handle</b>	مقبض	<b>incredible = unbelievable</b>	رائع / لا يصدق
<b>bandage</b>	يضمد (جراح)	<b>pale</b>	شاحب / باهت
<b>scream</b>	يصرخ	<b>tight</b>	ضيق



## Choose the correct answer :-

- The little girl ..... loudly when she saw a rat in her bedroom!  
a. tied      b. screamed      c. spoilt      d. fainted
- While riding his bike, Adham fell on his head and .....  
a. tied      b. screamed      c. spoilt      d. fainted
- We travelled from France to Italy by .....  
a. handle      b. spark      c. steamer      d. guide
- One ..... can cause a big fire.  
a. handle      b. spark      c. steamer      d. guide
- Try to be optimistic; don't let this little incident ..... your day.  
a. make      b. spoil      c. cause      d. help
- The wound is gaping. The bandage must be ..... enough to stop the bleeding.  
a. baggy      b. loose      c. tight      d. light
- LM It is incredible that the old man survived that terrible accident.  
"Incredible" here is a synonym for. ....  
a. supposable      b. imaginable      c. unbelievable      d. believable
- LM The witness said that the man had hit the other car ..... He did it on purpose.  
a. deliberately      b. deliberate      c. intentional      d. unintentionally
- LM The lady was accused of murder, but with the help of her lawyer, she was. ....  
a. changed      b. charged      c. acquitted      d. acquainted
- LM The criminals were ..... up and sent to prison.  
a. blown      b. owned      c. made      d. tied

## Collocations and Expressions

mono = one = single	أحادي	do business	يعمل مشروع
bi = two = twice = double	ثنائي	do activities	يمارس أنشطة
tri = three	ثلاثي	make friends	يكون صداقة
multi = several = more than one = many	متعدد	take pride in = is proud of	يفتخر بـ
pay attention to	يُنْتَبِه لـ	take part in = participate in	يشارك في
perform tasks	يؤدي مهام (وظائف)	shape personality	يشكل الشخصية
raise a child	يربي طفل	give the situation	يوضح الموقف
date back as far as	يعود تاريخه الي	stay connected to	يظل علي اتصال بـ
English-speaking nation	دولة ناطقة بالانجليزية	keep in touch with	يظل علي اتصال بـ
I gave you my word = I promise you			أعدك
mother tongue = native tongue = first language			اللغة الام / اللغة الاولى

## Prepositions

tend (to)	يميل لـ	sign (up)	يسجل الدخول (علي موقع)
stick (to)	يلتزم بـ	make ... (up-for) كـ	يكون ... من
familiar (with)	علي علم بـ / معتاد علي	(in) English	باللغة الانجليزية
go (for) a walk	يذهب للمشي	amazed (by)	مندعش من
shape ... (into)	يشكل ... الي	focus (on)	يركز علي
classify (as)	يصنف ... كـ	impact (on)	تأثير علي



## راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

turn up	يصل / يحدث / يعطي الصوت	turn on	يشغل (جهاز / نور)
turn down	يرفض / يخفض الصوت	turn off	يقفل (جهاز / نور)
turn into = make into = convert into	يتحول الي	turn out = put out	يطفىء (نور / نار)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, turn the TV sound ....., I want to hear clearly.

- a) on      b) off      c) up      d) down

## (الكلمة و المرادف & الكلمة و المضاد)

Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

clear-cut	definite / clear / obvious	واضح / محدد
dominant	ruling / governing / controlling	مهيمن / مسيطر
raise	bring up	يربى
deep-seated	deep-rooted / permanent	راسخ / ثابت / دائم
ancestor	forebear / forefather	جد / سلف / أجداد
root	source / origin	أصل / منشأ
proud	arrogant / conceited	متكبر / فخور

Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

clear-cut	واضح / محدد	indefinite / vague	غير محدد / غامض
dominant	مهيمن / مسيطر	secondary	ثانوي
ancestor	جد / سلف	descendant / successor	حفيد / خليفة
embrace	يعتنق / يتبنى / يؤيد / يؤمن ب	reject	يرفض
proud	متكبر / فخور	humble	متواضع

Choose the correct answer :-

1. "My mother raised three children on her own."

The verb "raised" in this context is a synonym of .....

- a. collected      b. brought up      c. lifted      d. rose

2. "We are proud of our great forebears."

The word "forebears" in this context is a synonym of .....

- a. identities      b. humours      c. ancestors      d. embraces

3. "Loving money is the root of all evil."

The word "root" here can be replaced by .....

- a. trunk      b. origin      c. source      d. b & c

## كل يوم معلومة ع الماشي

economic

⇒ economic (conference / situation / crisis)

economical

⇒ economical (washer machine / heating system)

اقتصادي (متعلق بالاقتصاد والاعمال)

اقتصادي : موفر (شيء / شخص)



كل يوم راجع مهارة : (الروابط الانتقالية)

✓ من روابط (التناقض : contrast) :-

although / (even)though	على الرغم من	but / however	ومع ذلك / ولكن
despite / in spite of	على الرغم من	*whilst	ومع ذلك / ولكن
on the other hand	من الناحية الاخرى	while / whereas	ومع ذلك / ولكن
in contrast / unlike	على النقيض	yet / nevertheless	ومع ذلك (ولكن)

1. We use "despite" in a paragraph or an essay to express *contrast*

- a. summary      b. contrast      c. addition      d. introduction

✓ من روابط (الاضافة : addition) :-

in addition to = additionally	بالاضافة الى	as well as	بالاضافة الى
moreover / furthermore	بالاضافة الى	besides	بالاضافة الى
and	و	also	أيضا

2. Which transition word would you use to express addition?

- a. so      b. furthermore      c. whilst      d. yet

✓ من روابط (السبب والنتيجة : cause - reason and effect / cause - reason and result) :-

because / as / since	لان	so	لذلك
because of / due to / owing to	بسبب	as a result	ونتيجة لذلك
for this reason	لهذا السبب	consequently / in turn	نتيجة لذلك

3. We use "because" in a sentence to .....

- a. introduce the result of something      b. give a cause for something  
c. give contrasting information      d. introduce a summary of the main points

4. We use "consequently" in a sentence to .....

- a. introduce the result of something      b. give a reason for something  
c. give contrasting information      d. introduce a summary of the main points

✓ من روابط (التسلسل الزمني واطهار الوقت والانتقال بين الافكار : sequence / time) :-

first	اولا	next / then	فيما بعد / بعد ذلك
second	ثانيا	once / as soon as	بمجرد ان
after (that) / afterwards	بعد / بعد ذلك	last / finally	اخيرا

7. "First, I wrote emails, then I sent them.

"The linking word "first and then" are used to express .....

- a. sequence      b. contrast      c. addition      d. cause

✓ من روابط (اعطاء امثلة : giving examples) :-

for example	على سبيل المثال	like / such as	مثل
for instance	على سبيل المثال	to illustrate	وللتوضيح

8. "Such as", "for instance" and "like" are all words that can be used .....

- a. to start an essay.      b. in a paragraph to give an example.  
c. in a paragraph to show sequence.      d. in a paragraph to show contrast.

✓ من روابط (الغرض : purpose) :-

to / in order to / so as to	لكي	so that / in order that	لكي
with the aim / view of	بهدف ...	in the hope that	لكي / على أمل ان



**d. in order to / so that**

Personally, ... / I see ...	شخصيا	I think	اعتقد
In my view (point of view)	في رأيي	In my opinion	في رأيي

#### d. context

if	إذا / لو	unless	إذا لم / لو لم
as long as/providing/provided	إذا / لو	without = but for	بدون
in case / in case of	في حالة	or = otherwise = or else	وإلا

**d. as soon as**

all in all = on the whole	في المِجْمَل	in summary / to summarise	بِاخْتِصَار
in short = in brief = in a word	بِاخْتِصَار	in conclusion / to conclude	وَالْخُلَاصَةَ
in a nut shell	وَالْخُلَاصَةَ	to sum up	وَالْخُلَاصَةَ
as we have seen above	وَرَيَ مَا شَفْنَا فَوْقَ	in the end	فِي النِّهَايَةِ
finally = lastly = eventually	وَاخِيرًا	last but not least	وَاخِيرًا

#### d. context

## Grammar

## عبارات الوصل

⇒ (فعل / فاعل) + **who** + العاقل⇒ (فاعل بس) + **whom** + العاقل⇒ (فاعل بس) + **whom** + حرف جر + العاقل⇒ **which** + الغير عاقل (في جميع الحالات : المهم قبلها غير عاقل)EX: My friend **who** lives in France is studying medicine at university.EX: The boy **who / whom** I wanted to talk to was not at home.EX: I don't know **with whom** I should speak about the loan.EX: The shoes **which** Nadia bought don't fit very well.⇒ **that**- بتيجي مع (العاقل / الغير عاقل) فهي بديل لـ (**who/which**) ولكن لا تقبل (حرف جر) ولا (كوما). وحالاتها :  
(all/everything/the first /many-much / مقارنات التفضيل : the tallest/during **that** time)EX: My brother **that** lives in New York is going to visit us soon.EX: I want to tell you **all that** he had said.

- (المكان) بياخد (**where**) ومعناها (الذي فيه / التي فيها) ولا تقبل حروف جر لا قبل ولا بعد .
- (الزمن) بياخد (**when**) ومعناها (الذي فيه / التي فيها) ولا تقبل حروف جر لا قبل ولا بعد .
- (المكان / الزمن) سواء فيه حرف جر او مفيش اختار (**which**) بشرط المعني يكون (الذي / التي).

EX: This is the house **where** we live.EX: This is the house **which** we live in / **in which** we live.EX: It's Friday **when** I usually visit my grandpa.EX: It's Friday **which** I visit my grandpa **on / on which** I visit my grandpa.EX: That is the house **which** was advertised for sale in the newspaper yesterday.EX: Sham El-Nesseim is a day **which** marks the beginning of spring.- (**whose**) بتيجي مع (الملكية) ما بعدها ملك لما قبلها وبتيجي مع (العاقل والغير عاقل) (علي وزن ملكي / ملكه).EX: Aisha **whose** father is a well-known doctor is my best friend at school.- من الممكن نستخدم (**why / what**) ك ضمائر وصل عادي حسب الترجمة.EX: **What** made my father angry is that, I returned home late yesterday.EX: I don't know **the reason why** he left early.- ممكن ان (**which**) تعود علي جملة اولي لعدم التكرار وكمان المعني بالعربي بيبكون غير عاقل وغالبا قبلها كوما.EX: yesterday I watched a program about famous women, **which** was so interesting.

- احذف الضمير المكرر العائد عن الاسم الموصول (يعني الاسم الموصول اللي وراه ضمير الوصل).

- ممكن حذف (**who / whom / which / that**) لو وراه (فاعل).EX: Fortunately, I found **the mobile**..... حذف المكررa) I had lost it      b) **which I had lost it**      c) **which I had lost**      d) **that I had lost it**

EX: He lost the book ..... him last week. حذف الضمير لان وراه فاعل + حذف المكرر

a) **which lent**      b) **which I lent it**      c) **who lent**      d) **I lent**- نختار (**V-ing**) لو المعني بالعربي (الذي + فعل معلوم : الذي يلعب / التي تقرأ / الذي ارسل).- نختار (**P.P**) لو المعني بالعربي (الذي + فعل مجهول : الذي سرق / التي كتبت).EX: I spoke to the worker **cleaning** (who was cleaning) my office. ⇒ الذي ينظف (معلوم)EX: The machines **made** (which are made) in Japan are practical. ⇒ التي تصنع (مجهول)



- مع اي (شيء به اوراق والافلام والمحادثات) بتاخذ (in which) بمعنى (الذي فيه / التي فيها).
- مع اي (مكان صغير / مؤتمر / اجتماع) بتاخذ (at which) بمعنى (الذي فيه / التي فيها).
- حرف الجر اللي ممكن يجي قبل الضمير هو اصلا بيعود علي (فعل / اسم / صفة) موجودة في الجملة الثانية.

**EX:** She wrote many books and articles **in which** she argued for women's rights.

**EX:** Dr Aisha used to go to meetings **at which** she learned to read and write.

**EX:** My little sister made a mistake **for which** she had to apologize.

**EX:** She asked me where I had been, **to which** I replied, "It's a secret".

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

✓ **which is where = where**

✓ **which is when = when**

✓ **which is which**

مع المكان  
مع الزمن  
ايهما هو / ما الفرق بينهما (عند عدم التفرقة بين اثنين متشابهين جدا)

**EX:** The house **which is where** (where) I live, is in the city centre.

**EX:** March is the month **which is when** (when) I was born.

**EX:** For the first few months, the babies looked so alike. I couldn't tell **which is which**.

✓ خلي بالك : الكلمات اللي تحت دي بييجي وراها (where) وهي :-

⇒ **Point / case / stage / situation / condition / example / system + where**

**EX:** We reached a **stage where** we now get nearer to win the cup.

**EX:** He ran long distances to **the point where** he hurt his feet.

✓ خلي بالك :-

⇒ **each time / every time + that**

⇒ **XX : when**

⇒ **anything / something / nothing + that**

⇒ **XX : which**

**EX:** **Every time that** I go to his house, the door is locked.

**EX:** Is there **anything that** I can do to help?

✓ خلي بالك : معروف ان الكلمات اللي تحت دي بييجي وراها (that) وهي :-

⇒ **all / some / any / many / much / few / little / no + that**

ولكن لو جاب وراهم (of) : حرف جر بيبقي الحل يا (which) مع غير العاقل يا (whom) مع العاقل.  
مش ينفع (that) لانها لا تقبل حروف جر اطلاقا لا قبلها ولا بعدها.

**EX:** I asked for **all that** I want.

**EX:** I visited my **friends, all of whom** welcomed me warmly.

**EX:** I bought many **books, some of which** are bestselling.

✓ خلي بالك : بعض الكلمات تُستخدم ك (اسم) و ك (فعل) :-

لو (فعل) يبقي الحل بشكل كبير : (who / which) انما لو (اسم) الحل هو : (whose).

وخلي بالك لما الكلمة تبقى (اسم) بييجي وراها (فعل) . اذن مش ينفع فعلين ورا بعض.

يلعب دور - مسرحية / play / يحلم - حلم / dream / يعمل - عمل / work / يزور - زيارة / visit / يقيم - اقامة / stay  
..... يفعل ويتصرف - فعل ويتصرف / act / يحب - اهتمامات / likes / ينتهي - نهاية / end

**EX:** I know a girl **who works** in a library. ⇒ فعل

**EX:** I admire the writer **whose works** are great. ⇒ اسم

✓ لو الفاعل (mixed) : عاقل وغير عاقل نستخدم (that).

**EX:** Do you know **the man and the car that** I am looking for?



## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. One of the twins is named Hassan and the other is Hussein, but I don't know ..... حين من عارف أنا ولكن أفوق دا من دا which is

- a) which is where حيث      b) which is when  
 c) which is which التي      d) which is whose

2. Ali is late, ..... annoyed me.

- a) who      b) which      c) that      d) what

3. .... gets me annoyed, is doing the same work every day.

- a) Which      b) That      c) What      d) Why

4. The hotel ..... location is on the Nile, the stay in it always is high.

- a) which      b) where موقعه ملكه      c) whose      d) that

5. The Suez canal, ..... in Egypt, is an important waterway.

- a) locating      b) which located التي تقع التي موجودة      c) which locating      d) located التي تقع

6. Any class has a lot of students but few of ..... are clever.

- a) that وحد      b) whose      c) whom التي      d) which

9. She found her calculator ..... she lost it.

- a) where حيث وجدت التي كانت      b) that التي كانت حيث      c) when      d) which

10. The supermarket has so little parking space, ..... is really a problem.

- a) which التي محل محل محل      b) what      c) where      d) whose

11. The river ..... banks used to be covered with fruit trees and flowers is now seriously polluted.

- a) where      b) which      c) whose التي      d) of which

12. There wasn't a single person ..... she could turn for help.

- a) that      b) who      c) from whom      d) to whom

13. .... who laughs last, laughs best.

- a) He هو      b) That      c) She      d) Those

14. They live in a house ..... face the Nile.

- a) whose window      b) which windows  
 c) which window      d) whose windows

15. The meetings ..... I attended were long and boring

- a) which التي التي التي      b) at which      c) to which      d) of which

16. The meetings ..... I was invited were long and boring.

- a) which التي التي التي      b) at which      c) to which      d) of which

17. The book ..... I bought from Cairo Book Fair, is by Omar Taher.

- a) who التي التي التي      b) where      c) that      d) no word

18. At the end of our street there is a baker's ..... we buy our bread.

- a) whose      b) whom      c) who      d) where التي التي التي

19. Violent storms are ..... people fear nowadays.

- a) which      b) where      c) what      d) that التي التي التي

20. I have no idea ..... was at the door.

- a) where      b) who التي التي التي      c) which      d) that

21. This is the man ..... help saved my life.

- a) which      b) who      c) whose      d) whom

22. These days, women have as good an education as men, ..... I think is a good thing.

- a) where      b) when      c) who      d) which

23. I have got a son who is called Marawan and a daughter ..... Sara.

- a) calls      b) called التي التي التي      c) is called      d) calling



24. He says he is busy , ..... he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.

- a) on which      b) at which      c) by which      d) in which

25. The Nile banks at Aswan is the place ..... you can forget about all your worries on.

- a) that      b) which      c) where      d) why

26. Position this plant ..... you like to get as much sunlight as possible.

- a) whenever      b) whoever      c) whatever      d) wherever

27. I visited Tanta, ..... I was born.

- a) where is which      b) where is where

- c) which is where      d) where is that

28. Distance Learning is ..... students and teachers are in different places.

- a) that      b) which      c) where      d) when

29. I don't know ..... house is yours.

- a) whose      b) whom      c) which      d) what

30. .... does this book belong to ? It's Asmaa's.

- a) whose      b) whom      c) where      d) which

31. The house ..... colour is yellow, is my uncle's.

- a) which      b) whose      c) where      d) in which

32. LM The person ..... acts are irresponsible is usually unreliable.

- a) whom      b) who      c) whose      d) which

33. LM I don't know ..... making this noise, but all of you must keep quiet.

- a) who's      b) whose      c) that      d) who

34. LM This is the new secretary. I told you about her.

Which of the following isn't grammatically correct?

a) This is the secretary about whom I told you.

b) This is the secretary who I told you about.

c) This is the secretary I told you about her.

d) This is the secretary I told you about.

## Compound adjectives : الصفة المركبة

الصفة العادية تؤاد الصفة المركبة : إزاي !!

✓ الصفة العادية هي (كلمة واحدة) وتأتي بعد (be : am, is, are – was, were).

✓ الصفة المركبة هي (كلمتين بينهم شرطة) وتأتي بعد (be : am, is, are – was, were).

EX: The film was amazing.

EX: Adel is an quick-witted student.

✓ نضع (شرطة) لو الصفة المركبة وراها اسم.

✓ لا نضع (شرطة) لو الصفة المركبة مش وراها اسم : الاسم قبلها.

EX: It is an old-fashioned dress.

EX: The dress was old fashioned.

✓ الصفة المركبة زي الصفة العادية نضعها قبل الاسم.

ومع المفرد نضع قبل الصفة (a/an) ونلغيها مع (الجمع واللامعزود).

EX: He is a well-behaved student.

EX: There are many English-speaking countries.

EX: The room is full of old-fashioned furniture.

✓ الصفة المركبة ممكن تبدأ ب (صفة) أو ب (ظرف) أو ب (اسم).

clear-cut	واضح	old-fashioned	قديم
open-minded	متفتح / واسع الافق	quick-witted	سريع البديهة
second-hand	مستعمل	red-handed	مذنب
badly-written	مكتوب بشكل سيء	good-looking	حسن المظهر
ever-lasting	مستمر / دائم	well-known	مشهور
world-famous	ذو شهرة عالمية	heart-broken	منكسر القلب (حزين)
English-speaking	متحدث باللغة الانجليزية	north-east	الشمال الشرقي
five-star	ذو خمس نجوم	five-minute	لمدة خمس دقائق

✓ الصفة المركبة مع وجود كلمة (time) بعد (المدة الزمنية) :-

في حالة (المدة الزمنية المفردة) نضع (s) ثم (time). في حالة (المدة الزمنية الجمع) نضع (s') ثم (time).

EX: a week's time / one day's time / two weeks' time

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

✓ الصفة المركبة التي تتكون من (ظرف) منتهي ب (ly) اذا أنتت (قبل الاسم) فيجوز استخدام (الشرطة) أو حذفها.

EX: English is a widely-spoken language

EX: English is a widely spoken language

✓ استخدام (الشرطة) مع الصفة المركبة لو وراها اسم (مش مؤكدة). شفتها او لا : عادي جدا.

يعني ممكن تلاقي (الشرطة) مع الصفة المركبة ومش وراها اسم.

EX: **SB** Languages are precious and being Arab and Egyptian is so **deep-seated** in me ...

✓ طبعا فاكرين : (صفة مركبة) تتكون من :-

⇒ مفرد + (مفرد - عدد) + a

EX: We have a ten-minute break at school.

⇒ مفرد + (صفة - مفرد - عدد) + a

EX: My little brother is a ten-year-old child.



**Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)**

Choose the correct answer:    **(Grammar)**

1- Which **TWO** correct sentences from the following :-

- a. We have a **thirty-minutes break** in the middle of the school day.  
b. We have a **thirty-minute breaks** in the middle of the school day.  
c. We have **thirty minutes time break** in the middle of the school day.  
d. We have a **thirty-minute break** in the middle of the school day.  
e. We have **thirty minutes' time break** in the middle of the school day.  
f. We have **thirty minute's time break** in the middle of the school day.

2. The lawyer introduced ..... to the court to acquit his client.

- a. a clear-cut evidence      b. a clear cut evidence  
c. clear-cut evidence      d. clear cut evidence

**3.** Our house is in .....

- a. a six-metre-wide street  
b. six-metre-wide street  
c. a six-metres-wide street  
d. six-metres-wide street

### الروابط الدالة على النتيجة

• نستخدم (so) قبل (الصفة / الظرف). خلي بالك (صفة بس من غير اسم وراها).

⇒ **so** + (صفة / ظرف) + **that** + جملة

EX: He was **so clever that** he answered all questions.

EX: They walked **so slowly that** they missed the train.

• نستخدم (such) لو بعدها (صفة + اسم). بعد كذا ركز علي نوع الاسم هل هو (مفرد / جمع / لا معدود).

• نستخدم (such) وبعدها أداة نكرة (a/an) ثم (صفة) ثم (اسم مفرد).

• نستخدم (such) وبعدها (صفة) ثم (اسم جمع / اسم لا معدود) بدون (a/an).

⇒ **such** + **a / an** + (صفة) + اسم مفرد + **that** + جملة

⇒ **such** + a/an + (صفة) + اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد + **that** + جملة

EX: It was **such a hot day that** we decided to stay indoors.

EX: It was **such nice weather that** we went to the park.

EX: They were **such cheap books that** I bought them all.

⇒ **so** (**many / few / much / little**).....

⇒ **such** (**a lot of ... / a pity** / اسم بدون صفة)

⇒ **such** (**a** useful book - **an** honest man - **a** European country)

EX: He made **so many mistakes that** he failed.

EX: There was **so much sugar** in my tea **that** I couldn't drink it.

EX: There were **such a lot of people** at the party **that** I couldn't count them.

• اذا بدأت الجملة ب (so / such) يحدث بعدها (تقديم) : نضع (الفعل المساعد / الناقص) قبل (الفاعل). المصطلح الأول

EX: So clever (is he) that .... XX: he is

EX: Such a good film (was it) that .... XX: it was

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

⇒ **such** + **a / an** + (صفة) + اسم مفرد + **that** + جملة

= **so** + **a / an** + (صفة) + اسم مفرد + **that** + جملة

EX: Mr. Ali is **such a kind man that** all students love him.

EX: Mr. Ali is **so kind a man that** all students love him.

### معلومات جميلة سريعة :-

⇒ **as such** = as usual

كالمعتاد

⇒ **and so on** = and such

وما شابه ذلك / الي اخره

⇒ **or so** = approximately = nearly

تقريبا

EX: We are not going to have dinner **as such**, but we will have snacks.

EX: He likes violent sports : boxing and wrestling **and so on.** = and such

EX: I think there were fifty people **or so** at the party.

✓ لما مش تكون حابب تذكر اسم حد (شخص / مكان / شيء) نقول :-

⇒ **so and so & such and such**

الفلائي / كذا وكذا / اللي بالي بالك

خاصة لان الاسم دا بالنسبة ليك (مش مهم / او نسيته / او مش حابب تذكره لانك متضايق منه).

EX: Tell the old **so and so** to mind his own business.



Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

1. The new boss is a real ..... He is rude to everyone.  
a) so and such      b) such and so      c) so and so      d) such and enough
2. A: Is dinner ready?      B: I hope .....  
a) such      b) so      c) enough      d) too
3. She felt so tired ..... she fell asleep on the train.  
a) than      b) the      c) then      d) no word
4. It was ..... useful a book that I read it many times.  
a) so      b) such      c) enough      d) too
5. It was ..... a little flat that I didn't rent it.  
a) so      b) such      c) enough      d) too
6. I have ..... heard such music before.  
a) ever      b) never      c) since      d) for
7. It was ..... expensive a vacation that I regret it.  
a) so      b) such      c) enough      d) too
8. We had ..... good time on holiday that we didn't want to come home.  
a) such      b) such a      c) so      d) too
9. She gave him ..... that she was very grateful to her.  
a) so good advice      b) such a good advice  
c) too good an advice      d) such good advice

Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

10. I am proud ..... receive this award.  
a) in      b) of      c) to      d) at
11. He has put down ..... in France since 2010.  
a) branches      b) roots      c) leaves      d) seeds
12. A chinese doctor was the first to ..... the alarm about Covid 19.  
a) raise      b) rise      c) arise      d) arouse
13. The prince broke with ..... by getting married from a common girl.  
a) habits      b) traditions      c) customs      d) beliefs
14. The egyptian fans ..... for the national team to win the tournament.  
a. encourage      b) support      c) root      d) wait
15. He ..... a lot of money as inheritance.  
a) won      b) gained      c) earned      d) beat
16. LM I gave you my word. I will visit you next week. "I gave you my word," means:  
a) I spoke with you.      b) I promised you.  
c) You shouldn't expect me to come.      d) You shouldn't have believed me.
17. LM Leila warmly ..... her son, who was very afraid, and he soon felt safe.  
a) kicked      b) hit      c) embraced      d) traced

## Unit Eleven

### Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. America is a ..... country. It has a lot of people from different nationalities.  
a. monolingual      ~~b. bilingual~~      c. multilingual      ~~d. multicultural~~
2. .... is a quality of the American society in which all nationalities are represented.  
~~a. Multiculturalism~~      b. Benefit      c. Majority      d. Identity
3. To ..... your children well, you need to be near them.  
a. rise      ~~b. raise~~      c. arouse      d. arise
4. As a writer, Mahfouz is ..... to readers all over the Arab world.  
a. isolated      ~~b. widely-spoken~~      ~~c. well-known~~      d. well-balanced
5. In Egypt, our mother ..... is Arabic.  
a. dialect      b. sociolinguist      c. inhabitant      ~~d. tongue~~
6. A : In addition to Arabic, I speak English. B : You are ..... then.  
a. monolingual      ~~b. bilingual~~      c. multilingual      d. multicultural
7. If you are ....., you'll find it difficult to get a good job.  
~~a. monolingual~~      ~~b. bilingual~~      c. multilingual      d. multicultural
8. Speaking only two languages does not mean you are .....  
a. monolingual      b. bilingual      c. multilingual      d. multiculturalism
9. We have a ..... customs and tradition we should preserve them. *Yes / No*  
a. convinced      b. easternmost      ~~c. deep-seated~~      d. beneficial
10. He has a/an ..... personality that always seeks to have power and control over others.  
~~a. dominant~~      b. limited      c. official      d. precious
11. Arabic is a/an ..... language. It is the official language of most Arab countries.  
a. isolated      ~~b. widely-spoken~~      c. well-read      d. well-balanced
12. There's a ..... difference in meaning between "who" and "which".  
a. convinced      ~~b. clear-cut~~      c. deep-seated      d. beneficial
13. A/An ..... diet keeps you healthy and energetic.  
a. isolated      ~~b. widely-spoken~~      c. well-known      d. well-balanced
14. I am ..... of my country's great history.  
a. pride      ~~b. proud~~      c. gap      ~~d. generation~~
15. I take ..... in my country's great history.  
~~a. pride~~      b. proud      c. gap      d. generation
16. The Ministry of Education has ..... the project of online learning.  
a. risen      b. participated      c. influenced      ~~d. embraced~~
17. We are ..... to have such a fatherly teacher.  
a. extended      b. fascinating      c. fortunate      d. home-sick
18. I am very ..... to have a close friend like you.  
~~a. lucky~~      b. similar      c. relative      d. definite
19. It is sense of ..... that makes us enjoy his company.  
a. Cantonese      ~~b. humour~~      c. chopsticks      d. traditions



20. Each country has its national ..... that is always connected to it.  
 a. similarity      b. senses      c. immigrant      d. identity
21. My family has deep ..... in Upper Egypt.  
 a. roots      b. aspects      c. cases      d. impacts
22. I am ..... about ancient Egyptian history.  
 a. typical      b. fluent      c. passionate      d. famous
23. He is never happy abroad. He is ..... person.  
 a. extended      b. fascinating      c. fortunate      d. homesick
24. Using credit cards is of great ..... to both customers and sellers.  
 a. multiculturalism      b. benefit      c. majority      d. identity
25. The queen has a golden crown تاج covered with ..... jewels.  
 a. dominant      b. limited      c. official      d. precious
26. The police are responsible for the security of all the ..... of the city.  
 a. dialects      b. sociolinguists      c. inhabitants      d. tongues
27. This statue is ..... to be about 3,500 years old.  
 a. benefited      b. endangered      c. estimated      d. isolated
28. A sociable person finds it difficult to be ..... from others.  
 a. temporary      b. unique      c. endangered      d. isolated
29. Arabic is the ..... language of Egypt. It is the language of all organisations.  
 a. dominant      b. limited      c. official      d. precious
30. As a/an ....., I study the way language is affected by difference in class, work, etc.  
 a. dialect      b. sociolinguist      c. inhabitant      d. tongue
31. Sadly, only a small ..... of students is/are interested in education these days.  
 a. function      b. forum      c. minority      d. funeral
32. Egypt's ..... to solve the problem was successful.  
 a. figure      b. event      c. initiative      d. oasis
33. Luckily, everyone on the bus ..... the accident.  
 a. toured      b. preserved      c. located      d. survived
34. Primary school ..... for six years.  
 a. attends      b. raises      c. lasts      d. considers
35. The Chinese use ..... instead of spoons.  
 a. Cantonese      b. humour      c. chopsticks      d. traditions
36. There was a big ..... between exports and imports.  
 a. pride      b. proud      c. gap      d. generation
37. Some of the illegal ..... were lost in the sea.  
 a. similarities      b. senses      c. immigrants      d. identities

## Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions

38. You need to ..... your attention on what your teacher says.  
 a. perform      b. raise      c. bring      d. focus

39. You can earn more money by ..... business.  
a. touring      b. taking      c. doing      d. playing
40. This device is made <sup>up</sup> ..... three main parts.  
a. up      b. up of      c. out      d. out of
41. Stick ..... your diet if you do not want to put on weight again.  
a. into      b. on      c. in      d. to
42. The Great Pyramid dates back as ..... as 26<sup>th</sup> century BCE.  
a. far      b. well      c. soon      d. age
43. .... your support, I've passed these difficult times.  
a. Similar to      b. Thanks to      c. Thank to      d. Tend to
44. When you participate in an activity, you ..... it.  
a. fall in love with      b. are in touch with  
c. take part in      d. are lucky to
45. When you are connected with others, you ..... them.  
a. fall in love with      b. are in touch with  
c. take part in      d. are lucky to



## Unit Eleven : Grammar

### تمارين علي ضمائر الوصل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tree ..... fell and blocked the road, is too heavy to move.  
a) where      b) which      c) what      d) when
2. My uncle ..... you saw with me yesterday, works in the USA.  
a) who      b) whom      c) whose      d) a and b
3. My uncle with ..... you saw me yesterday, works in the USA.  
a) who      b) whom      c) whose      d) a and b
4. She couldn't hear ..... I said.  
a) what      b) why      c) who      d) which
5. This is the company ..... I work as a legal consultant  
a) where      b) which      c) whose      d) who
6. Mona is the secretary ..... works with the King.  
a) whom      b) which      c) who      d) whose
7. Mona is the secretary ..... works with the King.  
a) whom      b) which      c) whose      d) that
8. I'm going to a meeting ..... we are discussing the company finance this month.  
a) which      b) at which      c) whose      d) at when
9. Yesterday, I read a book, ..... gave me a lot of useful information.  
a) who      b) whose      c) which      d) when
10. Tell me ..... you didn't attend the conference.  
a) when      b) where      c) why      d) what
11. Fortunately, I found the mobile.....  
a) I had lost it      b) which I had lost it      c) I had lost      d) that I had lost it
12. Mother's Day is a day ..... we celebrate our mothers.  
a) on which      b) which      c) who      d) whose
13. Mother's Day is a day ..... marks a great event for mothers.  
a) in which      b) which      c) who      d) whose
14. That is the flat ..... was advertised to rent.  
a) where      b) which      c) when      d) what
15. Aswan ..... is a city in Upper Egypt, is very beautiful.  
a) which      b) where      c) who      d) when
16. Friday is the day ..... we go to visit our grandpa.  
a) that      b) what      c) in which      d) when
17. Friday is the day ..... we go to visit our grandpa.  
a) that      b) what      c) on which      d) where
18. Mazen ..... brother is an actor, always meets me at club.  
a) whose      b) who      c) who's      d) for whom
19. I've just read an article..... the writer describes the excitement after we qualified for thw world cup finals.  
a) at which      b) on which      c) in which      d) which
20. I haven't met the representative ..... you have sent yet.  
a) What      b) whose      c) which      d) no word



21. "Oliver Twist" is a novel ..... the hero "Oliver" lived a hard life in an orphanage.  
 a) which      b) whom      c) in which      d) whose
22. "Oliver Twist" is the novel ..... took place in the late of 19<sup>th</sup> century.  
 a) which      b) whom      c) in which      d) whose
23. "Oliver Twist" is the novel ..... events took place in the streets of London.  
 a) which      b) whom      c) in which      d) whose
24. Samy got married ..... which we all congratulated him.  
 a) to      b) about      c) on      d) for
25. This is the hotel ..... I stayed my first day here in England.  
 a) which      b) what      c) where      d) when
26. The employer with ..... I work, is very friendly.  
 a) whose      b) that      c) whom      d) who
27. The employer for ..... I work, is a big organization specialized in computers.  
 a) which      b) that      c) whom      d) who
28. That is our neighbour's dog ..... I feel frightened whenever I see it.  
 a) who      b) whose      c) where      d) no word
29. That is the farmhouse ..... we used to live.  
 a) when      b) which      c) where      d) what
30. I spent two hours yesterday attending a forum, during ..... time I gained a lot of information.  
 a) which      b) that      c) when      d) whose
31. Ahmed Zewail is the scientist ..... discoveries benefit the world.  
 a) whose      b) who      c) that      d) what
32. That's the knife ..... he was killed.  
 a) by which      b) at which      c) which      d) with which
33. I interviewed the player ..... no 10 in Al Ahly club, is called Magdy Afsha.  
 a) wearing      b) who wearing      c) who is worn      d) which is wearing
34. She asked me a question about my opinion, ..... I replied, "I don't agree".  
 a) at which      b) at whom      c) to which      d) to that
35. Crops ..... in a natural way are healthy.  
 a) are grown      b) which we grow them      c) which grown      d) grown
36. They said something very cruel, ..... I think they should apologize.  
 a) at which      b) by which      c) in which      d) for which
37. Wafaa ..... you should apologize, didn't harm you.  
 a) at whom      b) by whom      c) to whom      d) for whom
38. Sixty is the age ..... you can retire from work in Egypt.  
 a) in which      b) with which      c) at which      d) by which
39. Name the actor ..... plays Salah El Deen .  
 a) which      b) who      c) whose      d) whom
40. We will give a prize to the company ..... exports are good.  
 a) who      b) which      c) whose      d) where
41. The project is at a point ..... the end is in sight.  
 a) which      b) where      c) when      d) who
42. The suit ..... I chose for wedding is fashionable.  
 a) when      b) that      c) where      d) what



## تمارين علي الصفات المركبة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maher is a ..... man.

- a) good-balanced ☒ b) well-balanced c) good balance d) well-balance

2. Maher is .....

- a) good-balanced b) well-balanced c) good balance ☒ d) well balanced

3. I have a twelve- ..... girl, who is called Sara.

- ☒ a) year ☒ b) year's c) years d) years'

4. Money has pros and cons. It is .....

- a) double-edge b) double-edged c) double edge ☒ d) double edged

5. Money has pros and cons. It is a ..... weapon.

- a) double-edge ☒ b) double-edged c) double edge d) double edged

6. Something which is delicious, it is a/an ..... thing.

- a) open-minded b) tight-fisted c) ☒ mouth-watering d) quick-witted

7. When someone gives good ideas quickly, we say he or she is a ..... person.

- ☒ a) quick-witted b) quick witted c) quick-wit d) quick wit

8. When someone gives good ideas quickly, we say he or she is .....

- a) quick-witted ☒ b) quick witted c) quick-wit d) quick wit

9. Sun is an ever ..... source of energy.

- a) last b) -lasted ☒ c) -lasting d) lasting

10. Wafaa is a long ..... girl.

- ☒ a) -haired b) haired c) hair d) -hair

11. Wafaa is long .....

- a) -haired ☒ b) haired c) hair d) -hair

12. The place which is inhabited by a lot of people, it is a/an ..... place

- ☒ a) densely-populated ☒ b) sun-baked c) mouth-watering d) brand-new

13. Father will arrive home in two ..... time.

- a) -hour b) hours c) hour's ☒ d) hours'

14. Father will arrive home in an ..... time.

- a) -hour b) hours ☒ c) hour's d) hours'

15. I spent a two ..... meeting with the manager.

- ☒ a) -hour b) hours c) hour's d) hours'

16. I felt sorry for the heart ..... woman who had lost her son.

- ☒ a) -breaking ☒ b) -broken c) breaking d) broken

17. Mazen is a well ..... student.

- a) behave ☒ b) -behaved c) behaved d) -behave

18. Mazen is well .....

- a) behave b) -behaved ☒ c) behaved d) -behave

19. America is an English ..... country.

- a) -spoken ☒ b) -speaking c) spoken d) speaking

20. English is a widely ..... language.

- ☒ a) -spoken ☒ b) -speaking c) spoken d) speaking



## تمارين علي So & Such

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This book is ..... famous that nearly everyone has read it.  
a) so      b) such      c) too      d) enough
2. It is ..... a famous book that nearly everyone has read it.  
a) so      b) such      c) too      d) enough
3. Mr. Ali is ..... honest man that all people respect him.  
a) such      b) so      c) such an      d) such a
4. It was ..... interesting book that I recommended it to my son.  
a) such      b) enough      c) such an      d) such a
5. I don't know how many friends I have since I moved to that new city.  
a) very      b) enough      c) such      d) so
6. It was ..... bad weather that we spent all day at home.  
a) too      b) so      c) such      d) such a
7. The bus went ..... fast that it was harder to catch it!  
a) such      b) enough      c) so      d) too
8. She speaks ..... good English that you would think it was her native language.  
a) such      b) such a      c) so      d) enough
9. It was ..... useful information that I used it in my report!  
a) so      b) such      c) such a      d) such an
10. The party was interesting. It's ..... pity that you didn't join us.  
a) too      b) so      c) such      d) such a
11. It was ..... delicious cheese that all of it was eaten and nothing was left.  
a) such      b) such a      c) so      d) enough
12. They are ..... interesting friends that I enjoy company with them.  
a) too      b) such      c) such a      d) such an
13. She was wearing ..... elegant clothes that all people admired her.  
a) such an      b) such a      c) such      d) so
14. He speaks ..... rudely to all his neighbours that they avoid him and his family.  
a) too      b) enough      c) so      d) such
15. It was ..... sour milk that the baby couldn't drink it.  
a) such      b) such a      c) so      d) too
16. He is ..... interested in football that he always watches every match.  
a) so      b) such      c) such an      d) too
17. Hamdi is ..... a man that you can trust.  
a) so      b) such      c) too      d) enough
18. Have you ever seen such ..... that you couldn't stop laughing?  
a) funny film      b) funny      c) a funny film      d) funnily
19. These are ..... shoes that I can't wear them.  
a) so tight      b) very tight      c) such a tight      d) such tight
20. So lazy ..... that she doesn't come to school every day.  
a) she is      b) she was      c) was she      d) is she
21. He had ..... little money that he had to go home on foot.  
a) such      b) enough      c) too      d) so
22. She made ..... a lot of spelling mistakes that her grade was low.  
a) so      b) such      c) enough      d) too



Unit (12): Myths and fables

Revision Vocabulary

fables	قصص رمزية	universal	شامل / عام / شائع
myths	خرافات / أساطير	plot	حبكة الرواية
mythology	علم الاساطير (ميثولوجيا)	creatures	مخلوقات
legend	أسطورة	perspective	وجهة نظر / رأي / مفهوم / منظور
legendary	أسطوري	entertaining	مسلي
cheer	يهلل	relate	يرتبط / يتعلق ب / * يتفهم
chop	يقطع / يخرط / يجزئ	boast about	يتفاخر
fed up	يمل / يسأم / ملال / متضجر	conclusion	خاتمة / إستنتاج
moral	درس أخلاقي / عظة	in conclusion	في الختام
flood	فيضان / يفيض بالماء / يغمر بالماء	conflict	صراع
look back	ينظر للوراء / يفكر فيما مضى	context	سياق النص / النص
steady	ثابت	reflect	يعكس / يمثل
stretch out	يتمدد / يقوم بتمرين إطالة	relevant	ملائم / له صلة بالموضوع
tear	دمعة / * يمزق	relevance	ملائمة / فائدة
pass on / down	ينقل خبرة أو معرفة	setting	إعداد / حبكة (مكان و زمان القصة) * *
exaggerate	يبالغ	solution	حل
eternal	خالد / ابدى / أزلي	evidence	دليل / شاهد
humble	متواضع	cause	سبب / قضية
brave	شجاع	bend	يلوي / ينحني / يثني
generous	كريم	branch	فرع / غصن (شجرة / بنك / شركة)
make up = invent	يؤلف (يخترع)	childhood	الطفولة
grasslands	مراعي / أرض عشبية	collect	يجمع
humour	فكاهة / دعابة	deliver	يوصل / يسلم
imaginary	خيالي (شئ)	edit	يحرر / يعدل
imaginative	خيالي (شخص مبدع / شئ)	tasty	لذيذ الطعم
centre around	يتمركز حول	theme	موضوع / سمة
warn	يحذر	tragic	مأساوي / محزن
chivalry	شهامه / فروسية / مروءة	unrealistic	غير حقيقي / غير واقعي
knight	فارس	honour	شرف / تكريم / إحترام
motivation	دافع / حافز	honourable	جدير بالاحترام / شريف
in a fit of anger	في نوبة غضب *	jealous	حقود / غيور
sword	سيف *	long-necked	ذو رقبة طويلة
armour	درع	exist	يوجد / يتواجد
debate	مناقشة / مناظرة	fierce	عنيف / شرس
debatable	قابل للنقاش / مثير للجدل	defeat = beat	يهزم
escape	يهرب	perseverance = determination	مثابرة / عزيمة
escapism	الهروب من الواقع بالتسلية *	verbally = orally	شفهيا / لفظيا
outdated	عفا عليه الزمن (قديم)	bounce	ترتطم / ترتد / تنتطط (كرة)



## الكلمات الرئيسية بالقصة

## Great Expectations : Chapter (12)

## Revision Vocabulary

apart	متفرقين / بعيدًا عن بعضهم البعض	fascinate	يفتن / يجتذب
consider	يفكر في	struggle	يكافح / يناضل
have a place in my heart	له مكان في قلبي (أحبه)	pay with his life	يدفع حياته ثمنًا لـ

## Choose the correct answer :-

- The beauty of the countryside and the Nile ..... me.  
a. consider      b. break      c. fight      d. fascinate
- He has never been ..... from his family. So, he finds it difficult to live away from them.  
a. a part      b. apart      c. part      d. partly
- LM This young man *has a place in my heart*. This means:  
a) I always remember his actions.      b) He has a broken heart.  
c) I like him very much.      d) I have a problem with him.
- LM Finally, the criminal *paid with his life*. This means:  
a) He was sentenced to death as a result of his crimes.  
b) He had to pay a huge fine for his crime.  
c) He had to prove he was innocent.      d) He was imprisoned for a short time.

## Collocations and Expressions

make a trap	ينصب فخ	pay attention	ينتبه / يولي اهتمام
break the law	يخالف القانون	apply a lesson	يطبق درسًا
give a shout	يطلق صيحة (صرخة)	bring eternal youth	يجلب الشباب الدائم
support an argument	يدعم رأي	lose balance	يفقد توازن
take the risk	يخاطر / يغامر	play a trick on	يخدع / يدبر مقلب لـ
code of behaviour	قواعد السلوك	keep on = go on = carry on = continue	يستمر في
in favour of = is for = on the side of = approve of			لصالح / داعم لـ
in trouble = in difficulty = in a tight corner			في ورطة / في مشكلة / في موقف حرج
walk closer to = approach			يقترّب من / يدنو من
Myth is the Greek word "mythos" = "word of mouth"			كلمة (أسطورة) هي كلمة يونانية معناها "كلمة الفم"

## Prepositions

based (on)	مبنى على / قائم على	debate (about)	يتناقش بشأن
pass (on / down)	ينتقل / يُورث	bring (back)	يستعيد / يعود / يرجع

## راجع كل يوم بعض الأفعال الإصطلاحية (فعل + حرف جر)

pick (شخص) up	يوصل شخص بالسيارة	pick (شيء) up	يلتقط شيء من علي الأرض
pick ..... out = choose = select			يختار

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My brother is picking me ..... to airport this evening.  
a) across      b) up      c) back      d) down



## (الكلمة و المرادف &amp; الكلمة و المضاد)

Synonyms (syn) : meaning :

eternal	forever	خالد / أبدي / أزلي
steady	stable / balanced / firm / fixed	ثابت
entertaining	amusing / interesting	مسلّي / ممتع
universal	comprehensive / involving	شامل / شائع / عام
fed up with	bored with / annoyed with	مائل من
perspective	point of view / opinion / outlook / view	وجهة نظر
relate	understand	يتفهم

Antonyms (anti) : opposite:

eternal	خالد / أبدي / أزلي	temporary	مؤقت
humble	متواضع	proud	متكبر
relevant	ملائم	irrelevant	غير ملائم

Choose the correct answer :-

1. "Pollution is a **universal** issue." "Universal" is a synonymy of .....

a. comprehensive    b. restricted    c. particular    d. b & c

## كل يوم راجع مهارة : (البريد الالكتروني : E-mail)

✓ دا رسم توضيحي لخطوات كتابة الايميل بالترتيب :-

<b>From :</b>	السطر اللي فيه عنوان البريد الالكتروني للراسل (sender)	<b>header part</b>
<b>To :</b>	السطر اللي فيه عنوان البريد الالكتروني للمرسل إليه (recipient)	
<b>Subject (About) :</b>	السطر اللي فيه موضوع الايميل (title/address/content)	
<p><b>Dear ..... / Hello ..... ,</b>      ⇒ (greeting : التحية)</p> <p>..... <b>body :</b> (الموضوع / الرسالة في جمل بسيطة) .....</p> <p>.....</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>Best wishes : (closing : الخاتمة)</b></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>signature / sign-off : (التوقيع : اسم الراسل)</b></p>		

- ✓ السطر اللي بنكتب فيه اسم (الراسل : sender) اللي هو (اول سطر) اسمه : (From : From line).
- ✓ السطر اللي بنكتب فيه (اسم المرسل إليه / المستقبل : recipient) اللي هو (ثاني سطر) اسمه : (To : To line).
- ✓ السطر اللي بنكتب فيه (موضوع ومحتوي وعنوان الايميل : title / the content of the message) اللي هو (ثالث سطر) اسمه : (Subject / About line).
- ✓ اللي بنكتب فيه اسم الراسل والمرسل اليه والموضوع اسمه : الجزء العلوي (header) اللي فوق.
- ✓ بنبدأ الايميل او هيكل الايميل ب (التحية) زي (Dear / Hello) ودا اسمه : (greeting)
- ✓ بعد التحية بنكتب (الموضوع / الرسالة باختصار) ودا اسمه : (body)
- ✓ نختم الايميل ب (الخاتمة) زي (Best wishes / Bye) ودا اسمه : (conclusion / closing)
- ✓ ننهي الايميل (end) : بالتوقيع ب (اسم الراسل) ودا اسمه : (signature / sign-off)
- ✓ اعرف ان كلمة (email) اصلها اختصار لرسالة بريد الكتروني (electronic mail).
- ✓ إذن حرف (e) هنا اختصار ل (electronic) وهي رسالة رقمية (digital message).
- ✓ تصلك الايميلات في (صندوق الوارد : inbox).
- ✓ للدخول علي حسابك الالكتروني تحتاج الي (اسم المستخدم : user name) وكلمة السر (password).
- ✓ لفصل اجزاء عنوان البريد الالكتروني مع الراسل والمرسل نستخدم (@) وهي اختصار ل (at / at sign).
- ✓ (@) هي حرف / خانة في الكيبورد : (keyboard character).
- ✓ الجزء اللي قبل علامة (@) اسمه (اسم المستخدم : user name).
- ✓ الجزء اللي بعد علامة (@) اسمه (اسم النطاق / المجال : domain name).
- ✓ التعبير (.com) هو اختصار ل (شركة تجارية : commercial firm).
- ✓ من الممكن ان ترسل مع الايميل (صورة / ملف) ودا اسمه (المرفقات : attachments).

### Choose the correct answer :-

1. You start the body of an email with .....  
 a. closing      b. a greeting      c. the signature      d. a subject
2. The ..... part contains the address of the sender and recipient.  
 a. body      b. header      c. footer      d. closing
3. In an email, the ..... line is where you type the e-mail address of the recipient.  
 a. to      b. from      c. subject      d. into
4. You can send a/an ..... with an e-mail.  
 a. attachment      b. SMS      c. letter      d. envelope
5. The first part of your email address before the "@" is called your .....  
 a. username      b. password      c. address      d. domain name
6. What is used to separate the two parts of an email address?  
 a. @      b. \*      c. //      d. #



✓ ما الفرق بين الایمیل الرسمي (formal e-mail) زي ایميلات ل شركات ومقابلات و شکاوي رسمية ف الكتابة رسمية. و الایمیل الغير رسمي (informal e-mail) زي ایميلات ل اشخاص انت تعرفهم کويس وتربطک بهم علاقة زي الاصدقاء والاقارب استخدام مصطلحات يومية عامية. ودا جدول بيوضح الفرق ما بينهم :-

Formal email	Informal email
نستخدم جمل في المجهول (passive) بس مش شرط. في المقدمة نستخدم :	نستخدم جمل في المعلوم (active) بس مش شرط. في المقدمة نستخدم :
Dear sir / Madam,/To whom it may concern تجنب الاختصارات بكل انواعها : (contraction / abbreviation / acronyms) تجنب الامر : (imperative) تجنب اللغة العامية : colloquial words / slang تجنب العبارات المبتذلة المكررة كثيرا : clichés في الخاتمة نستخدم :	Hello / Hi / Hey نستخدم الاختصارات والامر واللغة العامية. في الخاتمة نستخدم :
Regards/Yours Sincerely - faithfully / Thank you/ Best wishes	Bye / See you later (soon) / Talk to you later/Take care / Thanks / Love /Cheers/Catch up soon / Lots of love.
جمل شهيره في الایمیل رسمي : - I am writing with regard to .... - I am writing to the complaint you made .. - With reference to our telephone conversation on Friday, I would like to let you know that ... - Please, you can use the attached R.S.V.P form	جمل شهيره في الایمیل الغير رسمي : - How are you? = How are things? - How is it going? - I'm sorry. I haven't ..... - Contact me ASAP. - Let me know your reply soon.

## Choose the correct answer :-

- Your closing of an email when you open with : (Dear Sir or Madam / To whom it may concern) should be .....?  
a. Take care, b. Bye, c. Hi d. Yours faithfully,
- In an informal email you could write .....  
a. Can you call me back ASAP? b. Can you call me back as soon as possible?  
c. I am writing regarding the meeting we have arranged. .  
d. With reference to our conversation this morning, I'd like to let you know .....
- If you close your email with "Bye", you could have opened with ..... ?  
a. Dear Mr, b. Dear Mum, c. Dear Sara, d. Hi Sara,
- When you know the person well and have an informal business relationship use ..... to close an email.  
a. Yours sincerely, b. Yours faithfully, c. Best wishes, d. See you later,
- A message with a link to a funny YouTube clip is kind of a/an .....  
a. formal email b. informal email c. biography essay d. descriptive essay
- Imperative should be avoided in .....  
a. formal emails b. informal emails c. an email to a friend d. the sender line
- A message to a friend on a social networking site is a kind of a/an .....  
a. formal email b. informal email c. expository essay d. persuasive essay
- You can use ..... in informal email.  
a. slang b. imperative c. abbreviations d. a,b and c
- LM Messaging language doesn't require ..... rules of writing.  
a. formal b. informal c. former d. comfortable



## Grammar

## الكلام المنقول / الغير مباشر

## 1) Statement الجملة الخبرية

✓ استخدم (said) لو مش وراها مفعول سواء الجملة مباشر او غير مباشر. وبعدها جملة.

EX: He **said** he was ill that day.

EX: He **said** Samy was ill that day. ⇒ **said** فاعل باديء و وراه فعل اذن جملة جديدة فالحل

✓ استخدم (told) في الغير مباشر (الاقواس اتحدفت) ولازم وراها مفعول في جملة الغير مباشر مرفوعة درجة (ماضي).

EX: He **told** me he was ill that day.

EX: He **told** Samy he was ill that day. ⇒ **told** مفعول عشان وراه فاعل باديء جملة جديدة فالحل

✓ بما ان (said/told) ماضي كمل ماضي : يعني اختار ماضي. ومش تنسي ان (الماضي البسيط) بيبقي (ماضي تام).

Direct	Reported
مضارع بسيط (تصريف الاول للفعل)	ماضي بسيط (التصريف الثاني للفعل)
مضارع مستمر (am/is/are + V-ing)	ماضي مستمر (was / were + V-ing)
مضارع تام (has/have + P.P)	ماضي تام (had + P.P)
ماضي بسيط (تصريف الثاني للفعل)	ماضي تام (had + P.P)
will / shall / may / can / must	would / should / might / could / had to

✓ كما نغير أسماء الإشارة وظروف الزمان والمكان والكلمات الدالة على الأزمنة كما يلي:

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
this	that	these	those
here	there	now	then / at that time
ago	before	today	that day
tomorrow	the <u>next</u> day the <u>following</u> day the day <u>after</u>	yesterday	the <u>last</u> day the <u>previous</u> day the day <u>before</u>

EX: Hassan **told** Marwa (that) he **would** go on a trip the next day.

✓ نفهم من كل الشرح دا : طالما فعل القول (ماضي) لازم تكلمة الجملة (ماضي) ورفع الزمن درجة لازم ماضي مع مراعاة ان (الماضي البسيط) يتحول ل (ماضي تام).

### حالات لا نرفع الزمن درجة يبقي (مضارع / يعود لأصله)

✓ إذا كان الجملة عبارة عن (حقيقة) وتبقي (مضارع ب s او بدون s).

EX: Sara **told** me that Paris **is** the capital of France.

✓ لو شفت الست كلمات اللي تحت دول : جنب فعل القول (said / told) وهي :-

⇒ (a short time ago / a moment ago / now / just / just now / recently)

EX: He **said** **just now** that he'll visit me tomorrow.

✓ إذا كان فعل القول (مضارع) مثل : (say / says / tell / tells) ف طبيعي تفضل الجملة (مضارع).

EX: He **says** that he **is** ready for the exam.

✓ لو (أسماء الإشارة وظروف الزمان والمكان والكلمات الدالة على الأزمنة) متحولتش للماضي ف طبيعي تفضل الجملة في زمنها الاصلي.

EX: Mona **said** that she (**met** / had met) Sara yesterday.



✓ يمكن أن نستخدم أفعال أخرى بدلا من (said / told) مثل :- ✓

⇒ (suggested/admitted/denied/apologized for/objected to/insisted on) + V-ing

EX: He suggested going to the zoo.

⇒ (promised / agreed / advised/ reminded /decided / encouraged ) + to + مصدر

EX: He promised to visit me the next day.

⇒ (claimed / complained /admitted / denied / explained / informed / reported)

(حسب الترجمة) ⇒ جملة مرفوعة ماضي + that +

EX: He complained that the service was slow and bad in that hotel.

### ملاحظات هامة جدا :-

- لو شفت (then / at that moment/at that time) اختار (ماضي مستمر) : (was/were + V-ing).
- لو شفت (the last ... / the previous ... / ... before) اختار (ماضي تام) : (had + P.P).
- لو شفت (the next .../the following/.... after) اختار (مصدر + would) : (would + مصدر).
- لو شفت (promised / predicted / expected) اختار (مصدر + would) : (would + مصدر).

## الكلام المنقول / الغير مباشر

## 2) Question الأسئلة

- استخدم (asked) مع اي سؤال سواء فيه مفعول او مفيش و بتعرف السؤال من اداة الاستفهام (what / when ..) او تلاقي سؤال ب هل اوله : (if / whether) ولو مش لقيت (asked) ممكن تلاقي بدل منها بس دول مش وراهم مفعول : (inquired/wanted to know/wondered/would like to know) ⇒

EX: He asked me where she would spend the next day. (فيه مفعول يبقى asked بس)  
EX: He asked / inquired if we could meet that day. (asked مفيش مفعول ينفع كل البدائل ومعاهم)

- بعد كدا هتلاقي رابط : (اداة استفهام / if = whether) :-  
أ- (if / whether) إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو فعل ناقص بمعنى (هل).  
ب- أداة الاستفهام إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بها حسب معناها.  
ج- بعد كدا هتلاقي وراها (فاعل) وبعدها فعل مرفوع درجة يعني (ماضي).

..... . الفعل مرفوع درجة اي ماضى + الفاعل + اداة الاستفهام / if = whether

EX: Samia asked Hala what she was doing then.  
EX: Mona asked me if I had finished reading the novel.

- مش تنسي (whether) بتيجي مع (or) وممكن كمان يجي وراها (مصدر + to) مش (weather) اوعى لا .  
EX: Father wanted to know (whether) I had done my homework (or not).

- مش تنسي السؤال اللي فيه (do/does) بيتحول (ماضي بسيط) والسؤال اللي فيه (did) بيتحول (ماضي تام).  
EX: He said to me "Where do you live?" – He asked me where I lived.  
EX: He said to me "Which grade did I get?" – He asked me which grade I had got.

- خلي بالك لو الجملة الاستفهامية بدأت ب (صيغ الطلب) فالحل مضارع زى :-  
⇒ (Do you know / Have you got an idea / Can you tell me / Could you tell me) .....?  
⇒ (Tell me / Let me know / I want to know / I don't know / I don't understand) ....  
EX: Can you tell me where the bank (is) ?

- اكيد لو فعل القول مضارع فالحل مضارع او كلمات عدم رفع الزمن زى :-  
⇒ (asks / inquires / wants to know / wonders)  
⇒ (now / just / just now / a moment ago / a short time ago / recently) (كلمات لا تغير الزمن)  
EX: He asks what he is doing now.  
EX: He asked me a short time ago what time the match is.

- نحول (shall we ...?) في المباشر الي (we should ...) في الغير مباشر بمعنى (هيا بنا).  
EX: My friend asked me if we should go to the club.



## الكلام المنقول / الغير مباشر

الجملة الأمرية : (الطلبات و الأوامر و النصيحة و التحذير و الإقتراحات)

خطوات تحويل الجملة الأمرية عموماً من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر :

١- نحول (said to) إلى أي فعل من الأفعال الآتية حسب المعنى (الترجمة) وهم :-

told	أخبر	advised	نصح	expected	توقع
asked	طلب	encouraged	شجع	threatened	هدد
ordered	أمر	instructed	أمر	begged	توسل
commanded	أمر	invited	دعي	helped	ساعد
warned	حذر	reminded	ذكر	refused	رفض

٢- نحذف الأقواس و نربط بـ:

✓ ثم (to) ثم (المصدر) إذا كان الأمر مثبت باديء ب (المصدر) : (مع الشيء من المستحب فعله / شيء جيد).

✓ ثم (not to) ثم (المصدر) إذا كان الأمر منفي باديء ب (Don't/ Never) بعد حذف (Don't/ Never) : (شيء ليس من المستحب فعله / شيء ليس جيد).

⇒ مصدر + (to / not to) + (فعل القول زي ما ف المربع فوق) + الفاعل

EX: Father encouraged / advised me to study science at university.

EX: Mother warned her children not to play with matches.

⇒ (suggested / recommended) + V-ing ..... + الفاعل

EX: Ali suggested going to the cinema.

⇒ (مصدر) + فاعل + that + (suggested / recommended) + الفاعل  
(مصدر + should)

EX: Ali suggested that we go / should go to the cinema.

## Open Book : Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

✓ الروابط الزمنية زي (while / when / after / before / until) لما بتربط أزمنة في الماضي. تبقي كما هي لتناسق الجمل. حتي لو في الجملة ما يمنع رفع الزمن درجة.

EX: He told me while the player was playing, he fell down.

EX: She said she didn't sleep until she had done homework.

✓ كلمات المضارع البسيط زي : (always / sometimes / usually / often / habit / every ..) تدل علي المضارع البسيط بس لو ذكرت في جملة (غير مباشر) يتحول الزمن ل (ماضي بسيط).

EX: He told me that he always got up early to school.

✓ المنوع من الصرف (subjunctive) :-

⇒ (suggested / recommended / demanded / insisted / advised / threatened / It's + adj)  
that + فاعل + (مصدر)  
(مصدر + should)

EX: It's important that (he) see / should see a doctor.

EX: The publisher insisted that the writer send / should send the file as attachment.



## Questions : Open Book: Out Of The Box : (Hello! Advanced Level)

### Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. Which ..... of psychology does Sara study?  
a) root                      b) trunk                      c) branch                      d) leaf
2. This page is ..... : I need some tape (شريط لاصق) (الزققة).  
a) stretching              b) tearing                      c) boasting                      d) joinning
3. I can ..... your reaction as I experienced that before.  
a) relate to                  b) make up                      c) look back                      d) fed up
4. Death is a ....., we all believe in.  
a) myth                      b) legend                      c) universal                      d) fable
5. I was ..... to lunch by my boss in a five-star restaurant.  
a) entertained              b) reflected                      c) intended                      d) approached
6. My father insists that I ..... whatever I do to him.  
a) bounce                      b) entertain                      c) cheer                      d) relate
7. Crime is a/an ..... of poverty and ignorance.  
a) prespective              b) creature                      c) moral                      d) purpose
8. The hotel ..... a swimming pool, a sauna and a gum.  
a) consists                      b) boasts                      c) creates                      d) cheers
9. ....! There's no need to get nervous.  
a) Cheer                      b) Exaggerate                      c) Steady                      d) Boast
10. Mr. Mazen is a ..... sort of person; you can rely on him.  
a) eternal                      b) steady                      c) boastful                      d) aggressive
11. We had an argument, but later we shook hands and .....  
a) related to                  b) made up                      c) looked back                      d) fed up
12. When he saw the old photos, memories of his childhood began to ..... in.  
a) flood                      b) cheer                      c) warn                      d) deliver

### Choose the correct answer: (Grammar)

13. "Do you practise a hobby?" – He asked me if I ..... a hobby.  
a) practises                  b) practised                      c) had practised                      d) was practising
14. "Did you practise a hobby before?" – He asked me if I ..... a hobby before.  
a) practises                  b) practised                      c) had practised                      d) was practising
15. Doha asked me whether we ..... to our grandparents'.  
a) usually went              b) has usually gone              c) had usually gone              d) usually go
16. He ..... me if our team played well, we would win.  
a) said                      b) told                      c) inquired                      d) asked
17. The teacher wanted to know which exams I .....  
a) passed                      b) have passed                      c) am passing                      d) had passed
18. The boss asked Sherief if he ..... working on the night shifts.  
a) minds                      b) has minded                      c) was minding                      d) minded
19. Noha asked her sister what she ..... at her friends next birthday party.  
a) had worn                  b) should wear                      c) would wear                      d) wore
20. I can't decide ..... to start a new project.  
a) if                      b) whether                      c) weather                      d) who
21. **LM** I was ..... that a secondary school had been built in the neighbouring village.  
a) said                      b) asked                      c) told                      d) advised



22. **LM** My father told me that we ..... to the club until we finished our homework.  
a) **don't go**                      b) **won't go**                      c) **hadn't gone**                      d) **wouldn't go**
23. **LM** Samir says that he ..... the holiday in Hurghada when he has finished exams.  
a) **has spent**                      b) **will spend**                      c) **would spend**                      d) **had spent**
24. **LM** She informed me that my friend Rami ..... a terrible accident while he was driving to work.  
a) **have had**                      b) **had**                      c) **will be having**                      d) **is having**
25. **LM** "Don't park here; it is forbidden." - The policeman said we ..... park there.  
a) **not to**                      b) **shouldn't**                      c) **mustn't**                      d) **must**
26. **LM** My friend suggests ..... for the next bus because it is too late.  
a) **not waiting**                      b) **waiting**                      c) **we waited**                      d) **not to wait**
27. My friend suggests ..... for the next bus because it is too late.  
a) **we not waiting**                      b) **we waiting**                      c) **we waited**                      d) **we not wait**
28. **LM** Mum said, "Did you do your homework alone?"  
Which of the following is the correct reported sentence?  
a) **Mum asked if I have done my homework alone.**  
b) **Mum asked to do my homework alone.**  
c) **Mum asked if I had done my homework alone .**  
d) **Mum asked if I would do my homework alone.**

## Unit Twelve

## Exercises on important Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Mazen ..... when our national team scored a goal in the final.  
a. chopped      b. flooded      c. looked back      d. cheered
2. The French film was based on .....  
a. myths      b. armours      c. paces      d. tears
3. Isis And Osiris are characters from the ..... of the pharaohs.  
a. mythology      b. conflict      c. solution      d. setting
4. Messi, Ronaldo are eternal football .....  
a. chivalries      b. legends      c. perseverance      d. relevance
5. Antra Ibn Shadad is a/an ..... knight.  
a. legendary      b. jealous      c. steady      d. weak
6. Teaching is undoubtedly a/an ..... profession.  
a. honourable      b. debatable      c. steady      d. grateful
7. If you want to succeed in life and work, don't .....  
a. chop      b. flood      c. look back      d. cheer
8. Pharaohs believed in ..... life after death.  
a. humble      b. generous      c. polite      d. eternal
9. Be careful not to cut your fingers while ..... the meat.  
a. chopping      b. flooding      c. looking back      d. cheering
10. My daughter Sara likes the ..... of the rabbit and the fox.  
a. humble      b. flood      c. fable      d. tear
11. The River Nile used to ..... its banks before the High Dam had been built.  
a. chop      b. flood      c. look back      d. cheer
12. Scientifically, ..... clean and refresh your eyes.  
a. myths      b. armours      c. paces      d. tears
13. Despite his wealth and social position, Mr Ali is a ..... man.  
a. humble      b. grateful      c. eternal      d. fed up
14. I ..... on my bed for a few minutes to relax.  
a. looked back      b. stretched out      c. cheered      d. boasted
15. My son is making a/an ..... progress in his university studies.  
a. jealous      b. generous      c. steady      d. grateful
16. It wasn't polite of him to ..... about his wealth in front of the poor.  
a. look back      b. stretch out      c. feed up      d. boast
17. There is enough ..... that he is convict.  
a. chivalry      b. knight      c. evidence      d. cause
18. Crocodiles are ..... that live on land or in water.  
a. morals      b. perspectives      c. conclusions      d. creatures
19. Death is a/an ..... truth.  
a. relevant      b. universal      c. entertaining      d. boring



20. I find it difficult to ..... to the moral of this story.  
**a. intend**                      **b. approach**                      **c. relate**                      **d. bounce**
21. It is known that white clothes ..... heat.  
**a. stretch**                      **b. slip**                      **c. deserve**                      **d. reflect**
22. The lesson that a story teaches us is its .....  
**a. moral**                      **b. perspective**                      **c. conclusion**                      **d. creature**
23. I find your company صداقة / صعبة ..... You're really a good friend.  
**a. relevant**                      **b. frustrating**                      **c. entertaining**                      **d. boring**
24. There's an eternal ..... between good and evil.  
**a. mythology**                      **b. conflict**                      **c. solution**                      **d. setting**
25. Your qualifications and skills are not ..... to this type of work.  
**a. relevant**                      **b. frustrating**                      **c. entertaining**                      **d. boring**
26. Fables are of particular ..... to children.  
**a. context**                      **b. humour**                      **c. relevance**                      **d. argument**
27. Everybody sees the situation through their own .....  
**a. moral**                      **b. perspective**                      **c. conclusion**                      **d. creature**
28. The ..... of a story is its time and place.  
**a. mythology**                      **b. conflict**                      **c. solution**                      **d. setting**
29. Most of my friends have a sense of ..... When I am with them, I never stop laughing.  
**a. context**                      **b. humour**                      **c. relevance**                      **d. argument**
30. In ....., respecting our parents and teachers is an important part of our customs.  
**a. moral**                      **b. perspective**                      **c. conclusion**                      **d. creature**
31. There should be an urgent ..... to this issue.  
**a. mythology**                      **b. conflict**                      **c. solution**                      **d. setting**
32. .... is behaviour that is honourable, kind, generous, and brave.  
**a. Chivalry**                      **b. Legend**                      **c. Perseverance**                      **d. Relevance**
33. Arab ..... were known for their bravery, honour and skill.  
**a. hares**                      **b. versions**                      **c. whiles**                      **d. knights**
34. He divorced his wife in a/an ..... of anger.  
**a. myth**                      **b. armour**                      **c. fit**                      **d. legend**
35. It is not easy to defeat such a brave knight in .....  
**a. myth**                      **b. armour**                      **c. piece**                      **d. tear**
36. She is both beautiful and polite. You're just ..... of her.  
**a. jealous**                      **b. generous**                      **c. polite**                      **d. fed up**
37. In the past, economic activity was ..... mainly around farming.  
**a. obeyed**                      **b. occurred**                      **c. paused**                      **d. centred**
38. You have to pay the printed price. The prices in this shop are not .....  
**a. honourable**                      **b. debatable**                      **c. steady**                      **d. grateful**
39. The police launched a/an ..... attack on the terrorist cell خلية إرهابية.  
**a. beloved**                      **b. grateful**                      **c. real-life**                      **d. fierce**
40. .... is determination to keep trying to achieve something in spite of difficulties.  
**a. Chivalry**                      **b. Legend**                      **c. Perseverance**                      **d. Relevance**

41. In ancient times, stories were told .....  
**a. verbally      b. throughout      c. unfairly      d. debatably**
42. The ball ..... off the defender's knee and into the goal.  
**a. intended      b. approached      c. related      d. bounced**
43. "Stop boasting, man! We are all fed up with it."  
 Here, the adjective "fed up" is a synonym of .....  
**a. annoyed      b. bored      c. a & b      d. full**
44. Myths used to pass ..... from one generation to the next verbally.  
**a. up      b. down      c. on      d. b & c**

**Exercises on Expressions and Prepositions**

45. She ..... a loud shout once she heard the good news.  
**a. applied      b. gave      c. taught      d. found**
46. .... attention to what your teacher says.  
**a. Take      b. Support      c. Bring      d. Pay**
47. He has ..... the risk of driving along the desert road alone at night.  
**a. taken      b. supported      c. brought      d. paid**
48. It is good to ..... the useful lesson you have learnt from the story.  
**a. apply      b. give      c. do      d. make**
49. She is always boasting ..... her role in the company.  
**a. with      b. about      c. that      d. off**
50. He stretched ..... in the warm sunshine on the beach.  
**a. with      b. of      c. out      d. at**



## Unit Twelve : Grammar

### تمارين علي الكلام الغير مباشر : الجملة الخبرية

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Mazen **told** me that he ..... his graduation research **then**.  
a) was doing      b) has done      c) had done      d) did
2. Mazen **told** me that he ..... his graduation research **the week before**.  
a) was doing      b) has done      c) had done      d) did
3. Mazen **told** me that he ..... his graduation research **the week after**.  
a) was doing      b) would do      c) had done      d) did
4. Mazen **told** me that he ..... his graduation research **the week after**.  
a) was doing      b) is doing      c) had done      d) did
5. Mazen **told** me that he ..... his graduation research **yesterday**.  
a) was doing      b) has done      c) had done      d) did
6. Mazen **tells** me that he ..... his graduation research **now**.  
a) was doing      b) is doing      c) had done      d) did
7. I told the tourist that the Pyramids ..... one of the seven wonders of the world.  
a) were      b) are      c) have been      d) will be
8. Hany says that he ..... the holiday in Alexandria.  
a) spent      b) will spend      c) would spend      d) had spent
9. Hany said that he ..... the next holiday in Alexandria.  
a) spent      b) will spend      c) would spend      d) had spent
10. Adel promised that he ..... me the next day.  
a) visit      b) would visit      c) will visit      d) had visited
11. Mr. Mahmoud Elnaggar said ..... his book.  
a) this was      b) that was      c) this is      d) that is
12. Mr. Elnaggar said ..... his books.  
a) these are      b) these were      c) those were      d) those are
13. He said just now that he ..... his homework.  
a) is doing      b) was doing      c) had done      d) would do
14. Sama informed us that she ..... A new video at that moment.  
a) had made      b) was making      c) making      d) have made
15. Father says that oxygen ..... thin on the top of mountains.  
a) was      b) is      c) has been      d) had been
16. Father said that oxygen ..... thin on the top of mountains.  
a) was      b) is      c) has been      d) had been
17. Marawan said that he ..... Ahmed since he travelled to America.  
a) didn't see      b) haven't seen      c) hadn't seen      d) hadn't been seen
18. Leila says that she ..... having a job interview today.  
a) was      b) had been      c) is      d) is being
19. Samy ..... Khalid he had applied for a new job the day before.  
a) said      b) told      c) asked      d) ordered
20. Samy ..... Khalid had applied for a new job the day before.  
a) said      b) told      c) asked      d) ordered



21. The teacher told us that light things ..... on water.  
 a) float                      b) floated                      c) floats                      d) had floated
22. Sara said that her brother had gone to the stadium .....  
 a) the day before      b) ago                      c) the before day      d) then
23. Sara said that her brother went to the stadium .....  
 a) the day before      b) yesterday                      c) the day after      d) then
24. Ali said he ..... his father at the airport the next Monday.  
 a) had met                      b) will meet                      c) met                      d) was meeting
25. Fares said that he is revising his lessons.....  
 a) now                      b) yesterday                      c) that night                      d) the day before

تمارين علي الكلام الغير مباشر : الجملة الإستفهامية

1. Samir ..... me why I had applied for that job.  
 a) said                      b) inquired                      c) asked                      d) ordered
2. Mazen asked me ..... I had travelled to Aswan before.  
 a) unless                      b) if                      c) without                      d) except
3. The teacher asked me ..... I had been absent the day before.  
 a) whether                      b) why                      c) what                      d) how
4. Ali asked me where ..... the night before.  
 a) I had spent                      b) I spent                      c) had I spent                      d) did I spend
5. Ola asked Hala when the lecture.....  
 a) starts                      b) will start                      c) would start                      d) can start
6. He asked me ..... I had got my result or not.  
 a) whether                      b) weather                      c) if                      d) had
7. He asked me..... or not I had got my result.  
 a) if                      b) whether                      c) that                      d) which
8. Can you tell me how ..... now ?  
 a) the weather is                      b) is the weather                      c) the weather was                      d) was the weather
9. She ..... if I had found her lost wallet.  
 a) said                      b) told                      c) wandered                      d) inquired
10. I want to know how much .....  
 a) this book is                      b) this book was                      c) that book is                      d) that book was
11. I wanted to know how much .....  
 a) this book is                      b) this book was                      c) that book is                      d) that book was
12. Maha asked me if we ..... to the club that night.  
 a) should go                      b) shall go                      c) had gone                      d) went
13. The interviewer asked the writer ..... he had started his career.  
 a) whether                      b) when                      c) if                      d) how many
14. Let me know how ..... the nearest supermarket.  
 a) can I reach                      b) could I reach                      c) I can reach                      d) I could reach
15. My friend wondered if I .....anything then.  
 a) shall do                      b) did                      c) was doing                      d) had done
16. My friend wondered if I .....anything the next day.  
 a) would do                      b) did                      c) was doing                      d) had done



17. My friend wondered if I .....anything the last day.

- a) shall do      b) did      c) was doing      d) had done

18. My friend wonders if I .....anything now.

- a) should do      b) am doing      c) was doing      d) had done

19. Have you got an idea where .....

- a) is the post office      b) the post office was  
c) the post office is      d) was the post office

20. The teacher asked me what I ..... if I boil water.

- a) will get      b) get      c) would get      d) gets

21. She asked me how often I ..... to school a week.

- a) go      b) went      c) had gone      d) would go

22. He asked me just now whether I ..... the match or not.

- a) watched      b) had watched      c) watches      d) am watching

تمارين علي الكلام الغير مباشر : الجملة الأمرية والاقتراح

1. Our teacher advised us ..... our time to reach our goal.

- a) to manage      b) managing      c) not to manage      d) not managing

2. Our teacher advised us ..... our time to reach our goal.

- a) to waste      b) wasting      c) not to waste      d) not wasting

3. Father ..... Ali not to make friends with bad people.

- a) invited      b) warned      c) allowed      d) encouraged

4. Mother asked Hala ..... the housework before the guests' arrival.

- a) to finishing      b) to finish      c) don't finish      d) not to finish

5. My friend encouraged me..... on the next english course.

- a) to enrolling      b) enrol      c) enrolling      d) to enroll

6. The manager ..... the employees not to come after 8.

- a) made      b) wondered      c) instructed      d) said

7. Mazen suggested ..... the next lecture.

- a) to attending      b) attending      c) we attended      d) don't attend

8. Mazen suggested that..... the next lecture.

- a) to attending      b) attending      c) we attend      d) don't attend

9. Mazen suggested ..... the next lecture.

- a) to attending      b) attend      c) we attend      d) don't attend

10. Mazen suggested ..... the next lecture.

- a) to attending      b) we should attend      c) we attended      d) don't attend

11. She ..... her mother to allow her to go on a trip with friends.

- a) reminded      b) suggested      c) begged      d) said

12. I recommended that Ali ..... to the club with us.

- a) has gone      b) go      c) should go      d) b and c

13. It is essential that we ..... our country.

- a) have preserved      b) are preserved  
c) preserve      d) preserved

14. A doctor warned me ..... smoke in order to keep healthy.

- a) to      b) not to      c) didn't      d) don't





**Final Revision**  
**Great Expectations**  
**by**  
**Mahmoud Elnaggar**



## Chapter One

**Philip Pirrip, (Pip)** was 7 year old boy. His name was difficult to say, so it became pip. He was an orphan يتيم. His parents and five of his brothers and sisters were dead, when he was very young. He lived with his sister and her husband, **Joe Gargery**, who was Pip's friend. Joe was a blacksmith حداد and Mrs. Joe was 20 years older than Pip.

One cold afternoon in winter, Pip sat alone in the marshes مستنقعات crying. He went to the graveyard مقابر and sat by his parents' grave قبر. A man with leg-irons كلابشات القدم appeared from behind a grave. He asked Pip where he lived and with whom. He was thin and dirty. When he knew that Joe was a blacksmith. He asked him to get him the blacksmith's file مبرد and some food to let him live.

Pip got home. While he was helping prepare lunch, he heard that two convicts مدان escaped from the prison ships, where people who committed crimes يرتكب جريمة were put. There was a warning for people. Pip realized that the man was one of them and asked for the file to take off (يخلع) the leg-irons and escape from the marshes.

The next day was the Christmas day يوم عيد رأس السنة. Pip took some food and Joe's file and ran to the graveyard. There was another man with leg-irons but disappeared in the mist شبورة. Pip found his man and gave him the food and the file who stared to remove his leg-irons. Pip felt guilty شعر بالذنب of what he had done. He wanted to tell Joe but he feared that Joe mightn't want to be his friend again. He said nothing.

The guests الضيوف arrived home. Mrs Joe discovered that the meat pie فطيرة اللحم disappeared. The Guests forgot about the meat pie when some soldiers جنود entered asking Joe to mend some handcuffs كلابشات اليد. They were looking for 2 convicts who broke the handcuffs and escaped. After mending the handcuffs, the soldiers went to the marshes. Joe and Pip hoped they couldn't find the convicts. Suddenly they heard angry shouts صيحات غاضبة.

## Critical Thinking Questions

♣ **SB** How did Pip feel when he stole the food and the file?

Did he do anything to relieve himself? Why/ Why not?

♣ كيف كان شعور بيب عندما سرق الطعام والمبرد (المطرقة)؟ هل فعل هذا ليريح نفسه (ضميره)؟ لماذا / لماذا لا؟

- He felt guilty شعر بالذنب. He wanted to tell Joe what he had done.
- He didn't tell Joe because he thought he might not want to be his friend if he told him.

♣ **SB** What is your impression of the man that Pip meets in the graveyard?

Clarify your answer.

♣ ما انطباعك عن الرجل الذي قابله بيب في المستنقعات؟ وضح إجابتك.

- At first I didn't love him but after he helped Pip, I loved him.

♣ **SB** What do we learn about Mrs Joe when she says, "I didn't want to look after you! It's bad enough being a blacksmith's wife. I never asked to be your mother!"?

♣ ماذا نتعلم من السيدة جو عندما قالت : "لم أريد ان اعنتي بك ، من السيء ان اتزوج حداد، لم اطلب أبدا ان اصبح ام لك."؟

- She was cruel قاسية to pip and unsatisfied راضية with her life.



- ♣ **SB** How does Dickens use the natural environment to reflect the characters' feelings? Use examples to explain.

♣ كيف استخدم تشارلز ديكنز البيئة الطبيعية ليعكس مشاعر الشخصيات. استخدم أمثلة لتفسير إجابتك.

- Pip's afternoon was cold and grey, like life was dark and sad.
- Pip felt lonely, and being an orphan يتيم, he missed family warmth دفء العائلة.
- While Pip was running after he met the convict, the sky was angry.

- ♣ **SB** "I hope we don't find the convicts, Joe". Why do you think Pip says this?

♣ "أتمنى ألا يجدوا المجرمين يا جو." في رأيك ، لماذا قال بيب ذلك؟

- Pip sympathized تعاطف with the convicts.

- ♣ **LM** Do you think that Pip's being an orphan affected his life? Why?

♣ لان بيب يتيم . هل تعتقد هذا اثر على حياته؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, he lived a miserable life. He had no one to look after him but his sister who treated him badly.

- ♣ **LM** If you were in Pip's place, would you bring the file and food to the stranger? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت احضرت المبرد (المطرقة) وطعام ل الشخص الغريب (المسجون)؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, because I would be frightened of the stranger.
- No, I would tell my sister and Joe what happened ask for their help.
- No, I would tell the police.

- ♣ **LM** Do you think that Pip's older sister led a happy life with her husband? Why?

♣ هل تعتقد ان اخت بيب (السيدة جو) تعيش حياة سعيدة مع زوجها ؟ لماذا؟

- No, she hated كرهت her life because she thought it was bad enough being a blacksmith's wife.

- ♣ **LM** What do you think would have happened if Pip had told his sister about his behaviour with the convict?

♣ ماذا تعتقد ما الذي كان سيحدث لو بيب اخبر اخته عن تصرفه مع المجرم؟

- She would have punished him severely ستعاقبه بقسوة for stealing the food and the file.

- ♣ **LM** "Suddenly, we heard angry shouts nearby. I was afraid of what was about to happen." What do you think was about to happen?

♣ فجأة سمعنا صوت صرخات قريبة. كنت خائف مما كان علي وشك ان يحدث. ما رأيك ما الذي كان سيحدث ؟

- Everyone would know that Pip had helped the convict.

- ♣ **LM** Should Pip have told the soldiers about the convict? Why?

♣ هل كان يجب (كان مفروض) ان بيب يخبر الجنود عن المجرم؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because he was a criminal مجرم. He should be punished for escaping from prison.



## Chapter Two

The soldiers ran into the marshes and we saw two men. They were fighting **يتقاتل** and covered in mud **وحل (طين)**. Pip saw the man that he had helped. The man admitted **اعترف** stealing the food from the blacksmith's house. He told them that he was sorry that he had eaten their meat pie. Joe accepted his apology **اعتذار**. The man was taken to a boat nearby which took him to the black prison ship.

A year passed, Pip worked every day, helping neighbours with small jobs, but in the evening he went to the village school. The old lady who taught him often fell asleep, leaving her grand-daughter, **Biddy**, to show him how to read and write. Joe told Pip that he never went to school as his father didn't let him go but he had a good heart. He taught Joe to be a blacksmith.

Joe preferred that his wife (Mrs Joe) to hit **يضرب** him but not Pip as he wanted him to be best friends. Mrs Joe wanted Pip to be grateful **شاكر / ممتن** to her. Mrs Joe said that **Miss Havisham** wanted Pip to go to her house. She was a very rich lady who lived in the nearby village. Most people had never seen her because she never left her house. She didn't know Pip but she asked **Uncle Pumblechook** if he knew a boy who would go there to play with a child who lives there.

Uncle Pumblechook took Pip to Miss Havisham's house wearing in his best clothes. A very pretty girl "**Estella**" took pip inside the house which was unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside. He entered **دخل** a room with closed curtains **ستائر**, lit by candel **مضاءة بشموع**. He met Miss Havisham, wearing white. He saw a bride **عروس** in a wedding dress, but everything about her was old and sad. She told him that she had a broken heart **قلب مكسور (منفطر)**. She was tired and bored and asked him to play with Estella.

The girl complained **اشتكت** that he was just a poor working boy. Estella and Pip played games while Miss Havisham watched silently. Estella said he had dirty hands **أيدي متسخة** and ugly boots **حذاء قبيح**. Pip felt ashamed **شعر بالخجل (بالعار)**. Miss Havisham asked Pip what he thought of Estella. He told her that Estella was proud **متكبرة** and very pretty **جميلة**, but very rude **وقحة**. Miss Havisham made him leave promising to come back in six days. Estella gave him some food and drink, but She put it on the ground. Tears came to his eyes **بكي**. When she saw that he was crying, she smiled.

Pip returned home, hurt **منكسر** and ashamed of his simple life. Pip told Joe everything. Joe told him to be happy with his position in life. Pip decided to learn as much as he could at the village school. If he had a better education, perhaps Estella would be kinder. He asked Biddy to help him more with his lessons, and she agreed. The village school was very busy and noisy, but he hoped that with hard work, he would leave his simple life behind and become a fine gentleman **شاب نبيل**.

On his way home, Pip met Joe at the village inn. He was sitting with a stranger **رجل غريب**. The man looked at Pip strangely. The man asked if any escaped convicts had been found recently. Pip saw that the man was using a blacksmith's file. It was the file that he had given to the convict (**Magwitch**)! But Joe did not notice.



## Critical Thinking Questions

♣ **SB** Why do you think the man in the inn had Joe's file?

- ♣ في رأيك ، لماذا الرجل في الحانة يحمل مبرد (مطرقة) السيد جو؟  
- That man had met the convict السجين before.

♣ **SB** "I'd rather she hit me than you!"

What does this tell you about Joe's personality?

- "أود (ياريت) لو أنها ضربتني أنا ولم تضربك أنت." ماذا يخبرك هذا عن شخصية جو؟  
- Joe was kind and loved pip very much.

♣ **SB** Why do you think Estella described Pip as common?

- ♣ في رأيك ، لماذا إستيلا وصفت بيب بأنه من العوام (عامّة الناس)؟  
- He had dirty hands أذنية قبيحة and ugly boots أيدي متسخة.

♣ **SB** Why had most people never seen Miss Havisham?

- ♣ لماذا لم يري أحد الانسة هافيشام؟  
- She never left her house.

♣ **SB** Why was Miss Havisham always asking Pip about his opinion of Estella?

- ♣ لماذا كانت الانسة هافيشام تسأل بيب طوال الوقت عن رأيه في إستيلا؟  
- She wanted Pip to fall in love with Estella so that Estella would break his heart لكي تكسر قلبه.

♣ **SB** Do you think education or money was more important?

- ♣ في رأيك أيهما أهم : المال أم التعليم؟  
- Education because it makes people more respectable أكثر إحترامًا ومكانة.

♣ **SB** "It was me. I stole the food from the blacksmith's house."

What does this tell us about the convict's character?

- "أنا الذي سرقت الطعام من بيت الحداد." ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن شخصية المجرم؟  
- He was brave and didn't want to hurt pip. لا يريد ان يؤذي.

♣ **SB** Why do you think Miss Havisham wore a wedding dress?

- ♣ في رأيك ، لماذا ارتدت الانسة هافيشام فستان الزفاف؟  
- She never recovered from not getting married لم تتعافى أبدا من فكرة انها لم تتزوج.

♣ **SB** Why do you think the clock had stopped?

- ♣ في رأيك ، لماذا توقفت الساعات؟  
- Time stopped for Miss Havisham on the day she didn't get married.

♣ **SB** Who was the man Pip met in the inn? Do you think he knew more than he pretended?

- من الرجل الذي قابله بيب في الحانة؟ هل تعتقد أنه يعرف أكثر مما يدعي (عنده معلومات ومخبيها)؟  
- The man knew Pip helped the convict.

♣ **LM** If you were in Pip's place, would you make friends with Joe? Why?

- ♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستكون صداقة مع (ستصاحب) جو؟ لماذا؟  
- Yes, because he loved me, treats me well and I trust him فيه نعم لانه يعاملني جيذا وأنا أثق فيه.



♣ **LM** What do you think might have happened if Joe had gone to school?

♣ في رأيك، ما الذي كان سيحدث لو ان جو ذهب للتعليم في مدرسة؟

- He wouldn't have worked as a blacksmith.
- He might have lived a good life and become a gentleman . شارب نبيل .
- He wouldn't have married Pip's sister.

♣ **LM** The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside. Do you think this atmosphere reflected the circumstances Mrs Havisham had lived in? Why?

♣ المنزل يبدو انه غير مستخدم ومعظم الابواب مغلقة. وكل شيء بداخله مظلم. هل تعتقد هذا الجو العام يعكس الظروف التي تعيش فيها الانسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, she has broken heart and depressed مكتئبة and never wanted to deal with others after her fiancé had left her on her wedding day. She stays indoors المنزل, stopping the clocks and leaving everything the way it was on the day she was to be married.

♣ **LM** "Then she jumped on me like an eagle on a lamb," said Pip. What did these words reflect about the relationship between Pip and his sister?

♣ "ثم قفزت (هجمت) عليه مثلما ينقض النسر على الحمل." قال بيب هذه الجملة. ماذا هذه الكلمات تعكس (تبين) العلاقة بين بيب وأخته؟

- She doesn't treat her brother well. She had never wished to look after him. Pip probably doesn't like her.

♣ **LM** "As I stood before her, I noticed that the clock had stopped at nine ...." What do you think the stoppage of the clock indicates?

♣ عندما وقفت أمامها، لاحظت ان الساعة توقفت عند التاسعة .... ماذا تعتقد توقف الساعة يبين (ما المقصود بتوقف الساعة هنا)؟

- It indicates the stoppage of her life itself as she was shocked to discover that her fiancé had left her on her wedding day.
- That marked the end of her life (نهاية حياتها) كان ذلك بمثابة توقف حياتها

♣ **LM** Do you think Mrs Havisham was right to let Estella break Pip's heart? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل الانسة هافيشام محقة ان تسمح ل إستيلا تكسر قلب بيب؟

- Yes, she wanted to take revenge of all men and break their hearts. من تنتقم
- No, she wasn't right. Miss Havisham raised Estella as an instrument أداة for her revenge against men. She made Estella heartless بلا قلب
- No, Pip wasn't the one that wronged her الذي أذاها بيب ليس الشخص الذي أذاها بيب. She should have taken revenge of her fiancé who had tricked her into giving him most of her money.

♣ **LM** Why do you think Estella didn't hand Pip the food but instead put it on the ground?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا لم تعطي إستيلا الطعام ل بيب في يده ولكن بدلا من ذلك وضعت على الارض؟

- She wasn't a kind-hearted girl طيبة. She wanted to break his heart. She thought that his hands were dirty.

♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you feel ashamed of being poor or common? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستشعر بالخجل من انك فقير او من عامة الناس؟ لماذا؟

- If I were Pip, I wouldn't feel ashamed of being poor. Instead, I would work hard to change my living conditions ظروف المعيشة .

- ♣ **LM** Would you try to get a better education if you were Pip, just to make Estella change her attitude towards you? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل ستحاول ان تحصل علي تعليم أفضل لجعل إستيلا تغير رأيها تجاهك؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, Getting a better education would change my social status الحالة الاجتماعية. This would make Estella change her attitude towards me.

- ♣ **LM** Should Pip have been on good terms with Mrs Joe? Why?

♣ هل كان يجب ان يكون بيب علي علاقة جيدة مع السيدة جو (أخته)؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, Pip is her only brother. Mrs Joe took the place of محل her mother to Pip.  
- No, because she isn't kind to him. She always punishes him whenever he makes mistakes. She wished she hadn't looked after him after their parent's had died.

Mahmoud Elnaggar



## Chapter Three

When Pip realised that the man in the inn had met the convict (**Magwitch**) he helped on the marshes, he wanted to take Joe away. The man gave Pip a new coin wrapped ملفوفة in some paper. When they realised that the coin was a pound note. Joe went back to the inn to return his note to him. However, the man had left.

Mrs Joe put the pound note on a shelf رف. On his next visit to Miss Havisham's house, Estella took him into a gloomy كئيب room where three ladies and a gentleman were waiting. They were Miss Havisham's relatives أقارب, **Sarah, Georgiana, Camilla** and **Raymond Pocket**, who came to see her that day.

Miss Havisham came to see Pip holding up her candle شمعة. Estella asked Pip if she was pretty. He told her she was very pretty and that he wouldn't cry again. Pip met a large, dark-haired man (**Mr Jaggers**) and Pip told him that Miss Havisham asked to see him and the man told him behave himself يحسن التصرف. Pip thought he might be a doctor. Pip didn't want to play. In the dinning room غرفة الطعام there was a table laid تم إعدادها with a table-cloth مفرش السفرة and plates, prepared for a wedding celebration إحتفال الزفاف, but now it was dusty مترب and covered with spiders' webs عشب العناكب. There was a wedding cake تورتة الزفاف on the table. Miss Havisham and Pip walked in the room until Estella and the Pockets came in. They wished Miss Havisham a happy birthday, but she sent them away طردتهم.

Miss Havisham told Pip that the wedding cake was brought a long time before he was born and everything was still there. Miss Havisham told Estella and Pip to play. Estella refused to speak to Pip. Miss Havisham asked him to return in a few days and allowed him to leave. Estella put his food and drink on the ground and shut the door. In the garden, Pip saw another boy (**Herbert Pocket**) looking at him out of a window. The boy came out into the garden to speak to him. Pip called him 'the pale young gentleman الشاب الشاحب'. He wanted to fight with Pip. They fought but Pip beat him and he got a black eye كدمة حول عينيه. The boy was brave and admitted defeat اعترف بالهزيمة.

Mrs Joe and Uncle Pumblechook thought Miss Havisham wanted to give him all her money, and they wanted his visits to continue. Pip told Miss Havisham that he wanted to be a blacksmith, so she gave Joe a large bag of money to pay for his apprenticeship تدريب مهني. She told Pip not to visit her again.

Pip's apprenticeship with Joe began. Pip no longer wanted to be a blacksmith; he was ashamed of his home and his family. Estella was often in his thoughts, although he did not see her any more. She did not like his position وضعه الاجتماعي in life, so he continued his education and worked hard. Biddy taught him as much as she knew. After a year, he wanted to visit Miss Havisham and thank her for helping him.

Orlick, Joe's workman صبي / مساعد was angry as he could not have a holiday like Pip too. Pip did not like Orlick; he was large and slow, and he often tried to make his life difficult at work. An argument جدال began between Orlick and Mrs Joe, who wanted Pip to see Miss Havisham again. Joe stopped them, but Pip felt that there was something strange about Orelick but he doesn't know what it was.



## Critical Thinking Questions

- ♣ **SB** Why did Mrs Joe and uncle Pumblechook want Pip's visits to Miss Havisham's to continue?  
 لماذا ارادت السيدة جو والسيد بامبلتشوك ان يستمر بيب في زيارته لمنزل الانسة هافيشام؟  
 - They thought Miss Havisham would give Pip all her money.
- ♣ **SB** Why do you think Miss Havisham still kept the wedding cake?  
 في رأيك، لماذا كانت الانسة هافيشام لا تزال تحتفظ ب كعكة (تورته) الزفاف؟  
 - It was a memory of the day her lover left her.
- ♣ **SB** In what ways do you think Estella is a cruel character?  
 الي اي مدى تعتقد ان استيلا كانت شخصية قاسية؟  
 - She was proud, she made Pip cry.
- ♣ **SB** Do you feel sorry for Miss Havisham? Why?  
 هل تتعاطف مع الانسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟  
 - Yes, as her heart was broken (منكسر من الحزن) قبلها منقطر.
- ♣ **SB** Why do you think the dining room had not changed for many years?  
 في رأيك، لماذا لم تتغير حجرة الطعام لسنوات عديدة؟  
 - Miss Havisham wanted to keep the memory of the day that had broken her heart.
- ♣ **SB** Why do you think there were spiders and mice everywhere in the dining room?  
 في رأيك، لماذا كان هناك عناكب وفنران في كل مكان بغرفة الطعام؟  
 - The rooms hadn't been used for many years.
- ♣ **SB** Why do you think Estella refused to speak to Pip when Havisham asked them to play?  
 في رأيك، لماذا رفضت استيلا ان تتحدث ل بيب عندما طلبت هافيشام منهما ان يلعا ؟  
 - Estella didn't like pip's appearance or position (مكانته) in life.
- ♣ **SB** How was Pip trying to improve himself?  
 كيف حاول بيب ان يحسن من وضعه؟  
 - Biddy gave him lessons and taught him as much as she knew.
- ♣ **SB** Why do you think Pip was frightened of the man in the inn?  
 في رأيك، لماذا كان بيب خائفا من الرجل في الحانة؟  
 - The man had the file (المعدن) (السجين) that Pip had given to the convict.
- ♣ **SB** Why do you think Havisham was always asking Pip about his opinion of Estella?  
 في رأيك، لماذا كانت الانسة هافيشام تسأل بيب كثيرا عن رأيه في استيلا؟  
 - She wanted him to like Estella so she can break his heart.
- ♣ **SB** Do you think that Pip is becoming a better person after meeting Miss Havisham? Why?  
 هل تعتقد ان بيب تحسن بعد لقاء الانسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟  
 - Yes, he now wanted to learn as much as he could.



- ♣ **LM** Should Pip have taken Joe away from the mysterious man in the inn? Why?  
 ♣ هل كان يجب علي بيب ان يأخذ جو بعيدا عن الرجل الغامض في الحانة؟ لماذا؟
- Yes, he had to. It seems يبدو that the mysterious man in the inn had met the convict.  
 كان بيب يخشى ان يكون قد تم إكتشاف سره Pip feared that the secret might have been discovered
- ♣ **LM** Why do you think the mysterious man in the inn gave Pip a coin wrapped in a banknote?  
 - لماذا تعتقد ان الرجل الغامض في الحانة اعطي بيب عملة معدنية ملفوفة في عملة ورقية؟
- I think the convict asked the stranger to give the pound note to Pip to express his gratitude to him ليعبر عن إمتانه له  
 I think the convict asked the stranger to give the pound note to Pip to express his gratitude to him
- ♣ **LM** Why do you think Pip felt frightened when the mysterious man in the inn gave him a coin?  
 - لماذا تعتقد ان بيب يشعر بالخوف عندما اعطاه الرجل الغامض في الحانة عملة معدنية؟
- Pip feels that the mysterious man in the inn has a connection with the convict. The man gave Pip the money saying, "This is yours هذا لك, but be careful!" perhaps Pip thought this money might cause him some problems.  
 - Because he was afraid he would get into trouble يدخل في مشاكل and he would be accused of helping the convict يتهم بـ helping the convict.
- ♣ **LM** If you were Estella, would you try to break Pip's heart? Why?  
 ♣ لو كنت مكان إستيلا، هل كنت ستحاول تحطيم قلب بيب؟ ولماذا؟
- No, because Pip was king and didn't harm anyone.
- ♣ **LM** Do you think that Mrs Havisham really wanted Pip to come and play with Estella? Why?  
 - هل تعتقد ان الانسة هافيشام ارادت حقا ان يأتي بيب ويلعب مع إستيلا؟ لماذا؟
- No. I don't think so. Miss Havisham wanted Estella to break Pip's heart.
- ♣ **LM** Is it psychologically accepted that Mrs Havisham wanted Estella to break Pip's heart? Why?  
 - هل من المقبول نفسيا ان الانسة هافيشام أرادت ان تحطم إستيلا لكسر قلب بيب من أجل الانتقام؟
- No, it isn't accepted. Miss Havisham is killing the innocence of their childhood تقتل للثأر. She uses Estella to break Pip's heart for revenge. براءة الطفولة.
- ♣ **LM** If you were in Mrs Havisham's place, would you continue wearing the wedding dress for such a long time? Why?  
 - لو كنت مكان الانسة هافيشام، هل ستستمر في ارتداء فستان الزفاف لفترة طويلة؟ لماذا؟
- No, I would overcome such a sad experience and سوف أتغلب علي هذه التجربة السيئة complete my life.
- ♣ **LM** Do you pity Pip for his situation with Mrs Havisham and Estella? Why?  
 ♣ هل تشفق علي وضع بيب مع الانسة هافيشام وإستيلا؟ لماذا؟
- Yes, because he was innocent بريء and did no harm to be punished for.
- ♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you be on good terms with Orlick? Why?  
 ♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل ستكون علي علاقة جيدة مع أورليك؟ لماذا؟
- No. because Orlick tried to make Pip's life difficult at work.
- ♣ **LM** Should Estella have been cruel to Pip? Why?  
 ♣ هل كان يجب ان تكون إستيلا قاسية علي قلب بيب؟ لماذا؟
- No, she shouldn't. Estella's actions تصرفات made Pip feel ashamed of his life.



## Chapter Four

When Pip visited Miss Havisham, he was sorry that Estella was not there. Pip told Miss Havisham that he came to thank her for his apprenticeship. She told him to visit her once a year. She told him that Estella had gone away for her education and she would become a lady.

On the way home, Pip met **Mr Wopsle**, one of the guests from that Christmas dinner a few years ago. They saw Orlick who acted strangely **يتصرف بغرابة** and said that some more convicts had escaped from the prison ship.

Someone (**Orelick**) had broken into Joe's house and hit Mrs Joe on the head. Nothing had been taken, but a convict's leg-irons lay on the floor.

Pip was sure that the convict who he helped before wasn't the criminal **مجرم**. He suspected **شك** Orlick because he was so angry with his sister, but he had no proof **دليل**. Mrs Joe was unable to speak or walk again after the attack, but she could draw a hammer **شاكوش**. Biddy and Pip knew that she meant Orlick. Joe needed help in the house, Biddy came to cook and clean for them.

After years, Pip continued my apprenticeship. He visited Miss Havisham's house once a year. He did not see Estella again. Biddy became an important member in the Joe's household **عائلة**. Pip told her he wanted to become a gentleman. He wanted to lead a different life as he loved Estella and wanted to improve himself as he admired **معجب ب** her very much. He would tell Biddy every thing as he trusted her. Pip wished he would love Biddy as she has a better personality than Estella.

One evening, while Joe and Pip were at the village inn **خمارة / حانة**, Pip saw the gentleman he had met on the stairs at Miss Havisham's house (**Mr Jaggers**). They invited him to come back to the workshop **ورشة** with them. There, he said he was Mr Jaggers, a lawyer **محامي** from London.

Mr Jaggers was working for someone but He could not tell their name (**Magwitch**). He said Pip had great expectations **تطلعات (أمال) عظيمة**. He would receive a large amount of property **ممتلكات (عقارات)** in the future, But he must have an education. The only condition is that he did not ask who his benefactor **مبترع** was. Pip immediately agreed. Joe was so surprised that he did not object **لم يعترض** at all when Mr Jaggers asked him if he could end his apprenticeship immediately.

Pip's education would begin soon in London with **Mr Matthew Pocket** "one of Miss Havisham's relatives". He would be his teacher and he would make a gentleman of Pip and give Pip twenty pounds to buy some new clothes. Joe refused to take money as Pip would leave him as Money makes no difference to his feelings towards Pip.

Joe and Biddy congratulated **يهنيء** Pip before leaving. They were sad that Pip left them. Pip would put fine clothes on at Uncle Pumblechook's house. He didn't want all the poor people see him in his fine clothes. He left the blacksmith's but he felt more ashamed of Joe's poor education. He asked if Biddy could teach Joe to speak better, but she refused.



## Critical Thinking Questions

♣ **SB** Do you think Pip did the right thing when he went to London? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل فعل بيب الصواب بذهابه الى لندن؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. He had to improve his position (وضعه) in life.

♣ **SB** Why do you think Orlick mentioned that more convicts had escaped from the prison ship?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا ذكر أورليك ان المزيد من المجرمين قد هربوا من سفينة السجن؟

- To give the others the idea that a convict that hit Mrs Joe.  
ليجعل الآخرين يعتقدون ان مجرما هو من قام بضرب السيدة جو

♣ **SB** Do you agree with Pip that education can change lives? Why?

♣ هل تتفق مع بيب في ان التعليم يمكن ان يغير حياة الناس؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. Education makes people more respectable مرموق.

♣ **SB** Would you leave your friends and family behind to move to a big city to get a better education? Why?

♣ هل يمكن اترك اصدقاءك واسرتك خلفك لتذهب الى مدينة كبيرة لتحصل علي تعليم جيد؟ لماذا؟

- To achieve my ambitions لأحقق طموحاتي.

♣ **SB** Pip tells Biddy "I knew that I was making a mistake, but I could not change my feelings." What would you do if you were Pip?

♣ يقول بيب ل بيدي "كنت أعرف أنني أرتكب خطأ، لكنني لم أكن أستطيع أن أغير مشاعري." ماذا كنت ستفعل لو كنت مكان بيب؟

- I think his heart wants Estella and he could do nothing about it.

♣ **LM** Why do you think Orlick mentioned that more convicts had escaped from the prison ship?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا أورليك ذكر ان كثير من المساجين هربوا من سفينة السجن؟

- To give the others the idea that it was a convict who had hit Mrs Joe.
- He wanted Pip and Mr Wopsle to believe that one of the convicts hit Mrs Joe.
- So that no one would suspect يشك that Orlick had hit Mrs Joe.

♣ **LM** Should Pip have pitied Mrs Joe although she was cruel to him? Why?

♣ هل كان يجب علي بيب ان يشفق علي (يتعاطف مع) السيدة جو علي الرغم انها كانت قاسية معه؟ لماذا؟

- No, I think he felt that his life would improve as she wouldn't be able to hurt me again.

♣ **LM** "I will never be happy unless I can lead a different life to the one I live now." Do you think Pip was right to feel that way? Why?

♣ "انا لن أكون سعيد إذا لم أعيش حياة أفضل من التي أعيشها الان."

هل تعتقد ان بيب علي صواب ليفكر بهذه الطريقة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, as he had a miserable life حياة بائسة. He wanted his life to change so that he could be a gentleman and achieve his expectations (أماله / تمنياته) in life.

- ♣ **LM** Pip said to Biddy, "I knew that I was making a mistake, but I could not change my feelings". If you were Pip, would you change your feelings towards Estella? Why?

♣ قال بيب ل بيدي : "أعرف أنني أرتكب خطأ ولكن لا أستطيع تغيير مشاعري."  
لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستغير مشاعرك تجاه إستيلا؟ لماذا؟

- No, because I was in love with her. Her beauty was matchless جمالها فائق.
- No, I think Pip's heart was set on Estella and he could do nothing about it. قلبه متعلق ب إستيلا
- Yes, Because Estella had a heart of stone (قلب قاسي). She didn't love Pip. She probably wouldn't worth the effort Pip would exert for her. ربما لا تستحق الجهد

- ♣ **LM** Do you agree that Joe had better morals than Pip? Why?

♣ هل تتفق ان جو يمتلك أخلاق أفضل من بيب؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, he agreed to end Pip's apprenticeship immediately to enable him to lead a happy life and refused to take any money for losing Pip. نعم هو وافق ان ينهي فترة تدريب بيب (تعلمه للحدادة) في الحال ليتمكن ليعيش حياة سعيدة ورفض ان يأخذ اي أموال مقابل التخلي عن (فقدان) بيب.

- ♣ **LM** "I have to tell you that Pip has great expectations. He will receive a large amount of property in future," said Mr Jaggers. If you were in Pip's place, would this large amount of property in future be your great expectation? Why?

♣ قال جاجرز : "أنا مضطر ان أخبرك ان بيب تنتظره أمال عظيمة (طموحات عظيمة). سوف يتلقي (يحصل علي) أملاك كثيرة في المستقبل."

لو كنت مكان بيب، هل الأملاك الكثيرة في المستقبل هي أمالك العظمي (ما تتمناه)؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because it would help me get a good education, be a gentleman, and marry Estella.

- ♣ **LM** Shouldn't Pip have asked who that benefactor was? Why?

♣ ألم يكن من المفروض ان يسأل بيب عن فاعل الخير (يسأل مين فاعل الخير الذي يقدمه المعروف دا)؟ لماذا؟

- No, he shouldn't. Getting that wealth ثروة was much more important than knowing who the benefactor was.
- Yes, he should. Because of he must have been curious (لازم يعرف) to know who the benefactor was.

- ♣ **LM** Do you think that Pip's education alone could change his life? Why?

♣ هل تعتقد ان تعليم بيب فقط وحده هو الذي سيغير حياة بيب؟ لماذا؟

- No, the money he would have from his benefactor فاعل خير would surely change everything in his life.
- Yes, because education is an important way for the poor to change their position in life.

- ♣ **LM** In your opinion, did Pip want to have a better life just because he was ambitious? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل بيب يريد ان يحصل علي حياة أفضل فقط لأنه طموح؟ لماذا؟

- No, he wanted a better life to attract Estella's attention (ليجذب إنتباه إستيلا) so that he could marry her.
- Yes, because he lived a hard life. He wanted to change his life for the better.



- ♣ **LM** Would Pip have paid more attention to Biddy if he hadn't known Estella? Why?

♣ هل كان بيب سيعطي إهتمام أكبر لبيدي لو لم يكن تعرف علي إستيلا؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because he trusted **يثق** her and told her his secrets. She was also so helpful.

- ♣ **LM** Was Pip right not to want all the poor people in this village to see him in his fine clothes? Why?

♣ هل كان بيب محق عندما أراد أن لا يراه فقراء القرية بملابسه الجميلة (الجديدة)؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because he was afraid **خائف** that they would envy him **من الممكن ان يحسدوه**.

- ♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you leave your friends and family behind to move to a big city to get a better education? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستترك أصدقائك وعائلتك خلفك لتنتقل لمدينة كبيرة (لندن) للحصول علي تعليم أفضل؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because it would be my best chance to live well and achieve my expectation in life.

Mahmoud ElNaggar

## Chapter Five

Pip visited Miss Havisham in his new clothes. He told her that he had been given a fortune **ثروة**. She told him he would have a good life ahead of him and advised him to follow Mr Jaggers' advice! He felt that Mrs Havisham was his secret benefactor **فاعل الخير**.

Pip arrived at Mr Jaggers' office, his clerk, **Mr Wemmick** told him to wait him who was still at work. Mr Jaggers said that Pip should go to his new lodgings **(شقة) مسكن** with Mr Wemmick at Barnard's Inn, where he would share rooms with Mr Matthew Pocket's son (**Herbert Pocket**), who will take him to his father's house in a few days' time.

**Mr Matthew Pocket** lived in Hammersmith, five miles away. When they came to Barnard's Inn, Pip was disappointed **خائب الامل**. It looked dusty and gloomy **مترب وكنيب**. Mr Wemmick left him at the door, but after about half an hour, Herbert Pocket (**was the pale young man**) asked him in, He was not handsome **وسيم** but a cheerful man **بشوش**.

I discovered that once Miss Havisham thought to adopt **يتبنى** Herbert, so she had invited him to visit her. After that visit, however, Herbert was not invited to Miss Havisham's again. Herbert told Pip that if Havisham had adopted him, he might be rich and perhaps would be Estella's fiancé. Havisham said that Herbert wasn't suitable. He felt lucky that he isn't Estella's fiancé because she is cruel **قاسية** and proud and Mrs Havisham adopted her to take revenge on **تنتقم من** men.

Herbert said that Mr Jaggers was Miss Havisham's lawyer. Mr Jaggers suggested that Herbert's father, Mr Matthew Pocket, should be his teacher in London. Pip was convinced **مقتنع** now that Miss Havisham was my secret benefactor! Herbert told him how to behave **يتصرف** at the dinner table **تربية السفرة**.

Herbert said when Miss Havisham was young, she and her half-brother **أخ غير شقيق** had inherited **ورث** a fortune from their father. Her halfbrother spent his share **(حصّة) نصيب** and became jealous **حاقد** of her. He wanted to have her money, and he started to think how he could get it from her. He didn't care if he had to hurt her to get it.

Miss Havisham got engaged **تم خطبتها**. During that time, she gave most of her fortune to her fiancé **خطيب**. This was against the advice of her cousin, Matthew Pocket, who warned her not to trust her future husband but she became very angry with Matthew Pocket and ordered him to leave her house. As she said that he wanted her money.

On the wedding, Miss Havisham's fiancé left her! She received the news while getting dressed at **8:40** in the morning. Ever since that time, more than twenty-five years ago, neither Miss Havisham, nor her house, had changed at all. It seemed that the fiancé had planned everything with Miss Havisham's half-brother, hoping to take as much money from her as they could. Nobody knew if the two men were still alive, or not.

Pip went to meet the Pocket family. They lived by the river, Mr Matthew Pocket and his wife were cheerful. After they showed Pip his room, they introduced him to two other young men who were also staying there. **Startop** was good-natured **ودود**, but **Bentley Drummle** was proud and grumpy **متكبر ونكدي**.

Pip learnt how to live like a young gentleman and improving his education. Mr Jaggers gave him more money, he noticed, that Jaggers never laughed. At Mr Wemmick's house, Mr Wemmick told him that all of London's criminals were afraid of Mr Jaggers, so they left him alone. Mr Jaggers did not even lock **يقفل** his house at night.



## Critical Thinking Questions

♣ **SB** How do we know that Pip and Herbert would be friends?

♣ كيف نعرف أن بيب وهربرت سيصبحا صديقين؟

- They talked in a friendly way. They didn't mention the day they had fought on.  
تحدثا بطريقة ودودة و لم يذكرا اليوم الذي تعاركا فيه

♣ **SB** What did Miss Havisham want Estella to become?

♣ ماذا أرادت الانسة هافيشام من إستيلا ان تصبح؟ لماذا؟

- She wanted to use her to take revenge on men. **تثأر**
- She hated men because her lover had left her on her wedding day.

♣ **SB** Do you think Havisham reacted well to her fiancé's leaving her? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل تصرفت الانسة هافيشام بشكل جيد عند ترك خطيبها لها؟ لماذا؟

- She reacted badly. She should have changed and lived a better life.

♣ **LM** If you were Estella, would you agree to be a tool to harm others? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان إستيلا، هل توافق ان تكون أداة ل تضر الآخرين؟ لماذا؟

- No, I wouldn't cause any harm to innocent people who don't harm me.  
لا. لن اسبب اي ضرر ل الناس الابرياء الذين لم يضروني.

♣ **LM** Do you think that Mrs Havisham had an influential personality? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل تمتلك الانسة هافيشام شخصية مؤثرة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, she has a bad influence on Estella as she used Estella to break Pip's heart.  
نعم. لها تأثير سيء علي إستيل لانها إستخدمتها ل كسر قلب بيب.

♣ **LM** Do you think that Herbert Pocket would have been happier if Mrs Havisham had adopted him? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل تعتقد ان هربرت بوكيت كان سيصبح سعيدا لو تبنته الانسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟

- No. If Miss Havisham had adopted him, he wouldn't have been happy because he might have been Estella's fiancé who was proud and cruel and Miss Havisham used her to take revenge on men.  
لا. لو هافيشام تبنته، لن يكون سعيد لانه ربما يصبح خطيب ل إستيلا المتكبرة القاسية و هافيشام تستخدمها للثأر من الرجال.

♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you be pleased to have money or know your real benefactor? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل ستكون سعيد لامتلاكك ل أموال أم تعرف فاعل الخير (المتبرع الحقيقي) لك؟ لماذا؟

- If I were Pip, I would be pleased to have money to achieve my goals and it doesn't matter who the real benefactor is.

♣ **LM** "After a quick goodbye to Joe, my sister and Biddy, I felt as though the whole world was waiting for me."

What do you think Pip meant by these words?

♣ "بعد وداع سريع ل جو واخوتي وبيدي، شعرت ان العالم بآثره في إنتظاري."

♣ في رأيك، ماذا يقصد بيب بهذه الكلمات؟

- I think he meant the good education he would get in London, and the large amount of fortune he would get.

- ♣ **LM** Why do you think that Pip felt sure that Mrs Havisham was his secret benefactor?

- في رأيك، لماذا تأكد بيب ان الانسة هافيشام هي فاعلة الخير (المتبرعة السرية) له؟

- Herbert told Pip that Mr Jaggers was Miss Havisham's lawyer.
- Because Miss Havisham said that he had a good life ahead (مستقبلا) أمامه تنتظره حياة جيدة.

- ♣ **LM** Should Pip have continued staying at the blacksmith's instead of going for his new life in London? Why?

♣ هل كان يجب علي بيب ان يظل في ورشة الحدادة بدلا من الذهاب ل حياة جديدة في لندن؟ لماذا؟

- No. if he had stayed at the blacksmith's, he wouldn't have had a good education and wouldn't have been given a large amount of fortune.

- ♣ **LM** If Mrs Havisham had helped her brother financially, do you think that he wouldn't have plotted with her fiancé against her? Why?

♣ لو ساعدت الانسة هافيشام أخوها ماليا، هل تعتقد انه وخطيبها ما كان ليتأمر ضدها؟ لماذا؟

- I think he was greedy by nature طماع بطبيعته. So if she had he helped him, he would have always plotted against her يتأمر ضدها to get all her money.

- ♣ **LM** Which character do you pity more: Mrs Havisham or Pip? Why?

♣ ما الشخصية التي تشفق عليها أكثر : الانسة هافيشام أم بيب؟ لماذا؟

- I feel pity أشفق for Pip as he was an innocent child طفل بريء because he doesn't deserve that bad treatment المعاملة السيئة from Havisham and Estella who want to break his heart.



## Chapter Six

Pip was invited to dinner at Mr Jaggers' house with Herbert Pocket, Startop and Bentley Drummle. Mr Jaggers lived in a large, gloomy building. There was plenty for everyone to eat and drink, and Mr Jaggers served (يقدم الأكل) them himself.

Mr Jaggers liked the look of Drummle. He talked to Drummle for a long time, Drummle started boasting (يتباهي) that he was much stronger than Startop and Pip. Startop and Pip began to show that they had the best skills. Mr Jaggers seemed to enjoy their talk as a form of entertainment (تسلية).

**Molly**, the housekeeper (مديرة المنزل), put more food and she was worried that Mr Jaggers would say something bad about her food. Mr Jaggers asked her to show them her strong wrists (معصمين). One of her wrists had terrible scars (جرح ظاهر) on it. Mr Jaggers had never met a man or a woman with stronger hands than Molly. Drummle continued to boast about things he had done, and Mr Jaggers encouraged him.

Pip told Mr Jaggers that he did not like Drummle at all. He advised him to keep away from (يبتعد عن) him. Fortunately, Drummle finished his education with Mr Matthew Pocket soon.

Biddy sent Pip a letter saying that Mr Joe Gargery was going to visit London the next morning and wanted to see Pip. Pip wished that Joe wouldn't come. As he was ashamed of him now. Joe visited Pip at Barnard's Inn. Pip didn't introduce him to everyone there. Joe looked uncomfortable (لم يشعر بالارتياح) and he remained standing. He seemed anxious not to do or say the wrong thing. While they were having breakfast, Joe coughed too much, sat far away from the table and dropped food everywhere. Pip was annoyed as Joe called him 'Sir'. Joe told him that Miss Havisham wanted to see him and know that Estella came home. Pip was sorry that he was so unfriendly to Joe.

Pip decided to go home the following day. He decided to stay in a hotel near Miss Havisham's house. As Pip was waiting to leave London on the coach (حافلة) (عربة بحنطور), he saw two convicts standing nearby. They wore leg-irons and handcuffs; their guard had a gun. He recognised one of the convicts immediately. It was the man who had given him a shiny new coin at the village inn. He hoped that he would not recognise him. The two convicts and their guard climbed up, sitting just behind Pip.

One of the convicts said when he was about to leave prison another convict, **Magwitch**, asked him to find a boy who had helped him, years before, when he escaped and hid on the marshes. Magwitch didn't know Pip but Magwitch gave the convict a shiny new coin to give to that boy. So the convict that Pip gave the food and file is called Magwitch!.

Magwitch got a life sentence (حكم عليه بالسجن المؤبد) (مدي الحياة) for that escape.

Pip felt scared (خائف) and got off the coach and walked the rest of the way. He arrived at the hotel very tired, but he didn't sleep very well that night.



## Critical Thinking Questions

♣ **SB** Do you think Mr Jaggers was a good person? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل كان السيد جاجرز رجلاً سيئاً؟ لماذا؟

- No. Because his servant was scared of him لان خادمته كانت تخاف منه.
- He was also boastful متباهي. he kept some secrets from Pip يحفظ (يخفي) بعض الاسرار عن بيب

♣ **SB** Why do you think the criminals are afraid of Mr Jaggers?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا كان المجرمون يخافون من السيد جاجرز؟

- He was a strong and important lawyer. I think he knows everything about them.

♣ **SB** Do you think that Mr Jaggers is someone who Pip can trust? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل كان السيد جاجرز شخصاً يمكن ل بيب ان يثق فيه؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. He was helpful and hardworking متعاون ومجتهد.

♣ **LM** Do you like Mr Jaggers' character? Why?

♣ هل تحب شخصية السيد جاجرز؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. he was helpful to Pip, hardworking and strong important lawyer.
- No. He was also boastful. he kept some secrets from Pip يحفظ (يخفي) بعض الاسرار عن بيب

♣ **LM** Is it natural to boast about your own skills in front of others? Why?

♣ هل من الطبيعي ان تتباهي بمهاراتك الخاصة بك أمام الآخرين؟ لماذا؟

- No. because we should be humble متواضع.

♣ **LM** Do you think that Mr Jaggers is someone that Pip can trust? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل السيد جاجرز الشخص الذي من الممكن ان يثق بيب فيه؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. Because he was helpful and hardworking متعاون ومجتهد.

♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you be ashamed of your friend Joe? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستخجل من صديقك جو؟ لماذا؟

- No. because Joe was kind and helped Pip a lot. He was his close friend صديقه المقرب.

♣ **LM** Why do you think that Mrs Havisham wanted Pip to know that Estella had returned home?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا أرادت الانسة هافيشام ان تعرف بيب ان إستيلا عادت لمنزلها؟

- To make Pip feel more love to her as Estella became a prettier and educated girl. لتجعل بيب يحبها أكثر لان إستيلا أصبحت أجمل وأفضل تعليمياً.

♣ **LM** What might have happened if one of the convicts had recognised Pip in London?

♣ ما الذي ربما كان سيحدث لو ان احد من المجرمين تعرف علي بيب في لندن؟

- He might have told the guard (the police) that Pip had helped Magwitch before and then caused problems to Pip. ربما كان سيخبر الحارس (رجل الشرطة) ان بيب ساعد ماجويتش في المستنقعات من قبل وهذا قد يسبب مشاكل ل بيب

♣ **LM** Why do you think Pip hoped that Joe could not see how he felt when he knew that Estella had come home?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا بيب تمنى ان لا يري جو شعوره عندما عرف ان إستيلا عادت للمنزل؟

- So as not to see that he loves her so much حتي لا يري انه يحبها كثيراً.

♣ **LM** Why do you think Mrs Havisham was right to try to adopt some children?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا الانسة هافيشام محقة ان تحاول ان تتبنى بعض الاطفال؟

- Because she has a lot of money and to use them like a tool to carry out what she wants. لانها تمتلك الكثير من المال ولتستخدمه ك أداة لتنفيذ ما تريده



## Chapter Seven

Pip was worried that Orlick became Miss Havisham's a gatekeeper (حارس العقار (بواب). Estella became elegant أنيقة. Estella said that Pip must have had new friends now as he became a gentleman and his old friends from the village were no longer suitable. although Estella changed, she was still so cold.

Pip thought that Estella reminded him of someone else (Molly). Mr Jaggers visited Miss Havisham and had dinner with them, Pip told him that he was worried about Miss Havisham form Orlick, so Mr Jaggers promised to dismiss يطرد Orlick.

Pip thought that Miss Havisham wanted him to marry Estella. Pip walked in the village streets but he didn't talk to them, he became proud of himself, he even kept away from the blacksmith's not to see Joe as he felt ashamed of him, but he felt guilty so he sent Joe a nice present.

Estella planned to visit London. Pip told Herbert that he loved Estella but Herbert advised him to keep away from يبتعد عن her as she wouldn't make him happy. Estella arrived in London and Pip invited her to a drink مشروب in the inn , She was going to Richmond in a carriage and asked pip to go with her, she gave him a purse محفظة full of money to pay for everything.

Estella said that she was going to Richmond to stay with a rich lady who would introduce Estella to suitable people in London. On their journey in the carriage , they passed the walls of the Newgate prison where Mr Jaggers meet his clients (عملاء (مساجين), Estella said that it seemed that Mr Jaggers knew the secret of all places.

They also passed Mr Matthew pocket's house in Hammersmith where Pip lived then, Pip invited Estella to visit him there but she told him that she expected him to visit her in Richmond.

Estella told Pip that Mss Havisham gave Estella all her Jewellery مجوهرات and asker Estella to write to her often to tell her about everything that happened to her in Richmond.

Pip was happy that Estella called him by his name, Pip, for the first time. Pip still loved Estella although he knew the truth that she would never make him happy.

## Critical Thinking Questions

♣ **SB** Why do you think Pip was shocked when he saw Estella again?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا أصيب بيب بالذهول عندما رأى إستيلا مرة أخرى؟

- Estella was more beautiful than ever كانت إستيلا أجمل من ذي قبل.

♣ **SB** What do you think about Pip's decision not to see Joe again? Why?

♣ ما رأيك في قرار بيب بأن لا يري جو مرة أخرى؟ لماذا؟

- It was wrong because Joe was a kind person who loved Pip very much. قرار خاطيء

♣ **SB** "She will make you unhappy. You should forget her."

Who said this to Pip and why?

♣ "ستجعلك تعيش، عليك أن تنساها." من قال ذلك ل بيب؟ ولماذا؟

- Herbert. Because he knew Estella was cruel قاسية.

♣ **SB** "I expect you have new friends. The ones you had in the village wouldn't be good enough now, would they?"

Why did Estella say this and do you think it is true? Why?

♣ "أتوقع أن تكون قد كونت صداقات جديدة، الاصدقاء الذين في القرية لن يناسبوك الان، أليس كذلك؟"

لماذا قالت إستيلا هذا؟ هل تعتقد أن ما قالته صحيح؟ لماذا؟

- She says this because Pip is now a gentleman رجل مرموق.
- I think it is true, because Pip does not want to see Joe or people from the village now.

♣ **SB** "If she is cruel, love her! If she breaks your heart, love her! I made her what she is – to be loved!"

Why do you think Miss Havisham wants people to love Estella when she is so cruel?

♣ "إن كانت قاسية، وكسرت قلبك. حبها، لقد جعلتها كذلك حتى تحبها!"

لماذا تريد الانسة هافيشام أن يقع الناس في حب إستيلا وتقابلهم إستيلا بقسوة؟

- She wants people to feel the same as she did, when her cruel fiancé left her. تريد أن يشعر الناس بنفس مشاعرهما حين تركها خطيبها القاسي.

♣ **SB** "We are not free to do what we want, you know; we have to follow our instructions."

Whose instructions do you think Estella is talking about, and why are they not free?

♣ نحن لسنا أحرار في فعل ما نريد، ف أنت تعرف ذلك، علينا أن نتبع التعليمات.

في رأيك، من صاحب التعليمات التي تتحدث عنها إستيلا؟ ولماذا ليست هي أو بيب أحراراً؟

- Miss Havisham gave the instructions, she wanted to control them تريد أن تتحكم فيهما

♣ **SB** Why do you think some of Havisham's relatives, the Pockets, were jealous of Pip?

♣ في رأيك، لماذا كان بعض اقارب الانسة هافيشام، عائلة بوكيت، غيورين من بيب؟

- Miss Havisham helped Pip although he wasn't her relative ليس من أقاربها رغم أن

♣ **LM** Do you agree with Pip's decision not to see Joe again? Why?

♣ هل توافق علي قرار بيب بعدم مقابلة جو مرة أخرى؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree with Pip. Joe is kind and friendly to Pip.



- ♣ **LM** "She will make you unhappy," he replied. "You should try to forget her!"  
Do you agree with Herbert's opinion? Why?

♣ "سوف تجعلك غير سعيد" رد بذلك هيربرت. "يجب ان تحاول نسيانها!"  
هل توافق علي رأي هيربرت؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I agree. Estella is proud and cruel with no heart.

- ♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you agree to make new friends and forget the old ones, according to Estella's advice? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل توافق علي تكوين صداقات جديدة ونسيان الاصدقاء القدامي. عملاً لنصيحة إستيلا؟ لماذا؟

- No, I don't agree with her advice. Joe is a faithful friend مخلص to Pip.

- ♣ **LM** If you were Miss Havisham, would you be cautious about dealing with people or spending her money? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان الانسة هافيشام، هل ستكون حذر في التعامل مع الناس أو إنفاق أموالها؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, I'd be cautious حذر. Miss havisham was tricked خداعها by her fiancé and her brother and gave them her money.

- ♣ **LM** If you were Miss Havisham, would you take your revenge on men or try to do good and forget the past? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان الانسة هافيشام، هل كنت ستتنتقم من الرجال أم تحاول فعل الخير وتنسي الماضي؟ لماذا؟

- I would forget the past. Miss havisham's past affected her negatively. This made her live to take her revenge on men.

كنت سأنسي الماضي. ماضي الانسة هافيشام أثر عليها بشكل سلبي وجعلها تعيش لتأخذ بالثأر (الانتقام) من الرجال

- ♣ **LM** Do you think that Pip had a weak personality? Why?

♣ هل تعتقد ان بيب كان يمتلك شخصية ضعيفة؟

- Yes. Miss Havisham and Estella controlled تحكموا his life by making him ashamed of his old friends and his life.

- ♣ **LM** Do you like Estella's character? Why?

♣ هل تحب شخصية إستيلا؟ لماذا؟

- No. Estella was cruel with no heart and proud.

- ♣ **LM** "But, you know, I have no heart; I am neither kind nor good!" said Estella. Do you think Pip was right to insist on loving Estella despite her bad qualities? Why?

♣ "لكن، كما تعلم، ليس لدي قلب، أنا لست طيبة ولا جيدة!" قالت ذلك إستيلا.  
هل تعتقد أن بيب كان محق في الاصرار علي حب إستيلا رغم صفاتها السيئة؟ لماذا؟

- No, he wasn't right. Estella had no feeling. She only lived to break men's hearts.

- ♣ **LM** "I'll tell you what real love is! It is giving your heart to someone completely – just as I did!" Do you think Miss Havisham's opinion was right? Why?

♣ "سأخبرك ما هو الحب الحقيقي! فهو ان تمنح كل قلبك لشخص تماما – تماما كما فعلت أنا!"  
هل تعتقد أن رأي الانسة هافيشام كان صائب (صح)؟ ولماذا؟

- No, she wasn't right. It is because of her blind love and faithfulness to her fiancé, he tricked her into giving him her money. She should have been more careful.

لا، هي غير صائبة. لان بسبب حبها وإخلاصها لاعمي خطيبها، خدعها وأخذ أموالها. كان يجب أن تكون حذرة.

## Chapter Eight

Pip felt that he had changed but not to the best as he became proud, sometimes he wished he had never met Miss Havisham.

He felt guilty **شعر بالذنب** that he hadn't met his best friend Joe, he was extravagant **مصرف**, he encouraged Herbert to spend more money, they became members of the Finches club **نادي (العصافير)** where they meet rich people and had large dinners and stayed up all night, they often returned home late and get up late the next morning. He often visited Estella in Richmond.

Once, he took Estella to visit Miss Havisham, there Miss Havisham and Estella had a big argument, Miss Havisham complained **اشتكت** that Estella was proud, hard woman **عنيدة** and had a cold heart.

In Richmond, Estella had many admirers **معجبين**, and Pip was jealous of them all especially **Bentley Drummle**, Pip was upset **محبط** that Estella knew that bad man, but Estella said that she wanted to trick **تخدع** all men except from Pip **بيب (ماعدًا)** **بإستثناء**.

Pip and Herbert were always in debt **مديون**, as Herbert had less money, he owed **يدين** much more money than Pip.

Pip's sister "Mrs Joe" died, pip was sad as he was away for a long time and knew nothing about her, he went home to attend the funeral **جنازة**, Joe and Biddy welcomed him. They were kind to him as usual **كالمعتاد**.

Orlick appeared at the night of the funeral and it seemed to be frightening **يخيف** Biddy, Pip asked Biddy not to trust Orlick and promised that he would dismiss **يطرد** him from the village, Pip also promised to visit Joe and Biddy in the village again but they weren't sure about that.

Pip was now 21 years old, he wished to receive his fortune **ثروة** and knew the name of his benefactor **فاعل الخير (المتبرع)**, Mr Jaggers gave Pip 500 pounds. Mr Jaggers didn't tell him who his benefactor was.

Pip decided to use some of the money to help his friend Herbert with his debts, **Mr Wemmick** suggested that Pip use some of the money to help **Mr Clarrikker** with his business, Mr Clarrikker offered Herbert a well paid job **وظيفة ذات راتب جيد**.

After two years, Joe and Herbert moved to their new house as Pip no longer needed a teacher, Herbert always travelled abroad for Mr Clarrikker.

One dark and stormy evening, a 60 year old man visited Pip, it was **Magwitch**, the convict Pip had met before in the marshes **مستنقعات**. Magwitch said that he had a life sentence **حكم عليه بالسجن مدى الحياة** and was sent to Australia where he was a sheep farmer **راعي أغنام** and made a fortune **ثروة**, he decided to help Pip become a gentleman as Pip had helped him before, he was Pip's benefactor!!!!

Magwitch said that Pip was more than a son for him.



## Critical Thinking Questions

♣ **SB** In what ways had Pip and Herbert become extravagant?

- ♣ إلى أي مدى أصبح كلا من بيب وهربرت مسرفين (مبذرين)؟  
- They had become members of an expensive gentlemen's club.  
أصبحا عضوين في نادي غالي (مكلف) للشباب المرموقين (الاغنياء).

♣ **SB** Why do you think Pip doesn't understand how he feels about Estella?

- ♣ في رأيك، لماذا لم يفهم بيب مشاعره تجاه إستيلا؟  
- She is cruel though he adores her لأنها قاسية رغم عشقه لها.

♣ **SB** What suggests that Provis (Magwitch) was Pip's secret benefactor?

♣ **SB** What suggests that Miss Havisham was not Pip's secret benefactor?

- ♣ ما الذي يبين أن بروفيس (ماجويتش) هو الراعي السري (فاعل الخير) ل بيب؟  
أو ما الذي يبين أن الأنسة هافيشام ليست الراعي السري (فاعل الخير) ل بيب؟  
- Magwitch sent Pip a shiny new coin (عملة معدنية جديدة (لامعة).  
- Miss Havisham decided to invest her money in Estella's future, rather than Pip's.  
قررت الأنسة هافيشام أن تستثمر أموالها في الاهتمام بمستقبل إستيلا وليس بيب.

♣ **SB** "You know that I want to trick all of my admirers. All of them, apart from you!" Why do you think Estella says this to Pip?

- ♣ "أنت تعرف أنني أريد أن أخدع المعجبين بي. كلهم إلا أنت." في رأيك، لماذا قالت إستيلا هذا ل بيب؟  
- Estella wants Pip to believe that she is special (مميزة (من نوع خاص).  
- She wanted Pip to love her much to break his heart.

♣ **SB** "I have never forgotten what you did for me that day, Pip!" Why does Magwitch say this?

- ♣ "لم أنسى أبدا ما فعلته لي يوما ما يا بيب." لماذا يقول ماجويتش ذلك؟  
- He remembered how Pip had helped him in the graveyard (المقابر), when he was a boy.

♣ **SB** "I've worked hard in Australia ever since, so that you won't need to work" Why did Magwitch want to do this?

- ♣ "لقد عملت بجد في أستراليا منذ ذلك الحين، حتى لا تضطر أنت للعمل." لماذا أراد ماجويتش أن يفعل ذلك؟  
- He wanted to help Pip because Pip had helped him in the graveyard (المقابر), when he was a boy.

♣ **LM** "You should know," replied Estella, "because I am what you made me!" Do you think Estella was satisfied with the role she played with Miss Havisham? Why?

- ♣ قالت إستيلا ل الأنسة هافيشام "يجب أن تعرفي أنك من جعلتيني هكذا."  
"هل تعتقد أن إستيلا راضية بالدور الذي تلعبه مع الأنسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟"  
- No, she warned Pip that she wanted to trick (خدعت) all of my admirers as if she told him to leave her.

♣ **LM** Do you sympathise with Magwitch as a result of his assistance to Pip? Why?

- ♣ هذا تتعاطف مع ماجويتش نتيجة لمساعدته ل بيب؟ لماذا؟  
- Yes, Although he is a criminal (مجرم), Magwitch helped those who helped him.  
- Yes, because Magwitch loved Pip as his own son and helped him to be a gentleman.  
♣ **LM** "I still hoped that she would fall in love with me, but I usually felt unhappy



when we were together."

Why do you think Pip felt unhappy when they were together?

♣ "مازالتمني ان تقع في حبي (تحبني) ولكن عادة لا اشعر بالسعادة ونحن معا"  
في رأيك ، لماذا بيب لا يشعر بالسعادة عندما يكون مع إستيلا؟

- Because Estella has a cold heart and character. She always treated him as one of the commons الناس عامة and never seemed to share his love.

♣ **LM** "You know that I want to trick all of my admirers," she replied. "All of them, apart from you!"

What do you think these words show about Estella's character?

♣ قالت إستيلا "انت تعرف انني اريد ان اخدع كل معجبيني . كلهم الا انت."  
في رأيك ماذا هذه الكلمات تعبر عن شخصية إستيلا؟

- Estella was brought up break men's hearts تربيته لتنتقم من الرجال

♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you accept the assistance even if it were from a convict? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب : هل كنت ستقبل المساعدة حتي لو كانت من سجين؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because money would help me achieve my ambitions طموحات in life.
- No, I would feel that it was my duty to report إبلاغ him to the police, not to take money from him.

♣ **LM** Do you think Magwitch's character had any bright sides? If yes, what are they?

♣ هل تعتقد ان شخصية ماجويش لها جوانب مضيئة (جيدة)؟ لو اجبت ب نعم؟ انكر هذه الجوانب؟

- Magwitch was noble نبيل : Although it was Pip who did the stealing سرقة, Magwitch didn't not want the boy who has helped him getting into trouble. So he takes the blame upon himself أخذ اللوم علي نفسه.

♣ **LM** Why do you think Pip didn't understand how he felt about Estella?

♣ في رأيك لماذا بيب لم يفهم مشاعره تجاه إستيلا؟

- Pip loves Estella so much but she doesn't share him the same love.

♣ **LM** What might have happened if Pip hadn't helped Magwitch?

♣ ما الذي ربما كان سيحدث لو ان بيب لم يساعد ماجويش؟

- He might have been arrested by the police or could have been killed by Compeyson.

♣ **LM** If you were Estella, who would you prefer: Pip or Bentley Drummle? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان إستيلا، هل تفضل بيب ام بينتلي دراميل؟ ولماذا؟

- I would prefer Bentley Drummle as he belonged to the rich class and he was wealthy.

♣ **LM** Do you think Pip was completely ungrateful to others? Why?

♣ هل تعتقد ان بيب غير ممتن (شاكر) للآخرين؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, having been a gentleman, he was ashamed of his best friend Joe.
- No, as he had to help Provis, who had helped Pip to become a gentleman.

♣ **LM** Do you think Estella was right to be a tool in Miss Havisham's hands? Why?

♣ هل تعتقد انه من الصواب ان تصبح إستيلا اداة في يد هافيشام (تتحكم فيها)؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, Miss Havisham spoiled أفسدت Estella with money and jewellery. so, she couldn't have disobeyed تعصى Miss Havisham.



## Chapter Nine

When Pip found out that Magwitch was his benefactor, he felt ashamed يشعر بالعار that he had left Joe, the problem was that Magwitch had a life sentence حكم بالسجن مدى الحياة and might be caught. Pip went downstairs to get a light شمع but he fell over a man who was crouching يجلس القرفصاء on the stairs, it was dark so Pip didn't see him, the man disappeared, the watchman said that the man who visited Pip had another man with him but Magwitch said he thought someone was following him يتتبعه (يراقبه).

Magwitch gave Pip a bag full of money and promised him with more, Magwitch asked Pip to call him **Provis** as they call him in Australlia.

Pip visited Mr Jaggers and told him everything, Mr Jaggers confirmed that Provis is Pip's benefactor and asked Pip to be careful.

Herbert returned him and Provis told him not to tell anyone anything and promised to make a gentleman of him like Pip. Pip was annoyed as Provis always boasted يتباهي to be his benefactor.

Pip felt ashamed as his benefactor was a criminal مجرم and decided not to take money from him in the future, However, Pip felt that he owed much بالكثير to Provis so he decided to help him escape.

Provis told them about his early life, he didn't know where he was born or who his parents were, he was alone and hungry, he stole and begged (يشحت) يتسول to survive , when he grew up he spent time in prison.

He learnt to read and write from the people he met, he got married. He met a man called **Compeyson** (Miss Havisham's fiancé) and his friend **Arthur** (Miss Havisham's half-brother) tricked خدع a lady (Miss Havisham) and took her money, but Arthur became ill and felt guilty, they spend all their money, Provis started to steal for Compeyson but they were caught, in the court محكمة , Compeyson behaved as a gentleman and said Provis was the responsible for all the crimes so Provis had a life sentence حكم بالسجن المؤبد.

Provis and Compeyson were sent to the prison ship. They had a big argument, Provis dove قفز in the sea and escaped to the marshes.

Compeyson followed him and looked for him, once he found him they fought يتعارك again but soldiers arrested them.

Provis got a life sentence and was sent to Australlia but he came back to see Pip.

Herbert showed Pip a note ملاحظة (ورقة) saying that Arthur is Miss Havisham's brother and Compeyson was her fiancé.

Pip and Herbert knew that Provis had to leave England at once. Pip decided to go with provis to help him escape.

## Critical Thinking Questions

- ♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you be ashamed to know that Magwitch was your benefactor?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستشعر بالعار ان ماجوييتش هو فاعل الخير (المتبرع) لك؟

- Yes, because he was a criminal مجرم.
- No, Magwitch had to steal just to survive.
- No, what matters ما يهم is that he gave me the money that helped me achieve my expectations.

- ♣ **LM** Should Pip have told the police that the convict had returned from Australia? Why?

♣ هل كان من المفترض ان يبلغ بيب الشرطة ان السجين عاد من استراليا؟ لماذا؟

- No, because Magwitch helped him to be a gentleman. He was indebted مدان to him.

- ♣ **LM** Do you think that the convict sympathised with Pip because of his poor childhood? Why?

♣ هل تعتقد ان السجين تعاطف مع بيب بسبب طفولته الفقيرة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, Magwitch gave all this money to Pip as Pip was an orphan يتيم like him. He wanted him to live a good life Magwitch had dreamed of when he was at Pip's age.

- ♣ **LM** "As he had been so good to me, I felt it was my duty to help him escape," said Pip. Do you agree with Pip's opinion? Why?

♣ قال بيب "لانه كان جيد معي، اشعر انه واجبي ان اساعده على الهروب." هل تتفق مع رأي بيب؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, Pip owed Magwitch a lot : He made Pip a gentleman, gave him a good education.

- ♣ **LM** "As a child, he was always hungry, so he stole and begged to survive." Do you agree that Provis (Magwitch) was a victim of his poor childhood? Why?

♣ "لانه طفل كان دائما يشعر بالجوع، لذلك كان يسرق ويتسول لكي يعيش."

هل تتفق ان ماجوييتش (بروفيس) كان ضحية للطفولة الفقيرة؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, as he was an orphan, he had no one to look after him.
- No, instead of stealing or begging, he should have searched for a job to earn living.

- ♣ **LM** Would Pip have been happier if Miss Havisham had been his benefactor? Why?

♣ هل كان بيب سيعبأ أكثر سعادة لو كانت الانسة هافيشام هي فاعل الخير (المتبرع) له ؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because this meant that he would marry Estella one day.

- ♣ **LM** In your opinion, was Pip a young man of principles? Why do you think so?

♣ في رأيك، هل بيب شاب ذو مبادئ؟ ولماذا تعتقد ذلك؟

- Yes, as he refused to take any more money from Magwitch when he learned that his benefactor was a criminal.
- He gave 500 pounds to Mr clarriker to employ his friend Herbert.

- ♣ **LM** Was Provis right to boast about his money? Why?

♣ هل بروفيس علي صواب ان يتباهي بأمواله؟ لماذا؟

- No, he should have boasted about his good manners الحميدة not money. Boasting made the others hate him.



## Chapter Ten

Estella returned to Miss Havisham and Pip decided to visit them. On the way, Pip stopped at an inn and he met Bentley Drummle who boasted **يتباهي** that he was having dinner with a pretty lady "**Estella**".

Miss Havisham was surprised to see Pip, he told her that he was unhappy because Magwitch was his benefactor and Mr Jaggers made him think that.

Mrs Havisham said that it's a coincidence that Mrs Jaggers is the lawyer of both Provis and Havisham.

Pip said to Havisham that although she was kind to him when he was young. She misled him when she let him think that she was his benefactor. She also misled her relative "the Pocket's family" who helped Pip to make Miss Havisham happy as they thought she was his benefactor.

Pip asked Miss Havisham to use some of her money to help Herbert and she agreed. Estella said that she didn't share Pip's feelings and that she was going to marry Bentley Drummle.

Pip left for London, before he arrived home, a boy gave him a message from Mr Wemmick warning him not to go home as someone in Newgate prison told Wemmick that Provis, Herbert and Pip were always watched and that Compeyson was still alive. Mr Wemmick warned Herbert who found a new house for Provis by the river with Mr Whimple's family. Provis agreed to escape abroad with Pip.

Pip and Herbert kept a boat by the house and use it every day, they felt they were watched. One day, Pip went to theatre to watch a play to take his mind off **يزيح عن دماغه**, **Mr Wopsle**, a man from Pip's village became an actor in London, after the performance **الاداء**, Mr Wopsle said that there was a man sitting behind Pip in the theatre, it was the convict in the marshes years ago, Pip knew it was Compeyson.

Mr Jaggers thought Estella and Bentley wouldn't have a happy marriage as Bentley was strong but not intelligent.

While eating dinner in Mr Jaggers's house, Pip noticed that Molly's eyes, hair and hands reminded him of Estella so he was sure they were related **بينهم علاقة (قراية)**.

Mr Wemmick told Pip Molly's story, when she was young, she was homeless **مشردة** criminal. Then Molly married a man who spent much time in prison, one day she was accused of **تم إتهامها بـ** murdering her daughter and an old lady but she was acquitted **تم تبرأتها (إطلاق سراحها)** by Mr Jaggers so she became his housekeeper.

Pip thought that Estella was Molly's daughter. Pip visited Miss Havisham who said that she would help Herbert with some money so that he would keep working with Mr Clarriker.

With tears in her eyes, Miss Havisham regretted what she had done with Pip and asked him to forgive her as she made Estella broke his heart and she started to tell him his life story.

## Critical Thinking Questions

♣ **SB** How do you think Miss Havisham misled Pip?

♣ في رأيك، كيف ضللت الانسة هافيشام بيب؟

- She made Pip believe she was his benefactor له جعلته يعتقد انها المتبرع السري

♣ **SB** What do you think made Pip think that Molly was Estella's mother?

♣ في رأيك، ما الذي جعل بيب يعتقد ان مولي هي ام إستيلا؟

- They looked like each other يشبهون بعضهم البعض

♣ **SB** In what ways do Herbert and Wemmick show their loyalty towards Pip?

♣ الي أي مدى كان هربرت و ويميك أوفياء ل بيب؟

- They helped his benefactor, Provis (بروفيس) له ساعدا المتبرع السري

♣ **SB** Do you think that Pip was happy to have discovered who his benefactor was? Why.

- في رأيك، هل كان بيب سعيدًا بمعرفة المتبرع السري له؟ لماذا؟

- He wasn't happy. His benefactor was a criminal لم يكن سعيدًا. ف المتبرع السري له مجرمًا

♣ **LM** Are you surprised that Miss Havisham seemed to feel sorry for Pip? Why?

♣ هل انت مستغرب ان الانسة هافيشام كانت تشعر بالحزن علي بيب؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, She always used Estella to break his heart.

♣ **LM** "I saw Bentley Drummle just now," I told her. "Surely you don't love him?" What do you think the question reflects about Pip's character?

♣ يقول بيب ل إستيلا، "لقد رأيت بينتلي دراميل من فترة بسيطة. بالتأكيد انتي لا تحبينه؟"

في رأيك ماذا يعكس هذا السؤال عن شخصية بيب؟

- It reflects his jealousy of Bentley Drummle. Pip still loves Estella although she warned him before that she has no heart.

♣ **LM** Was it surprising for Pip to know that Estella wanted to marry Bentley Drummle? Why?

♣ هل من المدهش ل بيب ان يعرف ان إستيلا تريد ان تتزوج بينتلي دراميل ؟ لماذا؟

- No, because Pip knew that she had many admirers and Drummle told him before that he was having dinner with her.

♣ **LM** Do you think that Pip should have been away from Provis when he knew they had been watched? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل كان من المفترض ان بيب يبتعد عن بروفيس عندما عرف انه مراقب؟ لماذا؟

- No, he should have kept Provis's away and thought of a way to help him escape from London.

♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you agree to escape with Provis? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت توافق ان تهرب مع بروفيس؟ لماذا؟

- No, I would just help him escape. I would stay in London to achieve my expectations.
- Yes, because I feel indebted to Provis : He is the one that helped me with his money to be a gentleman.



- ♣ **LM** "Yes," she said. "Forgive me, Pip! I used her to break your heart. But if you knew my story, you would pity me!"

If you were Pip, would you pity Miss Havisham? Why?

♣ قالت، " نعم . سامحني يا بيب. انا استخدمتها لتكسر قلبك. ولكن لو عرفت قصتي ، كنت ستشفق علي (تتعاطف معي)!"  
لو كنت مكان بيب ، هل كنت ستتعاطف مع الانسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because the bad experience she went through made her psychologically broken محطمة نفسيًا and she was kind to me as a child when she paid for my apprenticeship فترة التدريب with Joe.

- ♣ **LM** Do you think that Estella was badly affected by being brought up away from her mother? Why?

♣ هل تعتقد ان استيلا تأثرت بشكل سيء بسبب تربيته بعيدًا عن أمها؟ لماذا؟

- No, she spent most of her childhood with Miss Havisham who had adopted her.
- Yes, If her mother hadn't agreed to leave her with Miss Havisham, Estella would have lived a normal childhood.

- ♣ **LM** Miss Havisham asked if I was very unhappy.

Why do you think Miss Havisham asked Pip that question?

♣ سألت الانسة هافيشام بيب، هل هو غير سعيد. في رأيك لماذا سألته هذا السؤال؟

- Because Estella was no longer موجودة at Miss Havisham's house as she got married to Bentley Drummle.

- ♣ **LM** "Yes," I said, "for many reasons, which I cannot discuss".

What do you think the reasons for Pip's being unhappy were?

♣ قال بيب، "نعم. لعدة اسباب لن اتناقش فيها." في رأيك ما اسباب بيب انه غير سعيد؟

- He knew for sure that Estella didn't love him as she got married to Bentley Drummle. Miss Havisham wasn't his benefactor. He also knew who Estella's parents were.

- ♣ **LM** "Oh, what have I done?" she cried, over and over again. Her eyes were full of tears. What do you think the cause of Miss Havisham's tears was?

♣ "اووو، ماذا فعلت؟" الانسة هافيشام تبكي أكثر وأكثر. عينيها ممتلئة بالدموع.  
في رأيك ما سبب دموع وبكاء الانسة هافيشام؟

- She regretted ندمت using Estella to break men's heart especially Pip to take revenge on men.

## Chapter Eleven

### Miss Havisham tells Pip her story

When Miss Havisham's fiancé (**Compeyson**) left her, she decided to adopt **تتبنى** a young girl and teach her to break men's hearts to take revenge. Mr Hagers brought her Estella as she was orphan.

Pip left Miss Havisham's house sadly but in the untidy garden which was full of memories **ذكريات** with Estella, he had a terrible feeling, so he went back quickly to the house to find that a spark **شرارة نار** from the fire fell over Miss Havisham's dress and now it was burning badly **تحترق بشدة**.

Pip used his coat as well as the table cloth **مفرش السفرة** to put out **يطفىء** the fire, his hands were badly burned **احترقت بشكل سيء**, the doctor came to see Miss Havisham. Pip left the house when Miss Havisham's relatives had arrived.

While leaving, Pip heard Havisham crying, "Forgive me!". He went back home where Herbert bandaged **يضمّد** his burnt hands.

### Herbert tells Pip more about Provis' past

Provis had told Herbert about his early life, 20 years ago, Provis fell in love with Molly and they got married, they had a daughter, one day they had a big argument, Molly disappeared with the girl. After months, Molly was accused of **تم اتهامها ب** killing the girl and an old lady, Provis was upset **محبط** and he didn't go to the court. Mr. Jaggers worked as Molly's lawyer and she was acquitted **تم إخراجها سبيلها**. Provis didn't know what happened to Molly or their daughter. Pip told Herbert that Estella was Provis' daughter.

### Mr Jaggers tells Pip what happened

Mr Jaggers told Pip that everything Provis said was true. When Molly escaped from Provis (**Magwitch**), she hid **أخفت** Estella. When Estella disappeared, people accused **يتهم** Molly of murdering her (**Estella**). Mr Jaggers took the girl to Miss Havisham who wanted to adopt a girl, so Mr Jaggers took Estella to her. Molly was set free **أطلق سراحها** and worked as Mr Jagger's housekeeper. Mr Jaggers asked Pip not to tell anyone what he had heard.

### Pipn receives TWO letters

Pip got two letters : the first letter from Mr Wemmick saying that it was a good time for Provis to escape. The second letter sender was unknown **غير معروف**, the letter asked Pip to go to a house in the marshes to know more about Provis. Pip decided to go there at once but he left a note for "**Herbert**" telling him what had happened.

When Pip reached the house, he found the door open, Orlick hit him on the head and he fainted **أغمي عليه**, when he recovered **استرد وعيه**, he was tied against **علي** the wall in an old house in the marches. He found that it was Orlick who tricked him to take revenge. Pip found it useless to shout as they were in a remote place **مكان بعيد**, Orlick said that Pip spoiled **أفسد** his life as he made Orlick lose his job, he as well told Biddy not to trust Orlick. At that time, Pip thought of all the people who would suffer if he died :

- Provis would think that Pip had deserted him.
- Herbert would be sad.
- Joe and Biddy would never know how sorry Pip was for his behavior towards them.



**Pip now knows what happened**

Orlick found Provis' iron legs كلابشات القدم in the marshes years ago, and he left them in the kitchen when he attacked Mrs Joe so that people would accuse the convict of attacking her. Now Orlick was going to kill Pip but he was saved, **How?**

When Pip left his house, he dropped (رمى / ترك) Orlick's letter on the ground, Herbert read it and felt worried so he met **Startop** and got some men from the village and followed Pip and saved him. Orlick escaped.

Pip and Herbert planned to help Provis escape. They took a boat down the river, the sun shone كانت تشرق so no one noticed them, they got to the place where steamers باخرة took passengers on. They waited for a steamer in the deep water, an hour later, the steamer to Hamburg arrived, Pip and Provis was about to go on the steamer when another boat arrived with some police officers and Comoeyspn, they arrested Provis.

**Critical Thinking Questions**

♣ **SB** How had Miss Havisham's actions affected other characters in the novel?

♣ كيف أثرت تصرفات الأنسة هافيشام على الشخصيات الأخرى بالرواية؟

- She made Estella cruel. She made Pip unhappy. She made Molly miss her daughter.  
♣ جعلت إستيلا قاسية، وجعلت بيب غير سعيد (تعييس)، كما جعلت مولي تفتقد ابنتها.

♣ **SB** Who might Orlick want to take revenge on? Why?

♣ من الذي قد يرغب أورليك في الإنتقام منه؟ لماذا؟

- Pip because he was a better person than Orlick.

♣ **SB** Who might Miss Havisham want to take revenge on? Why?

♣ من الذي قد ترغب الأنسة هافيشام في الإنتقام منه؟ لماذا؟

- Her brother and her fiancé because they had deceived her خدعوها .

♣ **SB** Who might Provis want to take revenge on? Why?

♣ من الذي قد يرغب بروفيس في الإنتقام منه؟ لماذا؟

- Compeyson because he made Provis go to prison.

♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you take off your coat and try to save Miss Havisham and put out the flames although she used Estella to take revenge on you?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستخلع البالطو الخاص بك لتتقذ الأنسة هافيشام وتطفي ألهبه النار علي الرغم انها استخدمت إستيلا للانتقام منك؟

- Yes, despite her cruelty قسوتها من الرغم، She was kind to me and I forgave her.
- Yes, even if she used Estella to break my heart, it's my duty واجبي to save her.

♣ **LM** Do you think that Pip wouldn't have loved Estella if he had known that Molly and Provis were her parents? Why?

♣ في رأيك، هل كنت تعتقد ان بيب لن يحب إستيلا لو عرف قبلها ان والديها بروفيس ومولي؟ لماذا؟

- No, Thanks to her beauty جمالها , he would fall in love with her.

♣ **LM** What might have happened if anyone had known that Orlick had attacked Pip's sister?

♣ في رأيك، ماذا ربما كان سيحدث لو أي شخص عرف ان أورليك هاجم اخت بيب؟

- There would be enough proof دليل for Pip to report the police الشرطة about him.

♣ **LM** Do you think it was right for Pip to go to an old house, on the marshes near his village at night alone? Why?

♣ هل تعتقد انه من الصواب ل بيب ان يذهب الي منزل قديم، عند المستنقعات بالقرب من القرية بالليل وحيداً؟ لماذا؟

- No, it was foolish of him to go there. He should have understood that it was a trick.
- Yes, because he wanted to find out more about Provis.

♣ **LM** Do you like Pip's character? Why?

♣ هل تحب شخصية بيب؟ لماذا؟

- No, He forgot the people who loved him once he had wealth. He was deep in love with a girl who shared him no feelings.

♣ **LM** If you were Pip, would you forgive Miss Havisham? Why?

♣ لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستسامح الانسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, as she treated me kindly when I was young.
- No, she was too cruel to me to forgive her.

♣ **LM** "I thought of all the people who would suffer if I died now". What do you think this revealed about Pip's character?

♣ "أفكر في كل الاشخاص الذين سيعانون لو مت الان". في رأيك ماذا هذا يكشف عن شخصية بيب؟

- It revealed that he cared at last for the people who really loved him: Joe and Biddy.

♣ **LM** Should Pip have planned to make Provis escape alone? Why?

♣ هل كان من المفترض ان يخطط بيب لجعل بروفيس يهرب وحيداً؟ لماذا؟

- No, He accompanied Provis because he felt that he was indebted to him.
- Yes, because Pip may be caught by the police or be attacked by Compeyson.

♣ **LM** What might have happened if Miss Havisham's fiancée hadn't left her?

♣ ما الذي ربما كان سيحدث لو ان خطيب هافيشام لم يتركها؟

- She would have lived a normal life. She wouldn't have thought of adopting children like Estella or Herbert.

♣ **LM** "I knew that I would always love Estella, even if she was cruel to me."

If you were Pip, would you continue loving Estella, even if she was cruel to you?

♣ "أعرف انني دائماً كنت سأحب إستيلا، حتي لو كانت قاسية معي."

لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستستمر في حبك ل إستيلا، حتي لو كانت قاسية معك؟

- No, It would be foolish of me to think of loving such a cold girl with no heart who doesn't share me any feelings.



## Chapter Twelve

Provis jumped into the second boat and attacked Compeyson, the steamer **الباحرة** was fast and couldn't stop, the boats turned over **إنقلب** in the water and sank.

Pip, Herbert and Startop were rescued, Provis and Compeyson fought **يتقاتل** in the water, Compeyson drowned **غرق** under water, the steamer hit Provis' head and he became very ill, he went to the prison hospital. Compeyson disappeared under water and no one saw him after that.

Provis was at the bottom of the boat and Pip held his hand feeling pity **الشفقة**. Provis was taken to the prison hospital. Provis was found guilty and given a life sentence with another 32 convicts but he wasn't surprised. Just before Provis died, pip had told him that his daughter Estella was alive and he loved her, Provis was happy but died.

Pip's debts grew **ازدادت ديونه**, Herbert had a job in Cairo with Mr Clarriker who offered Pip a job, too.

Pip became very ill and had bad dreams like the fire in Miss Havisham's house. when he recovered, he found that Joe was who looked after him.

Pip became better and Joe left him, Joe left him a letter saying that he had paid all his debts, Pip wanted to go to the blacksmiths to thank Joe and he wanted to see Biddy thinking that she was still love him, but when he went back he found that Joe and Biddy were going to get married. Pip asked them to forgive him. He told them they would be the best husband and wife.

Miss Havisham died leaving most of her money to Estella and some to Mr Matthew Pocket as Pip had asked him.

Orlick went to prison as he attacked Mr Pumblechook's house to rob it.

Pip sold everything in London and travelled to Egypt to work for Mr Clarriker, and in three years, Pip and Herbert became managers. After eleven years, Pip went back to find that Joe and Biddy had two children a girl and a boy called Pip. They welcomed him warmly as usual.

Estella was unhappy with Bently as he was cruel to her so she decided to leave him, later Bently died in a horse accident.

Pip met Estella, she was no longer beautiful. She looked older, tired sad but still fascinated **تثير إعجاب** Pip who was still in love with her.

Estella decided to sell Miss Havisham's house, Estella said that she was hurt as she hurt him before and also said that she always thought of him.

Pip said that she always had a place in his heart.

They would be friend and never be apart again **لن يفترقا**.

## Critical Thinking Questions

- ♣ **SB** What were Pip's "expectations" or ambitions at the beginning of the novel?  
 ماذا كانت طموحات (أمال) بيب في بداية الرواية؟  
 - To live a new life; to become a gentleman and to marry Estella.
- ♣ **SB** How did Pip's expectations become true in the end?  
 كيف تحققت طموحات (أمال) بيب في النهاية؟  
 - He and Estella would never be apart again لن يفترق هو وإستيلا مرة أخرى.
- ♣ **SB** If you were a police officer, would you believe Provis or Compeyson? Why?  
 إذا كنت ضابط شرطة، من ستصدق: بروفيس أم كومبيسون؟ لماذا؟  
 - I would investigate carefully before believing one of them.  
 سوف أتحرى (أجري تحقيقات / تحريات) قبل أن أصدق أي منهما.
- ♣ **SB** How would you describe the relationship between Pip and Estella at the end of the novel? What do you think might happen?  
 كيف تصف العلاقة بين بيب وإستيلا في نهاية الرواية؟ في رأيك، ماذا تتوقع ان يحدث فيما بعد؟  
 - Pip and Estella finally became friends and they might stay friends, or perhaps they will marry.
- ♣ **SB** In view of Pip's hopes and expectations at the beginning of the novel, Pip seems to end the novel as a failure. Discuss.  
 في ضوء آمال بيب وطموحاته في اول الرواية، يبدو ان بيب انتهى بالفشل. ناقش ذلك.  
 - I don't agree. Pip managed to become better educated and attract Estella.  
 لا أتفق مع ذلك لان بيب نجح في الحصول علي تعليم جيد وجذب إستيلا ناحيته.
- ♣ **LM** Do you agree that Provis deserved his end with a life sentence? Why?  
 هل تعتقد ان بروفيس استحق الحكم عليه بالسجن مدى الحياة في النهاية؟ لماذا؟  
 - Yes, as he escaped from the Prison ship and he committed lots of crimes.  
 - No, he was a victim of his bad circumstances الظروف السيئة. He proved that he could be a good citizen when he escaped from prison as he worked hard and never thought of crime.
- ♣ **LM** Shouldn't Pip have told Provis that his daughter was still alive? Why?  
 هل لم يكن من المفروض ان بيب يخبر بروفيس ان ابنته مازالت علي قيد الحياة؟ لماذا؟  
 - No, he should. Provis deserved to know that his daughter was alive as he was deprived from her the past years لانه حُرم منها السنوات الماضية.
- ♣ **LM** Which character do you like most in "Great Expectations"? Why?  
 ما اكثر شخصية اعجبت بها في القصة؟ لماذا؟  
 - I liked Joe so much, as he offered to take Pip into his home rather than see him be an orphan. Although Pip treated him unkindly for some time, Joe looked after Pip when everyone else has left him. He also forgave Magwitch when he confessed to stealing the Gargery's meat pie.



- ♣ **LM** Was Miss Havisham right to leave some of her money to Mr Matthew Pocket? Why?

هل من الصواب ان تترك الانسة هافيشام جزء من اموالها ل السيد ماتيو بوكيت؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, he was the only one of her family that cared for her and gave her good advice when necessary. He was never jealous حافد of Pip like the rest of her family.

- ♣ **LM** Do you think Estella deserved to own most of Miss Havisham's money? Why?

هل تعتقد ان إستيلا إستحققت ان تمتلك معظم أموال الانسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because Miss Havisham had adopted her.
- No. Miss Havisham should have left this money to her real relatives.

- ♣ **LM** Should Miss Havisham have left Pip some of her money? Why?

هل كان من المفترض ان تترك الانسة هافيشام جزء من اموالها ل بيب؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because he had rescued her when her dress caught fire.

- ♣ **LM** If you were Joe, would you pay off Pip's debts? Why?

لو كنت مكان جو، هل كنت ستسدد ديون بيب؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because Pip is my best friend and I must help him when he is in trouble في ورطة.

- ♣ **LM** In your opinion. What was the greatest expectation for Pip? Why do you think so?

في رأيك، ما هي التطلعات والامال العظمى ل بيب؟ لماذا تعتقد ذلك؟

- The greatest expectation for Pip was leaving the life of poverty الفقر and living as a gentleman.

- ♣ **LM** "It's my wedding day, Pip!" Biddy said, happily.

"Joe and I have just got married!" Would Joe have married Biddy if he had known that Pip had wanted to marry her? Why?

قالت بيدي بسعادة، "انه يوم زفافي يا بيب!" "أنا وجو سنتزوج حالا!"

هل جو كان سيتزوج بيدي لو عرف ان بيب يريد الزواج منها؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because he needed Biddy to look after him after his wife had died.
- No, he would have allowed her to marry Pip as she loved Pip so much.

- ♣ **LM** "You have the best husband in the world, Biddy!" I said.

"And Joe, you have the best wife"

Do you think these words reflected Pip's real feelings? Why?

قال بيب ل بيدي ، "لديكي افضل زوج في العالم يا بيدي!" "ويا جو لديك افضل زوجة."

هل تعتقد ان هذه الكلمات تعكس مشاعر بيب الحقيقية؟ لماذا؟

- Yes, because they proved that they really love Pip and he realized أدرك that he had been wrong when he was ashamed of them.

- ♣ **LM** What is the worst character in "Great Expectations"? Why do you think so?

ما هي أسوأ شخصية في القصة؟ لماذا تعتقد ذلك؟

- Compeyson was the worst character as he deceived خدع Miss Havisham and took much of her money and deserted her (تركها) هجرها on her wedding day. He also betrayed خان his friend Magwitch when he told the court that Magwitch was responsible for all the crimes leaving him to face life sentence السجن مدى الحياة.

## General Critical Thinking Questions

♣ What is the moral lesson of the novel?

Or What have you learnt from "Great Expectations"?

♣ ما الدرس الاخلاقي (المستفاد) للرواية؟  
♣ أو ماذا تعلمت من رواية "أمال عظيمة"؟

- Good people will be rewarded and bad people will be punished.  
الاخيار يكافنون أما الاشرار يعاقبون
- Good will defeat evil in the end .  
الخير سوف يهزم الشر في النهاية

♣ How did good defeat evil in the novel?

♣ كيف أنتصر الخير علي الشر في الرواية؟

- Good people were rewarded and bad people were punished.
- Pip and Estella would never be apart again .  
بيب وإستيلا لن يفترقا مرة ثانية

♣ Which character in the novel do you like most? Why?

♣ ما الشخصية التي تحبها كثيرا في الرواية؟ لماذا؟

- Joe. He loved Pip and helped him and didn't ask anything in return .  
لم يطلب شيء في المقابل

♣ Which character in the novel do you hate most? Why?

♣ ما الشخصية التي تكرها كثيرا في الرواية؟ لماذا؟

- Orlick because he hated Pip for no reason .  
يكره بيب بدون سبب

♣ What does Estella symbolize in "Great Expectations"?

♣ ما تمثل (ترمز) إستيلا في الرواية؟

- Dissatisfaction (عدم الرضا) .  
عدم القناعة

♣ Guilt is one of the main themes in the novel. Discuss.

♣ الذنب هو أحد الموضوعات الرئيسية للرواية. فسر ذلك.

- Miss Havisham felt guilty for making Estella cruel and breaking Pip's heart.

♣ "The other side is not always greener." How is this applied to the novel?

♣ "الجانب الاخر ليس أفضل دوما." كيف ينطبق ذلك علي القصة؟

- It means one should be satisfied with his own life.  
تعني ان الانسان يجب أن يكون راضي بحياته الخاصة.

♣ What is the theme of "Great Expectations"?

♣ ما الموضوع الرئيسي للرواية؟

- Affection, loyalty, and conscience are more important than wealth and class.  
العاطفة (المحبة) والوفاء والضمير أهم بكثير من الثروة والطبقة الاجتماعية.

♣ What is the irony in "Great Expectations"?

♣ ما الجانب الساخر في رواية "أمال عظيمة"؟

- Miss Havisham who was cruel wanted Pip to be a good man.  
الانسة هافيشام التي كانت قاسية أرادت أن يصبح بيب رجلا هاما.

♣ What does Miss Havisham represent in "Great Expectations"?

♣ ماذا تمثل الانسة هافيشام في رواية "أمال عظيمة"؟

- Revenge and disappointment (الخذلان) .  
النار وخيبة الامل



♣ What is the main conflict in "Great Expectations"?

♣ ما هو الصراع الرئيسي للرواية؟

- Pip's ambitious desire to be a gentleman in a higher social class.  
رغبة بيب الطموحة هو ان يصبح رجلاً نبيلًا في طبقة إجتماعية أعلى.

♣ Who is the antagonist (villain) (wicked character) in the novel? Why?

♣ من الشخصيات المعادية للبطل، (الوغد)، (الاكثر شرا)؟ لماذا؟

- Compeyson who harmed Miss Havisham and Magwitch. (أضر)

♣ What does money symbolize in Great Expectations?

♣ الي ما يرمز المال في الرواية؟

- Dignity has nothing to do with wealth (المال) الكرامة لا علاقة لها بالثروة.

♣ What does Miss Havisham's dress symbolize?

♣ الي ما يرمز زي الانسة هافيشام؟

- The lost past (الماضي الضائع) الماضي المفقود.

♣ Why is "Great Expectations" a tragedy?

♣ لماذا تعتبر الرواية تراجيديّة (مأساة / بها حزن)؟

- It exposes the dark side of life (معاناة الناس الفقراء والطبقية) أنها تعرض الجانب المظلم من الحياة.

♣ Why do you think Havisham had a mental illness?

♣ لماذا تعتبر أن الانسة هافيشام كان لديها مرض ذهني (مريضة نفسيا)؟

- She had depression and social anxiety (مريض اجتماعي) كانت تعاني من الاكتئاب والقلق الاجتماعي.

♣ What kind of character is Pip?

♣ أي نوع من الشخصيات يكون بيب؟

- Pip is kind, ambitious (طموح) and optimistic متفائل.

♣ What are Joe's values in "Great Expectations"?

♣ ما القيم التي يؤمن بها جو؟

- He was hard-working (مجتهد), honorable (شريف), loyal and fair (عادل) مخلص ومنصف.

♣ Why is "Great Expectations" so important?

Or Why is "Great Expectations" still relevant today?

♣ لماذا "أمال عظيمة" رواية هامة؟

أو لماذا تلائم الرواية عصرنا الحالي؟

- Many of the ideas in it can appeal to modern audiences.  
الكثير من الافكار والاحداث تروق ل (يحبه) جمهور العصر الحديث.

♣ Why is "Great Expectations" called that?

♣ لماذا سميت الرواية بهذا الاسم؟

- Pip expects a great future (عظيم) بيب يأمل في مستقبل عظيم.

♣ What does Joe Gargery symbolize?

♣ إلي ما يرمز جو؟

- He symbolizes a life Pip rejects, but he has values (قيم) يرمز ل حياة يرفضها بيب لكن لديه قيم.

♣ **WB** Mrs Joe wasn't very loving towards Pip. Explain.

♣ لم تكن السيدة جو عطوفة جدًا علي بيب. فسر ذلك.

- She complained about Pip and hit him.

♣ **WB** Joe was a kind, understanding man. Prove this.

♣ كان جو طيبًا ومتفهمًا. إثبت ذلك.

- He didn't object to the convict's eating his food لم يعترض علي تناول المسجون لطعامه

♣ **WB** Miss Havisham is a strange, unhappy woman. Explain.

♣ كانت الانسة هافيشام امرأة غريبة وتعيسة. فسر ذلك.

- She never left her house. She was still sad as her fiancé left her. لم تترك منزلها كما كانت لا تزال حزينة لان خطيبها هجرها.

♣ **WB** Pip has a powerful conscience. Prove this.

♣ إثبت أن ضمير بيب كان يقظًا ؟

- He felt guilty for taking the food and the file شعر بالذنب لانه أخذ الطعام والمبرد

♣ **WB** Estella is cold and cruel. Explain.

♣ كانت إستيلا باردة المشاعر وقاسية. فسر ذلك.

- She was very rude وقحة to Pip though she knew he loved her.

♣ **WB** Joe was loyal to his wife. Explain.

♣ كان جو وفيا لزوجته. فسر ذلك.

- She treated him and Pip badly (cruelly), but he never criticised her. كانت تعامله هو وبيب بشكل سيء (بقسوة) لكنه لم ينتقدها إطلاقًا.

♣ **WB** Joe and Biddy were forgiving. Explain.

♣ كان جو وبيدي متسامحين. فسر ذلك.

- In the end they forgave Pip.

♣ **WB** Herbert was a true friend. Prove this.

♣ كان هربرت صديقًا حقيقيًا. إثبت ذلك.

- He looked after (اهتم) Pip when he came to London.

♣ **WB** Herbert was friendly. Prove this.

♣ كان هربرت ودودًا. إثبت ذلك.

- He tried to make Joe comfortable in London حاول ان يجعل بيب مستريحًا في لندن

♣ **WB** Pip was not realistic. Illustrate.

♣ لم يكن بيب واقعيًا. اشرح ذلك.

- He had romantic ideas about his future which were not realistic. كان لديه أفكار حالمة (رومانسية) عن مستقبله لم تكن واقعية.
- He believed that just by being better educated Estella would accept him. كان يعتقد أنه بمجرد أن يتعلم بشكل جيد سوف تتقبله إستيلا.



